DAIKIN

OH10 - 01

Option Handbook

VRV® System

DAIKIN INDUSTRIES, LTD.

Part 1
Introduction

1. Introduction

This Option Handbook includes the following accessories.

1.1 Control Systems

			Page	51	32	146	13	74	74	91	111	125	169	51	32	146	13	74	74	91	111	125	169	191	196	211	218
VRVII	Concealed Floor Standing	FXL-LVE FXN-LVE		–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	○	○	○	○
	Floor Standing	FXA-LVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–		○	–	○	○	○	–
	Ceiling Suspended	FXH-LVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	○	○	○	–
	Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXM-LVE		–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Built–in with Rear Suction	FXYB-KV1		–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Built–in	FXS-LVE		–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Duct <Low Silhouette>	FXYD-KAVE		–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	○	○	○	○
	Slim Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXD-PVE(T) FXD-MVE(T)		–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner	FXK-LVE		–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	○	○	○	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Double Flow>	FXC-LVE		–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	○	○	○	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Muti Flow>	FXF-LVE		–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	○	○	–
VRVIII	Ceiling Concealed (Duct)	FXDYQ-M(A)		–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Built–in	FXSYQ-M		–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	○	○
	Ceiling Suspended Cassette	FXUQ-MAV1		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	–
	Floor Standing / Concealed Floor Standing	FXLQ-MAVE FXNQ-MAVE		–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○
	Wall Mounted	FXAQ-MAVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	○	○	○	–
	Ceiling Suspended	FXHQ-MAVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	○	○	○	–
	Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXMQ-MAVE		–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	○	○	○	○
		FXMQ-PVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○
	Slim Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXDQ-PBVE(T) FXDQ-NBVE(T)		–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner	FXKQ-MAVE		–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	○	○	○	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Double Flow>	FXCQ-MVE		–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	○	○	○	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Compact Muti Flow>	FXZQ-MVE		–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	○	○	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Round Flow>	FXFQ-PVE		○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	○	○	–
				BRC7F635F	BRC7E65	BRC7E531W	BRC7C67	BRC4C63	BRC4C64	BRC4C66	BRC7EA66	BRC7EA619	BRC7CA529W	BRC7F634F	BRC7E61W	BRC7E530W	BRC7C62	BRC4C61	BRC4C62	BRC4C65	BRC7EA63W	BRC7EA618	BRC7CA528W	BRC1C62	BRC1E61	BRC1D61	BRC2C51
				Remote Controller (Wireless Type) C/O										Remote Controller (Wireless Type) H/P										Remote Controller (Wired Type)	Navigation Remote Controller (Wired Type)	Wired Remote Controller with Weekly Schedule Timer	Simplified Remote Controller

			Page	222	229	229	229	229	227	231	233	235	235	235	242	242	242	242	248	248	250	258	254	260	261	260	263	267	265	269
VRVII	Concealed Floor Standing	FXL-LVE FXN-LVE		○	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Floor Standing	FXA-LVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–		○	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–
	Ceiling Suspended	FXH-LVE		–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	○	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXM-LVE		○	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Built–in with Rear Suction	FXYB-KV1		○	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Built–in	FXS-LVE		○	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Duct <Low Silhouette>	FXYD-KAVE		○	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–
	Slim Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXD-PVE(T) FXD-MVE(T)		○	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	○	○	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner	FXK-LVE		–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Double Flow>	FXC-LVE		–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Muti Flow>	FXF-LVE		–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
VRVIII	Ceiling Concealed (Duct)	FXDYQ-M(A)		○	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Built–in	FXSYQ-M		○	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Suspended Cassette	FXUQ-MAV1		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○
	Floor Standing / Concealed Floor Standing	FXLQ-MAVE FXNQ-MAVE		○	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Wall Mounted	FXAQ-MAVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–		○	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–
	Ceiling Suspended	FXHQ-MAVE		–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	○	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXMQ-MAVE		○	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	○		–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
		FXMQ-PVE		○	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	○	–	○	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–
	Slim Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXDQ-PBVE(T) FXDQ-NBVE(T)		○	–	○	–	–	–	–		○	–	–	–	–	–	○	○	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner	FXKQ-MAVE		–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Double Flow>	FXCQ-MVE		–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–		○	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Compact Muti Flow>	FXZQ-MVE		–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	○	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Round Flow>	FXFQ-PVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	○	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
				BRC3A61	KRP1BA54	KRP1B56	KRP1BA57	KRP1BA59	KRP1B61	KRP1C63	KRP1C64	KRP2A53	KRP2A61	KRP2A62	KRP4AA51	KRP4AA52	KRP4AA53	KRP4A54	KRCS01-1B	KRCS01-4B	KRP1H98	KRP1DA98	KRP1BA101	KRP1B96	KRP1B100	KRP4A91	KRP4A96	KRP1CA93	KRP4AA93	KRP1BA97
				Remote Controller for Hotel Use	Adaptor for Wiring							Wiring Adaptor for Electrical Appendices (1)			Wiring Adaptor for Electrical Appendices (2)				Remote Sensor (For Indoor Temperature)		Installation box for adaptor PCB									

			Page	271	271	271	279	283	295	326	326	326	328	335	338	346	349	353	357	360	361	–	374	375
VRVII	Concealed Floor Standing	FXL-LVE FXN-LVE		–	○	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Floor Standing	FXA-LVE		–	○	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Suspended	FXH-LVE		–	–	○	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXM-LVE		–	○	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Built–in with Rear Suction	FXYB-KV1		–	○	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Built–in	FXS-LVE		–	○	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Duct <Low Silhouette>	FXYD-KAVE		–	○	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Slim Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXD-PVE(T) FXD-MVE(T)		○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner	FXK-LVE		–	○	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Double Flow>	FXC-LVE		–	○	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Muti Flow>	FXF-LVE		–	–	○	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
VRVIII	Ceiling Concealed (Duct)	FXDYQ-M(A)		–	○	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Built–in	FXSYQ-M		–	○	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Suspended Cassette	FXUQ-MAV1		–	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Floor Standing / Concealed Floor Standing	FXLQ-MAVE FXNQ-MAVE		–	○	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Wall Mounted	FXAQ-MAVE		–	○	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Suspended	FXHQ-MAVE		–	–	○	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXMQ-MAVE		–	○	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
		FXMQ-PVE		–	○	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Slim Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXDQ-PBVE(T) FXDQ-NBVE(T)		○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner	FXKQ-MAVE		–	○	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Double Flow>	FXCQ-MVE		–	○	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Compact Muti Flow>	FXZQ-MVE		–	–	○	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Round Flow>	FXFQ-PVE		–	–	○	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
			DTA104A53																					
	External Control Adaptor for Outdoor Unit		DTA104A61																					
			DTA104A62																					
	Adaptor for Multi Tenant		DTA114A61																					
	Residential Central Remote Controller		DCS303A51																					
	Central Remote Controller		DCS302CA61																					
	Electrical Box with Earth Terminal		KJB212AA																					
			KJB311AA																					
			KJB411A																					
	Unified ON/OFF Controller		DCS301BA61																					
	Noise Filter (For Electromagnetic Interface Use only)		KEK26-1A																					
	Schedule Timer		DST301BA61																					
	Interface Adaptor for SkyAir Series		DTA102A52																					
	Central control adaptor kit		DTA107A55																					
	Wiring Adaptor for Other Air-Conditioner		DTA103A51																					
	DIII-NET Expander Adaptor		DTA109A51																					
	Mounting Plate for DIII-NET Expander Adaptor		KRP4A92																					
	intelligent Touch Controller		DCS601C51																					
			DCS601A52																					
			DCS002C51																					
			DCS004A51																					

1

			Page	377	377	–	–	–	384	387	390	393	399	402	405	412	422	426	429
VRVII	Concealed Floor Standing	FXL-LVE FXN-LVE		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Floor Standing	FXA-LVE		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Suspended	FXH-LVE		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXM-LVE		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Built–in with Rear Suction	FXYB-KV1		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Built–in	FXS-LVE		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Duct <Low Silhouette>	FXYD-KAVE		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Slim Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXD-PVE(T) FXD-MVE(T)		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner	FXK-LVE		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Double Flow>	FXC-LVE		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Muti Flow>	FXF-LVE		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
VRVIII	Ceiling Concealed (Duct)	FXDYQ-M(A)		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Built–in	FXSYQ-M		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Suspended Cassette	FXUQ-MAV1		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Floor Standing / Concealed Floor Standing	FXLQ-MAVE FXNQ-MAVE		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Wall Mounted	FXAQ-MAVE		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Suspended	FXHQ-MAVE		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXMQ-MAVE		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
		FXMQ-PVE		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Slim Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXDQ-PBVE(T) FXDQ-NBVE(T)		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner	FXKQ-MAVE		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Double Flow>	FXCQ-MVE		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Compact Muti Flow>	FXZQ-MVE		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Round Flow>	FXFQ-PVE		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
				DAM602B51	DAM602B52	DAM002A51	DAM004A51	DAM003A51	DAM101A51	DEC101A51	DEC102A51	DMS502B51	DAM411B51	DAM412B51	DMS504B51	DPF201A51	DPF201A52	DPF201A53	DCS302A52
				intelligent Manager III					Optional DIII Ai Unit	Di Unit	Dio Unit	Interface for use in BACnet®	Optional DIII Board	Optional Di Board	Interface for Use in LonWorks®	Parallel Interface			Unification Adaptor for Computerized Control

1.2 Indoor Units

			Page	436	441	504	516	524	551	552	631	556	556	556	556	445	449	507	632	452	452	510	528	455	455	460	460	464	467	513	470
VRVII	Concealed Floor Standing	FXL-LVE FXN-LVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Floor Standing	FXA-LVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Suspended	FXH-LVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXM-LVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Built–in with Rear Suction	FXYB-KV1		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Built–in	FXS-LVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	○	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Duct <Low Silhouette>	FXYD-KAVE		–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Slim Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXD-PVE(T) FXD-MVE(T)		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner	FXK-LVE		–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Double Flow>	FXC-LVE		–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Muti Flow>	FXF-LVE		–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	○	○	–	○	–	○
VRVIII	Ceiling Concealed (Duct)	FXDYQ-M(A)		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Built–in	FXSYQ-M		–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	○	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Suspended Cassette	FXUQ-MAV1		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Floor Standing / Concealed Floor Standing	FXLQ-MAVE FXNQ-MAVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Wall Mounted	FXAQ-MAVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Suspended	FXHQ-MAVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXMQ-MAVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
		FXMQ-PVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Slim Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXDQ-PBVE(T) FXDQ-NBVE(T)		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner	FXKQ-MAVE		–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Double Flow>	FXCQ-MVE		–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Compact Muti Flow>	FXZQ-MVE		–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Round Flow>	FXFQ-PVE		○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	○	–	○	–	○
Decoration panel				BYCP125K-W1	BYCP125D-W1	BYFQ60B8W1	BYBC32-125G-W1	BYK45/71FJW1	KDGF19A45/71	BYBS32-125DJW1	KDBTJ49FA80/140																				
Service access panel												KTBJ25K36W	KTB25KA56-160W	KTBJ25K36-160F	KTBJ25K36-160T															
Sealing material of air discharge outlet																KDBH55K160F	KDBH55D160W	KDBH44BA60	KDBH49FA80-140											
Panel spacer																				KDBP55H160FA	KDBP55H160WA	KDBQ44BA60A	KPBJ52F56/80W							
Fresh air intake kit (Chamber type)																								KDDP55B160	KDDP55B160K	KDD55DA160	KDD55DA160K			
Fresh air intake kit (Direct installation type)																												KDDP55X160	KDDJ55XA160	KDDQ44XA60	
Chamber connection kit																															KKSJ55KA160

1

Series	Type	Model	KDTP55K80/160	KDT-55DA80/160	KDT25N32-63	KNM25K32-125V1	KEA25K32-125VE	KAFP556B80/160	KAFP557B80/160	KAF556DA80/160	KAF557DA80/160	KAFJ532G36-160	KAFJ533G36-160	KAFJ252L36	KAFJ253L36	KAF252LA56-160	KAF253LA56-160	KAF372AA36-160	KAF373AA36-160	KAFJ372L280	KAFJ373L280	KAFP372A80/160	KAFP373A80/160	KAFP552B80/160	KAFP553B80/160	KDDFP55B160	KDDF55DA160	KDDFJ53G36-160	KAJ25L36D	KAJ25LA56-160D	KDDF37AA36-160	KDJ3705L280	KDDFP37A80/160
			Insulation kit for high humidity			Natural evaporating pan type humidifier	Auxiliary electric heater	High-efficiency filter																Replacement high-efficiency filter		Filter chamber (For bottom suction)							
Page			471	473	550	559	570	475	475	478	478	519	519	575	575	575	575	587	587	588	588	588	588	481	481	482	485	522	576	576	590	596	593
VRVII	Concealed Floor Standing	FXL-LVE FXN-LVE	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
VRVII	Floor Standing	FXA-LVE	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
VRVII	Ceiling Suspended	FXH-LVE	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
VRVII	Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXM-LVE	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	○*2	○*2	○*1	○*1	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	○*2	○*1
VRVII	Ceiling Mounted Built–in with Rear Suction	FXYB-KV1	—	—	—	○	○	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
VRVII	Ceiling Mounted Built–in	FXS-LVE	—	—	—	○	○	—	—	—	—	—	—	○	○	○	○	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	○	○	—	—	—
VRVII	Ceiling Mounted Duct <Low Silhouette>	FXYD-KAVE	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
VRVII	Slim Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXD-PVE(T) FXD-MVE(T)	—	—	○	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
VRVII	Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner	FXK-LVE	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
VRVII	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Double Flow>	FXC-LVE	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	○	○	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	○	—	—	—	—	—
VRVII	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Muti Flow>	FXF-LVE	—	○	—	—	—	—	—	○	○	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	○	○	—	○	—	—	—	—	—	—
VRVIII	Ceiling Concealed (Duct)	FXDYQ-M(A)	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
VRVIII	Ceiling Mounted Built–in	FXSYQ-M	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	○	○	○	○	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	○	○	—	—	—
VRVIII	Ceiling Suspended Cassette	FXUQ-MAV1	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
VRVIII	Floor Standing / Concealed Floor Standing	FXLQ-MAVE FXNQ-MAVE	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
VRVIII	Wall Mounted	FXAQ-MAVE	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
VRVIII	Ceiling Suspended	FXHQ-MAVE	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
VRVIII	Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXMQ-MAVE	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	○	○	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	○	—
VRVIII		FXMQ-PVE	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	○	○	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	○	—	—
VRVIII	Slim Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXDQ-PBVE(T) FXDQ-NBVE(T)	—	—	○	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
VRVIII	Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner	FXKQ-MAVE	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
VRVIII	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Double Flow>	FXCQ-MVE	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	○	○	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	○	—	—	—	—	—
VRVIII	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Compact Muti Flow>	FXZQ-MVE	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
VRVIII	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Round Flow>	FXFQ-PVE	○	—	—	—	—	○	○	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	○	○	○	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

*1. FXM40-125LVE
*2. FXM200/250LVE

				Page	577	577	488	489	515	523	533	581	598	599	599	611	630	634	600	490	493	496	497	498	501	534	541	542	582	582
VRVII	Concealed Floor Standing	FXL-LVE FXN-LVE			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Floor Standing	FXA-LVE			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Suspended	FXH-LVE			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXM-LVE			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○*2	○*1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Built–in with Rear Suction	FXYB-KV1			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–		–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Built–in	FXS-LVE			○	○	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Duct <Low Silhouette>	FXYD-KAVE			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Slim Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXD-PVE(T) FXD-MVE(T)			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner	FXK-LVE			–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	○	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Double Flow>	FXC-LVE			–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Muti Flow>	FXF-LVE			–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	○	○	–	–	–	–	–	–
VRVIII	Ceiling Concealed (Duct)	FXDYQ-M(A)			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Built–in	FXSYQ-M			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	○
	Ceiling Suspended Cassette	FXUQ-MAV1			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Floor Standing / Concealed Floor Standing	FXLQ-MAVE FXNQ-MAVE			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Wall Mounted	FXAQ-MAVE			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Suspended	FXHQ-MAVE			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXMQ-MAVE			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
		FXMQ-PVE			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Slim Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXDQ-PBVE(T) FXDQ-NBVE(T)			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner	FXKQ-MAVE			–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Double Flow>	FXCQ-MVE			–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Compact Muti Flow>	FXZQ-MVE			–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Round Flow>	FXFQ-PVE			–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–
			Filter chamber (For rear suction)	KAJ25L36B																										
				KAJ25LA56-160B																										
			Replacement long life filter	KAFP551K160																										
				KAF551CA160																										
				KAFQ441BA60																										
				KAFJ531G36-160																										
				KAFJ521F56/80																										
				KAFJ251K36-160																										
				KAF371AA36-160																										
				KAFJ371L280																										
				KAFP371A80/160																										
				KAF501DA56-112																										
				KAFJ361K28-71																										
				KAF495FA140																										
			Replacement long life filter chamber kit	KAF375AA36-160																										
			Ultra long life filter	KAFP55B160																										
				KAF55DA160																										
			Replacement ultra long life filter	KAFP55H160H																										
				KAF55KA160H																										
			Branch duct chamber	KDJP55B80/160																										
				KDP55DA80/160																										
			Air discharge blind panel	KDBJ52F56/80W																										
			Air discharge grill	K-HV7/9AW																										
			Flexible duct (with shutter)	KFDJ52FA56/80																										
			Air suction canvas	KSA-25K36																										
				KSA-25KA56-160																										

*1. FXM40-125LVE
*2. FXM200/250LVE

			Page	583	583	584	585	603	606	612	617	620	618	619	634	635	–
VRVII	Concealed Floor Standing	FXL-LVE FXN-LVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Floor Standing	FXA-LVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–		○	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Suspended	FXH-LVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	○	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXM-LVE		–	–	–	–	○*2	○*1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Built–in with Rear Suction	FXYB-KV1		–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Built–in	FXS-LVE		○	○	○	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Duct <Low Silhouette>	FXYD-KAVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Slim Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXD-PVE(T) FXD-MVE(T)		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner	FXK-LVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Double Flow>	FXC-LVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Muti Flow>	FXF-LVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
VRVIII	Ceiling Concealed (Duct)	FXDYQ-M(A)		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○
	Ceiling Mounted Built–in	FXSYQ-M		○	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Suspended Cassette	FXUQ-MAV1		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	○	○	–
	Floor Standing / Concealed Floor Standing	FXLQ-MAVE FXNQ-MAVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Wall Mounted	FXAQ-MAVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Suspended	FXHQ-MAVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	○	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXMQ-MAVE		–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
		FXMQ-PVE		–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Slim Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXDQ-PBVE(T) FXDQ-NBVE(T)		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner	FXKQ-MAVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Double Flow>	FXCQ-MVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Compact Muti Flow>	FXZQ-MVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Round Flow>	FXFQ-PVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
			KBBJ25K36														
		Screening door	KBBJ25KA56-160														
		Air suction flange	KDJ2507K36-160														
		Air discharge adaptor	KDAJ25K36-140A														
		Drain pump kit	KDU30L250VE														
			KDU-30L125VE														
			KDU50N60/125VE														
			KDU50B50-125VE														
			K-KDU572EVE														
		L-type piping kit (for upward direction)	KHFP5MA63/160														
			KHFJ5F50-160														
		L connection piping kit	KHFP49MA140														
		Vertical flap kit	KDGJ49FA80/140														
		Run/fault status PCB	KRP1B5X														

*1. FXM40-125LVE
*2. FXM200/250LVE

1.3 Outdoor Units

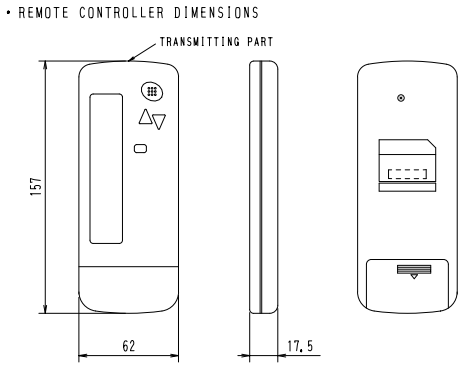
		VRVIII					VRVII				Page
		RXYQ-P(A)	RXQ-PA	REYQ-P	RWEYQ-P	RXYMQ-P,M RXMQ-P	RXY-M	RX-M	RXYM-M	RXM-M	
Cool/Heat Selector	KRC19-26A	○	–	–	○	○	○	–	○	–	638
Fixing Box	KJB111A	○	–	–	○	○	○	–	○	–	639
RFENET Header	KHRJ26K11H/17H/18H/37H/40H	–	–	–	–	–	○	○	○*1	○*1	640
	KHRP26M22H/33H/72H/73H	○	○	–	○	○*2	–	–	–	–	644
	KHRP25M33H/72H/73H	–	–	○	○	–	–	–	–	–	647
REFNET Joint	KHRJ26K11T/17T/18T/37T/40T/75T	–	–	–	–	–	○	○	○*3	○*3	650
	KHRP26A22T/33T/72T/73T	○	○	–	○	○*4	–	–	–	–	658
	KHRP25A22T/33T/72T/73T	–	–	○*5	○	–	–	–	–	–	661
Outdoor Unit Multi Connection Piping Kit	BHF22M90/135	–	–	–	–	–	○	○	–	–	664
	BHFP22P100/151	○	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	667
	BHFP26P90/136	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	673
	BHFP22MA56/84, BHFP26MA56/84	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	685
Pipe Size Reducer	KHRP26M73TP/73HP	○	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	692
	KHRJ26K40TP/40HP/75TP/76TP	–	–	–	–	–	○	○	–	–	693
Central Drain Pan Kit	KWC26B160(E)/280(E)/450(E)	–	–	–	–	–	○	○	–	–	694
	KWC25C450, KWC26C160(E)/280(E)/450(E)	○*6	○*7	○*8	–	–	–	–	–	–	696
Central Drain Plug	KKPJ5F180	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	○	○	699
Wire Fixture for Preventing Overturning	K-KYZP15C	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	○	○	700
Fixture for Preventing Overturning	KPT-60B160	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	○	○	702
Refrigerant Pipe Filter Kit	BHF26A450F	–	○	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	703
Digital Pressure Gauge	BHGP26A1(E)	○	○*9	○*9	–	–	–	–	–	–	706
Strainer Kit	BWU26A15/20	–	–	–	○*10	–	–	–	–	–	708

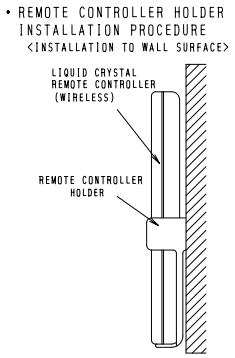
*1 KHRJ26K11H/18H
*2 KHRP26M22H/33H
*3 KHRJ26K11T/17T
*4 KHRP26A22T
*5 KHRP25A22T/33T
*6 KWC26C160(E)/280(E)/450(E)
*7 KWC26C160/280/450
*8 KWC25C450, KWC26C280/450
*9 BHGP26A1
*10Accessory exclusively for Y1 models.
Contained in the product package for TL and YL models.

Part 2
Control Systems

2

1. Remote Controller (Wireless Type)



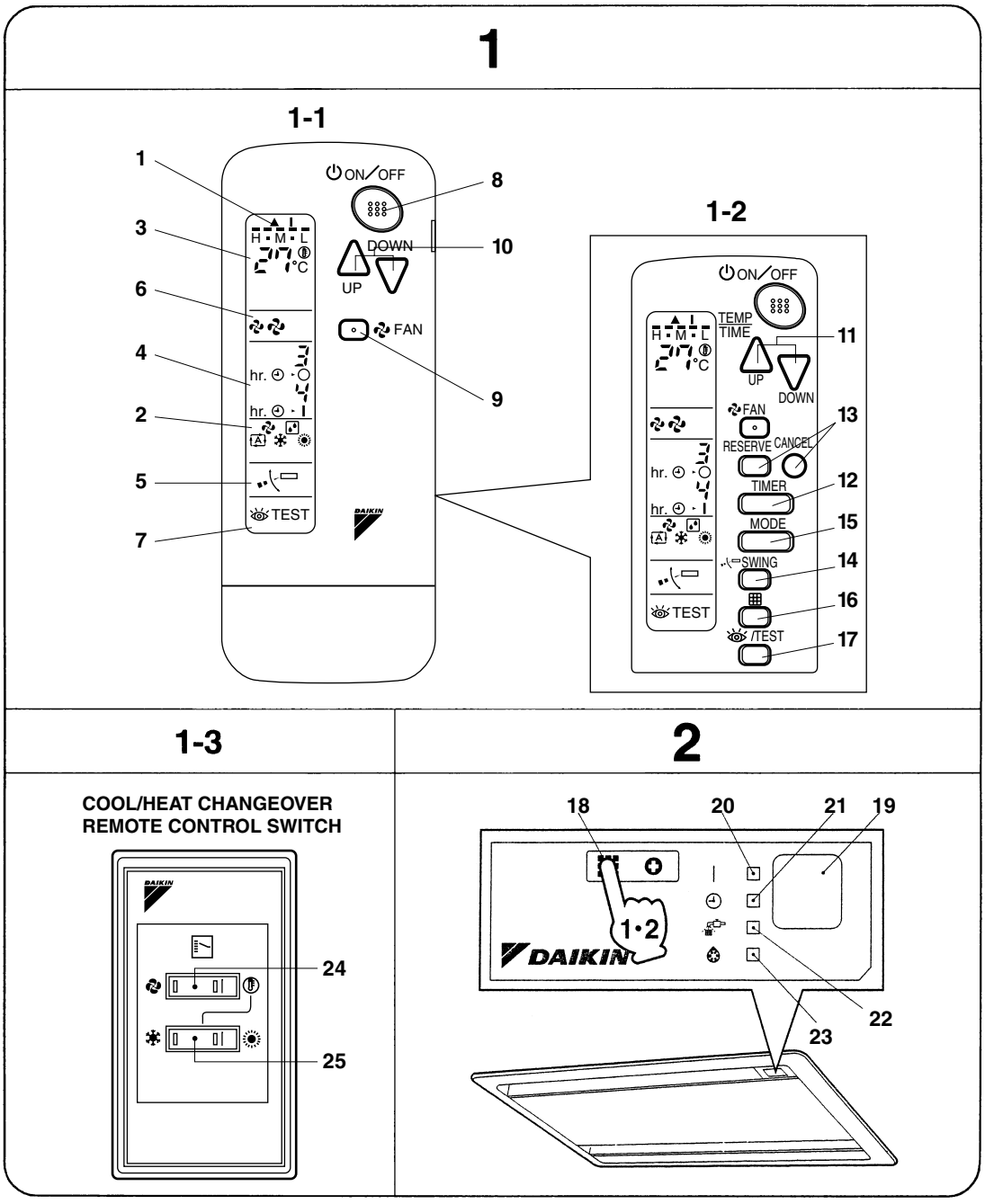


Unit: mm

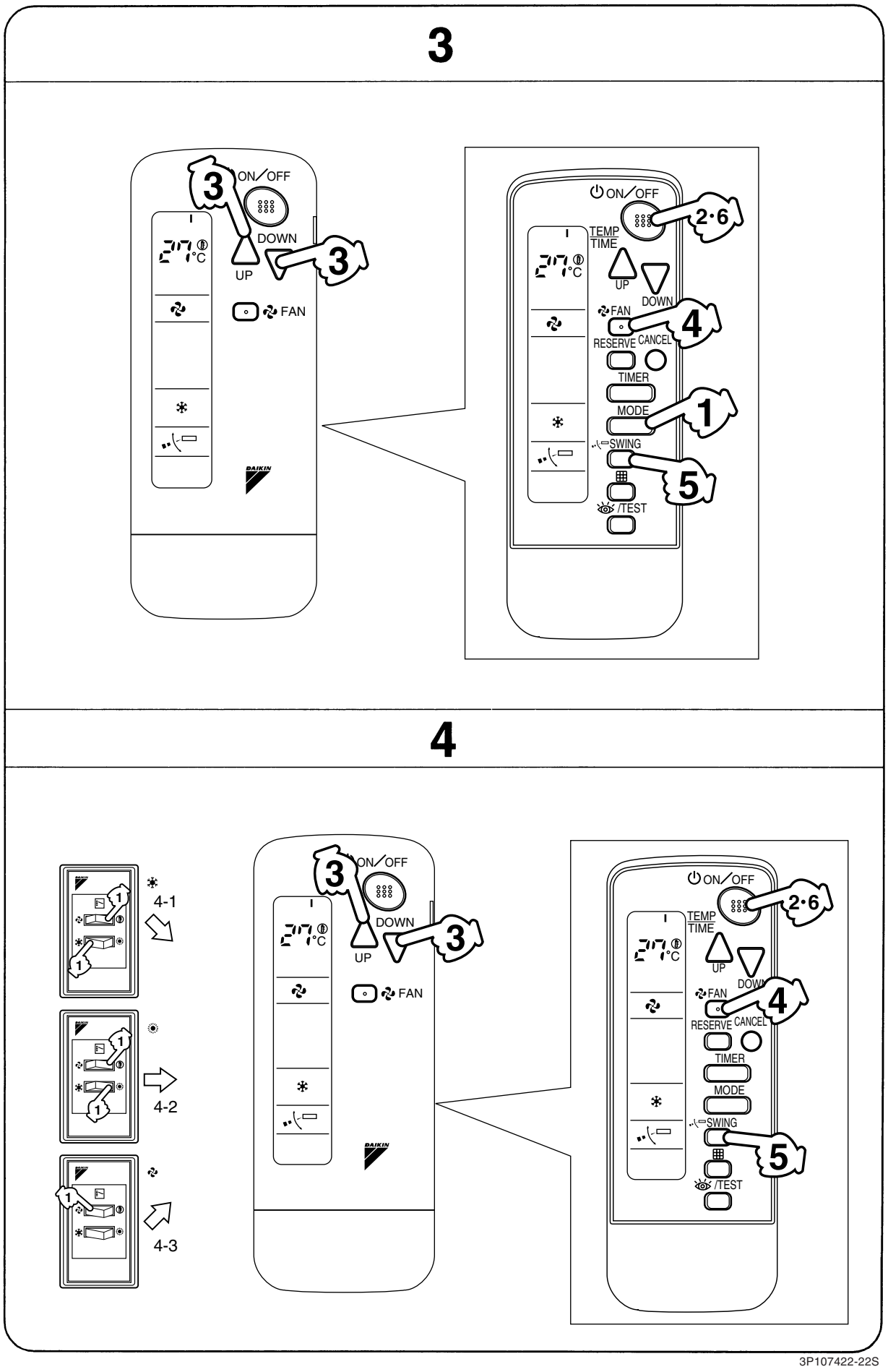
C: 3D007588A

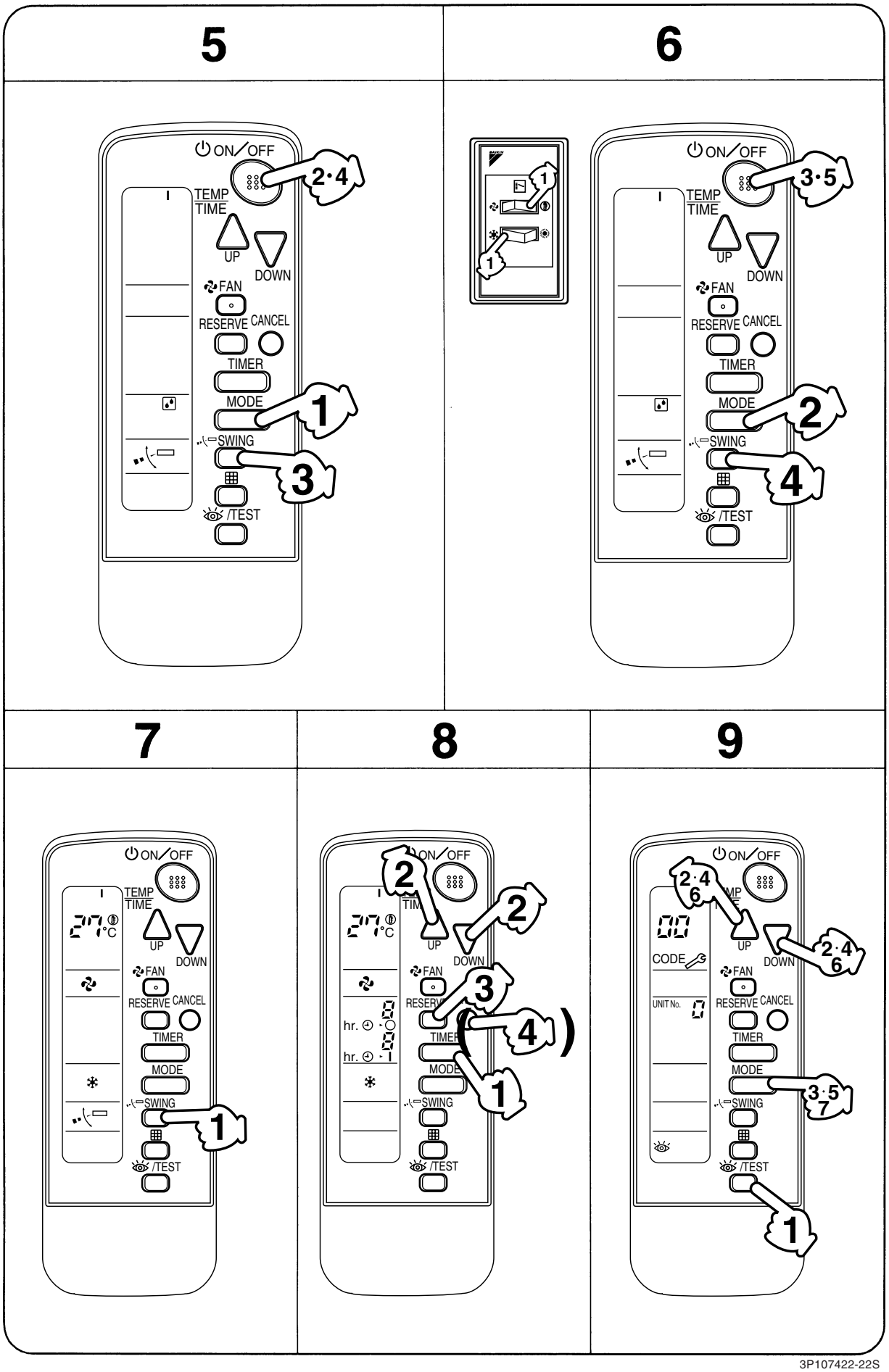
1.1 BRC7C62 / BRC7C67 (for FXC(Q))

1.1.1 Operation



3P107422-22S


3
ON/OFF
DOWN
UP
FAN
TEMP
TIME
RESERVE
CANCEL
TIMER
MODE
SWING
/TEST
2·6
4
1
5
4
4-1
4-2
4-3
3P107422-22S



3P107422-22S

2. NAMES AND FUNCTIONS OF THE OPERATING SECTION (Fig. 1, 2)

1	**DISPLAY " ▲ " (SIGNAL TRANSMISSION)**
	This lights up when a signal is being transmitted.
2	**DISPLAY " " " " " " " " " " " " (OPERATION MODE)**
	This display shows the current OPERATION MODE. For straight cooling type, " " (Auto) and " " (Heating) are not installed.
3	**DISPLAY " " (SET TEMPERATURE)**
	This display shows the set temperature.
4	**DISPLAY " " (PROGRAMMED TIME)**
	This display shows PROGRAMMED TIME of the system start or stop.
5	**DISPLAY " " (AIR FLOW FLAP)**
	Refer to Note 1.
6	**DISPLAY " " " " (FAN SPEED)**
	The display shows the set fan speed.
7	**DISPLAY " TEST " (INSPECTION/ TEST OPERATION)**
	When the INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON is pressed, the display shows the system mode is in.
8	**ON/OFF BUTTON**
	Press the button and the system will start. Press the button again and the system will stop.
9	**FAN SPEED CONTROL BUTTON**
	Press this button to select the fan speed, HIGH or LOW, of your choice.
10	**TEMPERATURE SETTING BUTTON**
	Use this button for SETTING TEMPERATURE (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller closed.)
11	**PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON**
	Use this button for programming "START and/or STOP" time. (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller opened.)
12	**TIMER MODE START/STOP BUTTON**
	Refer to Note 2.
13	**TIMER RESERVE/CANCEL BUTTON**
	Refer to Note 3.
14	**AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST BUTTON**
	Refer to Note 4.
15	**OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON**
	Press this button to select OPERATION MODE.
16	**FILTER SIGN RESET BUTTON**
	Refer to the section of MAINTENANCE in the operation manual attached to the indoor unit.
17	**INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON**
	This button is used only by qualified service persons for maintenance purposes.
18	**EMERGENCY OPERATION SWITCH**
	This switch is readily used if the remote controller does not work.
19	**RECEIVER**
	This receives the signals from the remote controller.
20	**OPERATING INDICATOR LAMP (Red)**
	This lamp stays lit while the air conditioner runs. It flashes when the unit is in trouble.
21	**TIMER INDICATOR LAMP (Green)**
	This lamp stays lit while the timer is set.
22	**AIR FILTER CLEANING TIME INDICATOR LAMP (Red)**
	Lights up when it is time to clean the air filter.
23	**DEFROST LAMP (Orange)**
	Lights up when the defrosting operation has started. (For straight cooling type this lamp does not turn on.)

3P107422-22S

Note 1 : page 21, Note 2 : page 21, Note 3 : page 21, Note 4 : page 21

24	**FAN/AIR CONDITIONING SELECTOR SWITCH**
	Set the switch to " " (FAN) for FAN and " " (A/C) for HEAT or COOL.
25	**COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER SWITCH**
	Set the switch to " " (COOL) for COOL and " " (HEAT) for HEAT.

NOTES

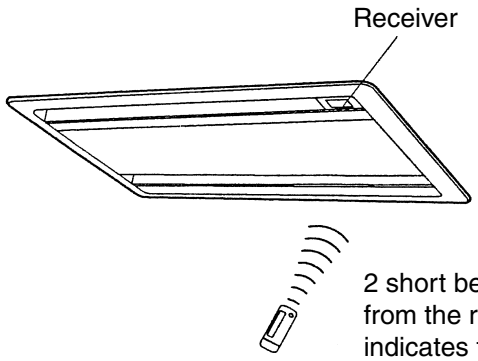
- For the sake of explanation, all indications are shown on the display in Figure 1 contrary to actual running situations.
- Fig. 1-2 shows the remote controller with the front cover opened.
- Fig. 1-3 shows this remote controller can be used in conjunction with the one provided with the VRV system.
- If the air filter cleaning time indicator lamp lights up, clean the air filter as explained in the operation manual provided with the indoor unit.
  After cleaning and reinstalling the air filter, press the filter sign reset button on the remote controller. The air filter cleaning time indicator lamp on the receiver will go out.

3. HANDLING FOR WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER

Precautions in handling remote controller

Direct the transmitting part of the remote controller to the receiving part of the air conditioner.

If something blocks the transmitting and receiving path of the indoor unit and the remote controller as curtains, it will not operate.



Transmitting distance is approximately 7 m.

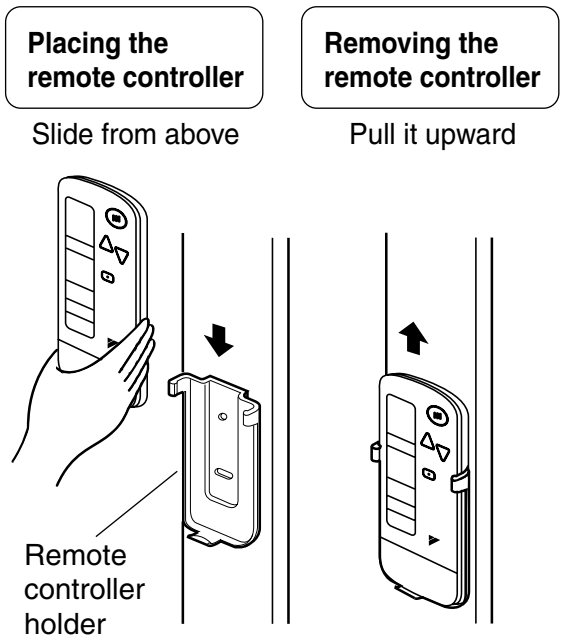
Do not drop or get it wet.
It may be damaged.

Never press the button of the remote controller with a hard, pointed object.
The remote controller may be damaged.

Installation site

- It is possible that signals will not be received in rooms that have electronic fluorescent lighting. Please consult with the salesman before buying new fluorescent lights.
- If the remote controller operated some other electrical apparatus, move that machine away or consult your dealer.

Placing the remote controller in the remote controller holder
Install the remote controller holder to a wall or a pillar with the attached screw. (Make sure it transmits)

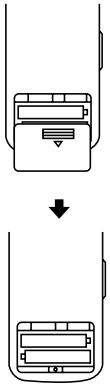


How to put the dry batteries

(1) Remove the back cover of the remote controller to the direction pointed by the arrow mark.

(2) Put in batteries.
Use two dry cell batteries (AAA.LR03 (alkaline)). Put dry batteries correctly to fit their (+) and (–).

(3) Close the cover



— When to change batteries
Under normal use, batteries last about a year. However, change them whenever the indoor unit doesn't respond or responds slowly to commands, or if the display becomes dark.

[CAUTIONS]
- Replace all batteries at the same time, do not use new and old batteries intermixed.
- In case the remote controller is not used for a long time, take out all batteries in order to prevent liquid leak of the battery.

IN THE CASE OF CENTRALIZED CONTROL SYSTEM
If the indoor unit is under centralized control, it is necessary to switch the remote controller's setting.
In this case, contact your DAIKIN dealer.

4. OPERATION PROCEDURE

- Operating procedure varies with heat pump type and straight cooling type. Contact your Daikin dealer to confirm your system type.
- To protect the unit, turn on the main power switch 6 hours before operation.
- If the main power supply is turned off during operation, operation will restart automatically after the power turns back on again.

COOLING, HEATING, AUTOMATIC AND FAN OPERATION (Fig. 3, 4)

- AUTOMATIC OPERATION can be selected only by Heat recovery system.
- Cooling only system give selection of FAN or COOLING OPERATION only.

〈〈FOR SYSTEMS WITHOUT COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 3)〉〉

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select the OPERATION MODE of your choice as follows.

- COOLING OPERATION ..... " ☼ "
- HEATING OPERATION ..... " ☼ "
- AUTOMATIC OPERATION ..... " Ⓐ "
- FAN OPERATION ..... " ✣ "

3P107422-22S

On AUTOMATIC OPERATION

In this operation mode, COOL/HEAT changeover is automatically conducted at a present indoor temperature.

(2) Press ON/OFF button.

OPERATION lamp lights up and the system starts OPERATION.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITH COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 4)⟩⟩

(1) Select OPERATION MODE with the COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH as follows.

■ COOING OPERATION .....
Refer to fig. 4-1 (,)

■ HEATING OPERATION .....
Refer to fig. 4-2 (,)

■ FAN OPERATION .....
Refer to fig. 4-3 ( )

(2) Press ON/OFF button.

OPERATION lamp lights up and the system starts OPERATION.

ADJUSTMENT

For programming TEMPERATURE and FAN SPEED and AIR FLOW DIRECTION, follow the procedure shown below.

(3) Press TEMPERATURE SETTING button and program the setting temperature.

UP — Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature rises 1°C.

DOWN — Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature lowers 1°C.

In case of automatic operation

UP — Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to “H” side.

DOWN — Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to “L” side.

[°C]

	H	•	M	•	L
Setting temperature	25	23	22	21	19

Note:

- The setting is impossible for fan operation.

(4) Press FAN SPEED CONTROL button.

High or Low fan speed can be selected.

(5) Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION button.

Refer to “ADJUSTING THE AIR FLOW DIRECTION” (Note) for details.

STOPPING THE SYSTEM

(6) Press ON/OFF button once again.

OPERATION lamp goes off, and the system stops OPERATION.

NOTE

- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes. Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

[EXPLANATION OF HEATING OPERATION]

DEFROST OPERATION

- As the frost on the coil of an outdoor unit increase, heating effect decreases and the system goes into DEFROST OPERATION.
- The fan operation stops and the DEFROST lamp of the indoor unit goes on. After 6 to 8 minutes (maximum 10 minutes) of DEFROST OPERATION, the system returns to HEATING OPERATION.

Heating capacity & Outdoor air temperature

- Heating capacity drops as outdoor air temperature lowers. If feeling cold, use another heater at the same time as this air conditioner.

Note : page 21

3P107422-22S

- Hot air is circulated to warm the room. It will take some time from when the air conditioner is first started until the entire room becomes warm. The internal fan automatically turns at low speed until the air conditioner reaches a certain temperature on the inside. In this situation, all you can do is wait.
- If hot air accumulates on the ceiling and feet are left feeling cold, it is recommended to use a circulator. For details, contact the place of purchase.

PROGRAM DRY OPERATION (Fig. 5, 6)

- The function of this program is to decrease the humidity in your room with the minimum temperature decrease.
- Micro computer automatically determines TEMPERATURE and FAN SPEED.
- This system does not go into operation if the room temperature is below 16°C.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITHOUT COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 5)⟩⟩

1 Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select "💧" (PROGRAM DRY OPERATION).

2 Press ON/OFF button.

OPERATION lamp lights up and system starts OPERATION.

ADJUSTMENT

3 Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button.

Refer to "ADJUSTING THE AIR FLOW DIRECTION" (p. 9) for details.

STOPPING THE SYSTEM

4 Press ON/OFF button again.

OPERATION lamp goes off, and the system stops OPERATION.

NOTE

- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes. Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITH COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 6)⟩⟩

1 Select COOLING OPERATION MODE with the COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH.

2 Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select PROGRAM DRY "💧".

3 Press ON/OFF button.

OPERATION lamp lights up and the system starts.

4 Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button.

Refer to "ADJUSTING THE AIR FLOW DIRECTION" (Note) for details.

STOPPING THE SYSTEM

5 Press ON/OFF button once again.

OPERATION lamp goes off, and the system stops OPERATION.

NOTE

- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes. Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

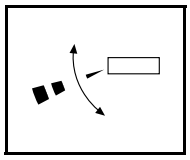
Note : page 21

3P107422-22S

ADJUSTING THE AIR FLOW DIRECTION (Fig. 7)

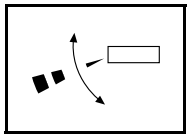
Press the AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to adjust up/down air flow angle.

1 Press the AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction as shown below.



DISPLAY appears and the air flow direction continuously varies. (Automatic swing setting)

Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction of your choice.



DISPLAY vanishes and the desired air flow direction is fixed. (Fixed air flow setting)

- The movable limit of the blade is changeable. Contact your Daikin dealer for details.

MOVEMENT OF THE AIR FLOW FLAP

For the following conditions, micro computer controls the air flow direction so it may be different from the display.

Operation mode	Cooling	Heating
Operation conditions	• When room temperature is lower than the set temperature	• When room temperature is higher than the set temperature • At defrost operation
	• When operating continuously at horizontal air flow direction	

Operation mode includes automatic operation.

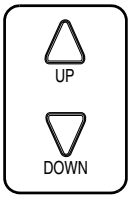
PROGRAM TIMER OPERATION (Fig. 8)

- The timer is operated by the following two ways.
  Programming the stop time (🕘 ▸ ◯)
  ....The system stops operating after the time setting has elapsed.
  Programming the start time (🕘 ▸ |)
  .... The system starts operating after the time setting has elapsed.
- The timer can be programmed for a maximum of 72 hours.
- The start and the stop time can simultaneously be programmed.

1 Press the TIMER MODE START/STOP button several times and select the mode on the display.

The display flashes.
For setting the timer stop.....“🕘 ▸ ◯”
For setting the timer start .....“🕘 ▸ | ”

2 Press the PROGRAMMING TIMER button and set the time for stopping or starting the system.



When this button is pressed, the time advances by 1 hour.

When this button is pressed, the time goes backward by 1 hour.

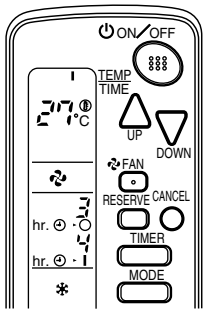
3 Press RESERVE button.

The timer setting procedure ends.
The display or changes from flashing light to a constant light.

NOTE

- When setting the timer Off and On at the same time, repeat the above procedure from 1 to 3 once again.

For example.



When the timer is programmed to stop the system after 3 hours and start the system after 4 hours, the system will stop after 3 hours and then 1 hour later the system will start.

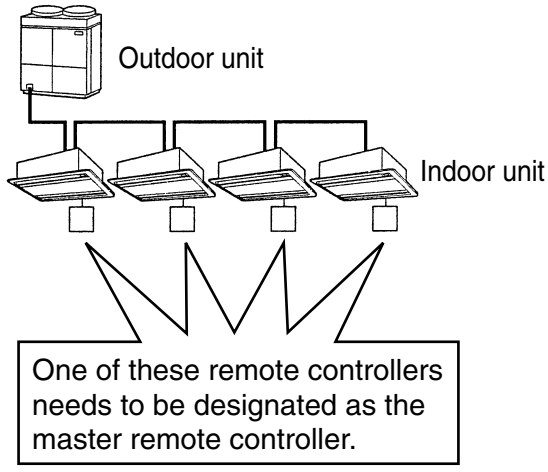
- After the timer is programmed, the display shows the remaining time.
- Press the TIMER OFF button to cancel programming. The display vanishes. (4)

HOW TO SET MASTER REMOTE CONTROLLER (For VRV system)

- When the system is installed as shown below, it is necessary to designate the master remote controller.

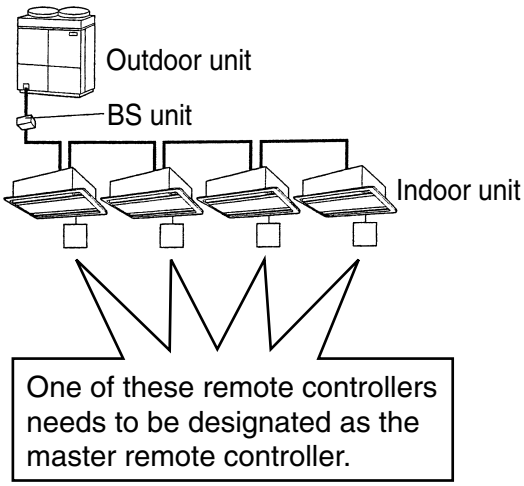
⟨⟨For Heat pump system⟩⟩

When one outdoor unit is connected with several indoor units.



⟨⟨For Heat recovery system⟩⟩

When one BS unit is connected with several indoor units.



- Only the master remote controller can select HEATING, COOLING or AUTOMATIC (only Heat recovery system) OPERATION.

When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “COOL”, you can switch over operation mode between “FAN”, “DRY” and “COOL”.
When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “HEAT”, you can switch over operation mode between “FAN” and “HEAT”.
When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “FAN”, you cannot switch operation mode.
When attempting settings than that consented above, a “peep” is emitted as a warning.
Only with Heat recovery system, you can set the indoor unit to AUTOMATIC. Attempting to do so, a “peep” will be emitted as a warning.

3P107422-22S

How to designate the master remote controller

(1) Continuously press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button for 4 seconds.

The displays showing "⏲" of all slave indoor unit connected to the same outdoor unit or BS unit flash.

(2) Press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button to the indoor unit that you wish to designate as the master remote controller. Then designation is completed. This indoor unit is designated as the master remote controller and the display showing "⏲" vanishes.

- To change settings, repeat steps (1) and (2).

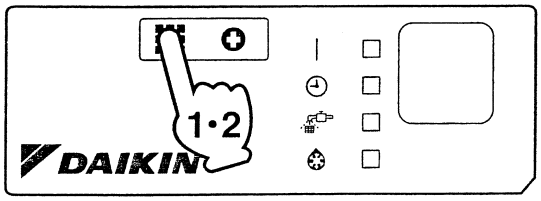
EMERGENCY OPERATION

When the remote controller does not work due to battery failure or the absence thereof, use this switch which is located beside the discharge grille on the main unit. When the remote controller does not work, but the battery low indicator on it is not lit, contact your dealer.

[START]

(1) Press the EMERGENCY OPERATION switch.

The machine runs in the previous mode. The system operates with the previously set air flow rate.



[STOP]

(2) Press the EMERGENCY OPERATION switch again.

PRECAUTIONS FOR GROUP CONTROL SYSTEM OR TWO REMOTE CONTROLLER CONTROL SYSTEM

This system provides two other control systems beside individual control (one remote controller controls one indoor unit) system. Confirm the following if your unit is of the following control system type.

■ **Group control system**
One remote controller controls up to 16 indoor units.
All indoor units are equally set.

■ **Two remote controller control system**
Two remote controllers control one indoor unit. (In case of group control system, one group of indoor units)
The unit follows individual operation.

NOTES

- Cannot have two remote controllers control system with only wireless remote controllers. (It will be a two remote controller control system having one wired and one wireless remote controllers.)
- Under two remote controller control system, wireless remote controller cannot control timer operation.
- Only the operating indicator lamp out of 3 other lamps on the indoor unit display functions.

NOTE

Contact your Daikin dealer in case of changing the combination or setting of group control and two remote controller control systems.

3P107422-22S

5. NOT MALFUNCTION OF THE AIR CONDITIONER

The following symptoms do not indicate air conditioner malfunction

I. THE SYSTEM DOES NOT OPERATE

- **The system does not restart immediately after the ON/OFF button is pressed.**
  If the OPERATION lamp lights, the system is in normal condition. It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **The system does not restart immediately when TEMPERATURE SETTING button is returned to the former position after pushing the button.**
  It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **If the reception beep is rapidly repeated 3 times (It sounds only twice when operating normally.)**
  Control is set to the optional controller for centralized control.
- **If the defrost lamp on the indoor unit's display is lit when heating is started.**
  This indication is to warn against cold air being blown from the unit. There is nothing wrong with the equipment.

6. HOW TO DIAGNOSE TROUBLE SPOTS (Fig. 9)

I. EMERGENCY STOP

When the air conditioner stops in emergency, the run lamp on the indoor unit starts blinking. Take the following steps yourself to read the malfunction code that appears on the display. Contact your dealer with this code. It will help pinpoint the cause of the trouble, speeding up the repair.

① Press the INSPECTION/TEST button to select the inspection mode " 0 ".

" 0 " appears on display and blinks. "UNIT" lights up.

② Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the unit number.

Press to change the unit number until the indoor unit beeps and perform the following operation according to the number of beeps.

Number of beeps

3 short beeps .....Perform all steps from ③ to ⑥.
1 short beep .....Perform ③ and ⑥ steps.
1 long beep .....Normal state

③ Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON.

" 0 " on the left-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

④ Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit beeps twice.

⑤ Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON.

" 0 " on the right-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

⑥ Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit makes a long beep.
The malfunction code is fixed when the indoor unit makes a long beep.

⑦ Reset of the display.

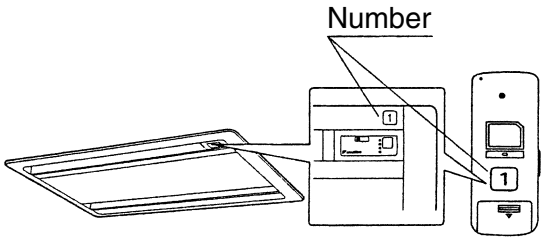
Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON to get the display back to the normal state.

3P107422-22S

II. IN CASE BESIDES EMERGENCY STOP

1. The unit does not operate at all.

- Check if the receiver is exposed of sunlight or strong light. Keep receiver away from light.
- Check if there are batteries in the remote controller. Place the batteries.
- Check if the indoor unit number and wireless remote controller number are equal.



Operate the indoor unit with the remote controller of the same number.
Signal transmitted from a remote controller of a different number cannot be accepted. (If the number is not mentioned, it is considered as "1")

2. The system operates but it does not sufficiently cool or heat.

- If the set temperature is not proper.
- If the FAN SPEED is set to LOW SPEED.
- If the air flow angle is not proper.

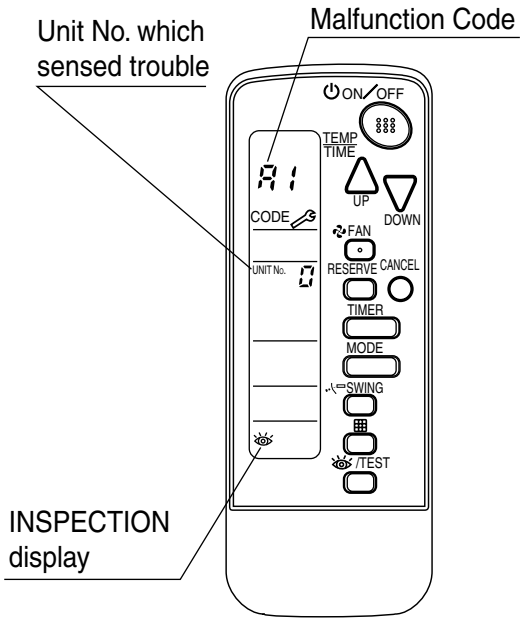
Contact the place of purchase in the following case.

⚠ WARNING

When you detect a burning odor, shut OFF power immediately and contact the place of purchase. Using the equipment in anything but proper working condition can result in equipment damage, electric shock and/or fire.

[Trouble]

The RUN lamp of the indoor unit is flashing and the unit does not work at all.



[Remedial action]

Check the malfunction code (A1 ~ UF) on the remote control and contact the place of purchase. (See Note)

Disposal requirements

Batteries supplied with the remote controller are marked with this symbol.
This means that the batteries shall not be mixed with unsorted household waste.
If a chemical symbol is printed beneath the symbol, this chemical symbol means that the battery contains a heavy metal above a certain concentration. Possible chemical symbols are:
■ Pb: lead (>0.004%)
Waste batteries must be treated at a specialized treatment facility for re-use.
By ensuring waste batteries are disposed of correctly, you will help to prevent potential negative consequences for the environment and human health.

Note : page 24

1.1.2 Installation

SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS

Please read this "SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS" carefully before installing air conditioning equipment and be sure to install it correctly. After completing the installation, make sure at start up operation that the unit operates properly. Please instruct the customer how to operate the unit and keep maintenance.
Meaning of caution symbols

⚠ **CAUTION** ..... If the caution is not observed, it may cause injury or damage to equipment.
NOTE ..... These instructions will ensure proper use of the equipment.

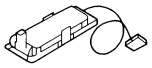
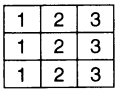
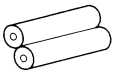
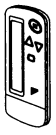
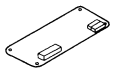
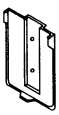
⚠ CAUTION

- Refer also to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit and the installation manual attached to the decoration panel.
- Confirm that following conditions are satisfied prior to installation.
  * Ensure that noting interrupts the operation of the wireless remote controller. (Ensure that there is neither a source of light nor fluorescent lamp near the receiver. Also, ensure that the receiver is not exposed of direct sun light.)
  * Ensure that the operaiton display lamp and other indicators are easy to see.
- The installation position of this kit is 1 position of the decoration panel. Therefore, confirm that its position is set so that the single form the wireless remote controller can be easily transmitted and its display can be easily seen.

BEFORE INSTALLATION

ACCESSORIES

Check if the following accessories are included with your unit.

Name	Shape	Quantity	Name	Shape	Quantity	Name	Shape	Quantity
Receiver ass'y		1 set	Unit No. label		1 pc.	Plastic clamp		1 pc.
			Dry cell battery LR03 (AM4)		2 pcs.	Plastic clamp installation screw	 M4 × 8	1 pc.
Wireless remote controller		1 pc.	Transmission PC board		1 pc.	Clamp		1 pc.
			Wire harness		1 pc.	Sealing pad		1 pc.
Remote controller holder		1 pc.	PCB support		4 pcs.	Operation manual		1 pc.
			Screw for installing remote controller holder	 φ3.5 × 16ℓ	2 pcs.			

NOTE TO THE INSTALLER

Be sure to instruct the customer how to properly operate the system showing him/her the attached operation manual.

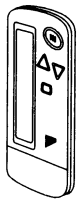
3PA59585-16N-1

REMOTE CONTROLLER INSTALLATION

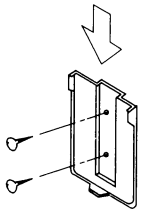
〈Installing wireless remote controller〉

- Do not throw the remote controller or impose large shocks. Also, do not store where it may be exposed to moistture or direct sunlight.
- When operating, point the transmitting part of the remote controller in the direction of the receiver.
- The direct transmitting distance of the remote controller is approximately 7 meters.
- The signal cannot be transmitted if something such as curtains blocks the receiver and the remote controller.

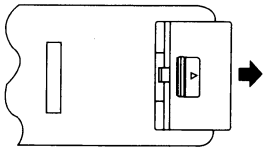
- **Installing to a wall or a pillar**
  Slide the remote controller into the remote controller holder from the top.



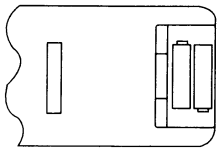
Fix the remote controller holder with the screws.



- **How to insert the batteries**
  ① Open the back cover of the remote controller by sliding it in the direction of the arrow.



  ② Insert the attached dry cell batteries. Properly insert, set the batteries by matching the (+) and (−) polarity marks as indicated. Then close the cover as before.



RECEIVER INSTALLATION

(1) Preparations before installation

Install this kit after electric wiring the indoor unit.

① Remove the suction grille, air filter, partition plate and decorative side panel (right-hand). referring to the installation manual provided with the indoor unit.

② Remove the steel wire and electric parts box lid, referring to the installation manual provided with the indoor unit.

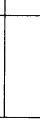
(2) Determination of address and MAIN/SUB remote controller.

If setting multiple wireless remote controllers to operate in one room, perform address setting for the receiver and the wireless remote controller. (This is needed too for individual remote control in the group control mode, for the group control mode, see the installation manual provided with the indoor unit.) If setting multiple wired remote controllers in one room, change the MAIN/SUB switch of the receiver.

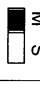
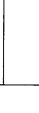
SETTING PROCEDURE

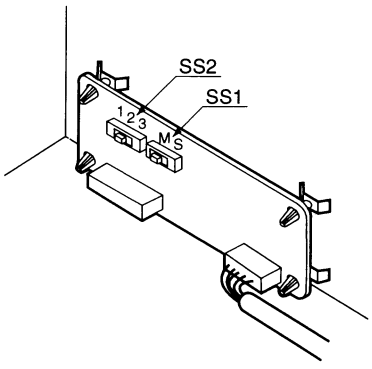
① **Setting the receiver**

Referring to the table below, set the wireless address switch (SS2) on the transmission PC board.

Unit No.	No.1 (Factory setting)	No.2	No.3
Wireless address switch (SS2)			

When using both a wired and a wireless remote controller for 1 indoor unit, the wired controller should be set to MAIN. Therefore, set the MAIN/SUB switch (SS1) of the receiver to SUB.

	MAIN (Factory setting)	SUB
MAIN/ SUB switch (SS1)		



3PA59585-16N-2

② Setting the address of wireless remote controller (It is factory set to "1")

〈Setting from the remote controller〉

① Hold down the [▦] button and the [/TEST] button for at least 4 seconds to get the Field Set mode. (Indicated in the display area in the figure at right).

② Press the [FAN] button and select a multiple setting (A/b). Each time the button is pressed the display switches between "A" and "b" .

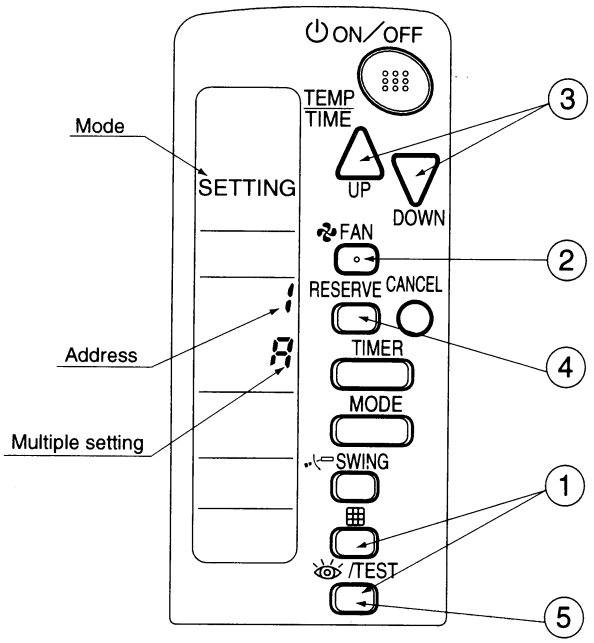
③ Press the "△ UP" button and "▽ DOWN" button to set the address.

1 → 2 → 3 → 4 → 5 → 6 (cycle)

Address can be set from 1 to 6, but set it to 1 ~ 3 and to same address as the receiver. (The receiver does not work with address 4 ~ 6.)

④ Press the [RESERVE] button to enter the setting.

⑤ Hold down the [/TEST] button for at least 1 second to quit the Field Set mode and return to the normal display.

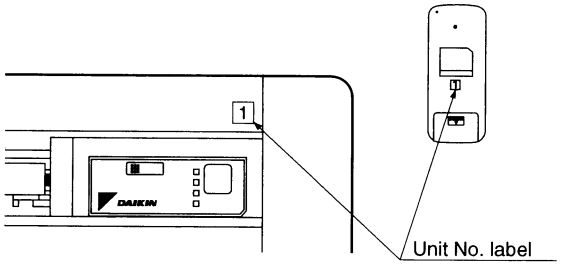


〈 Multiple settings A/b 〉

When the indoor is being operating by outside control (central remote controller, etc.), it sometimes does not respond to ON/OFF and temperature setting commands from this remote controller. Check what setting the customer wants and make the multiple setting as shown below.

Remote controller		Indoor unit	
Multiple setting	Remote controller display	To control other air conditions and units	For other than on left
A: Standard	All items displayed.	Commands other than ON/OFF and temperature setting accepted. (1 LONG BEEP or 3 SHORT BEEPS emitted)	
b: Multi System	Operations remain displayed shortly after execution.	All commands accepted (2 SHORT BEEPS)	

③ Stick the Unit No. label at decoration panel air discharge outlet as well as on the back of the wireless remote controller.



PRECAUTIONS

Set the Unit No. of the receiver and the wireless remote controller to be equal. If the settings differs, the signal from the remote controller cannot be transmitted.

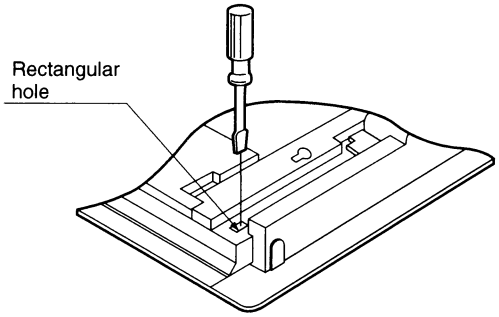
3PA59585-16N-3

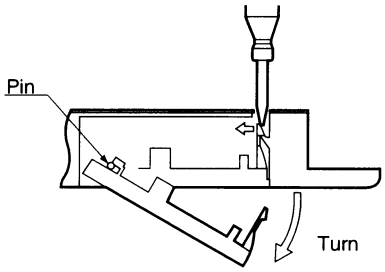
(3) Setting up the wireless display cover and the transmission PC board

(3-1) Remove the nameplate stand (part of the DAIKIN mark of decoration panel)

① Insert a screwdriver in the rectangular hole in the rear of the decoration panel and release the latch.

② To remove the nameplate stand, face downward and turn.





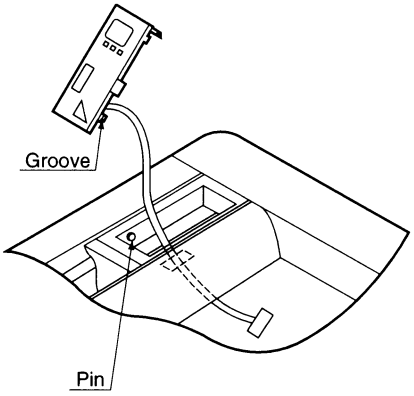
(3-2) Install the receiver ass'y

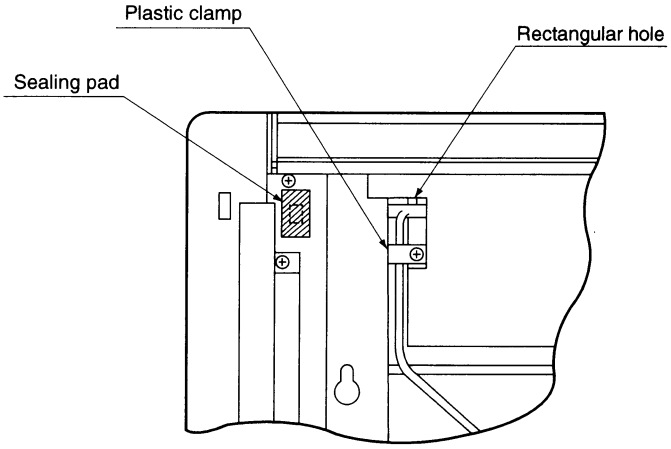
① Pass the receiver ass'y harness through the rectangular hole (long) in the recessed portion where the nameplate stand had been installed.

② Hook the groove of the receiver ass'y on the pins on both sides of the recessed portion, and install by turning.

③ Fasten the harness passed through the rectangular hole to the rear surface of the decoration panel with the plastic clamp.

④ Block the hole in which the screwdriver was inserted in step (1) with a sealing pad.



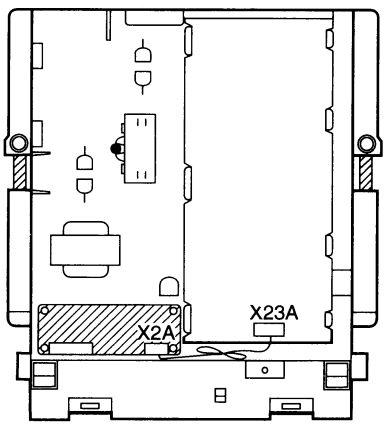


(3-3) Install the transmission PC board on the indoor unit's electric parts box.

① Pull open the electric parts box.

② Using the PCB support, install the transmission PC board at the position shown in the figure on the right.

③ Connect the connector (X2A) on the transmission PC board to the connector (X23A) on the indoor unit's PC board with the wire harness.
(Clamp the excess harness with a clamp.)



(4) SETTING UP THE INDOOR UNIT BODY AND DECORATION PANEL

- According to installation manual provided with the indoor unit, install the indoor unit and decoration panel.

3PA59585-16N-4

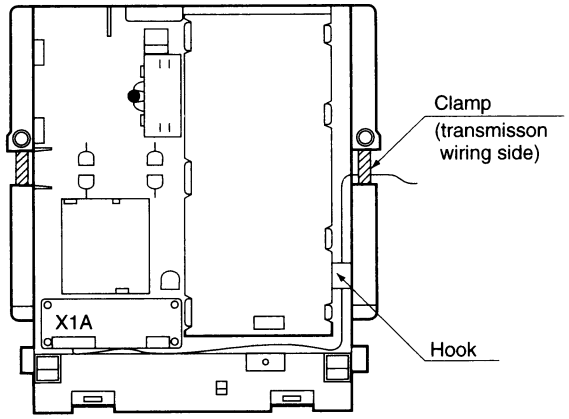
(5) Wiring to indoor unit

- Connect the receiver ass'y's harness to the transmission PC board.

① Loosen the clamp on the side of the electric patrs box (transmission wiring side), and pass the harness from the receiver ass y.

② Pass the harness through the hook so it doesn't pass over the top of the PC board. and connect it to the connector (X1A) on the transmission PC board.

③ Take up the slack in the harness inside the electric parts box, and once again clamp it with the clamp on the side of the electric parts box.



(6) SETTING UP THE SUCTION GRILLE

- According to installation manual provided with the decoration panel, install the suction grile.

FIELD SETTING

(If optional accessories are mounted on the indoor unit, the indoor unit setting may have to be changed. Refer to the instruction manual (optional hand book) for each optional accessory.)

Procedure

① When in the normal mode, push the " /TEST " button for a minimum of four seconds, and the FIELD SET MODE is entered.

② Select the desired MODE NO. with the "MODE" button.

③ Push the " UP " button and select the FIRST CODE NO.

④ Push the " DOWN " button and select the SECOND CODE NO.

⑤ Push the "RESERVE" button and the present settings are SET.

⑥ Push the " /TEST " button to return to the NORMAL MODE.

(Example) If the time to clean air filter is set to "Filter Contamination-Heavy", set Mode No. to "10", FIRST CODE NO. to "0", and SECOND CODE NO. to "02"

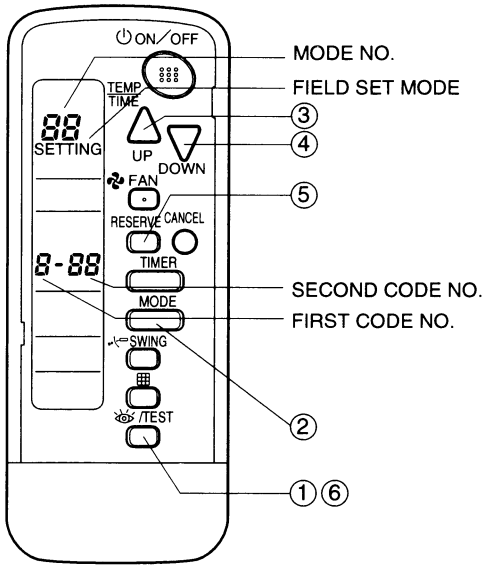
MODE NO.	FIRST CODE NO.	DESCRIPTION OF SETTING	SECOND CODE NO. NOTES) 1.				
			01		02		03
10	0	Filter Contamination-Heavy/Light (Setting for spacing time of display time to clean air filter) (Setting for when filter contamination is heavy, and spacing time of display time to clean air filter is to be halved) Long Life Filter	Light	Approx. 2,500 hrs.	Heavy	Approx. 1,250 hrs	—
	3	Spacing time of display time to clean air filter count (Setting for when the filter sign is not to be displayed)	Display		Do not display		—
12	1	ON/OFF input from Outside (Setting for when forced ON/OFF is to be operated from outside.)	Forced Off		ON/OFF Operation		—
	2	Thermostat Differential Changeover (Setting for when using the remote sensor)	1℃		0.5℃		—
13	4	Air Flow Direction Range Setting	Normal		Normal		Lower

NOTES)

1. The SECOND CODE NO. is factory set to "01". However, for the following cases it is set to "02".
   - Air Flow Direction Range Setting

3PA59585-16N-5

2. Do not use any settings not listed in the table.
3. For group control with a wireless remote controller, initial settings for all the indoor units of the group are equal. (For group control, refer to the installation manual attached to the in door unit for group control.)



TEST OPERATION

- Perform test operation according to the instructions in the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.
- After refrigerant piping, drain piping, and electric wiring, operate according to the table to protect the unit.

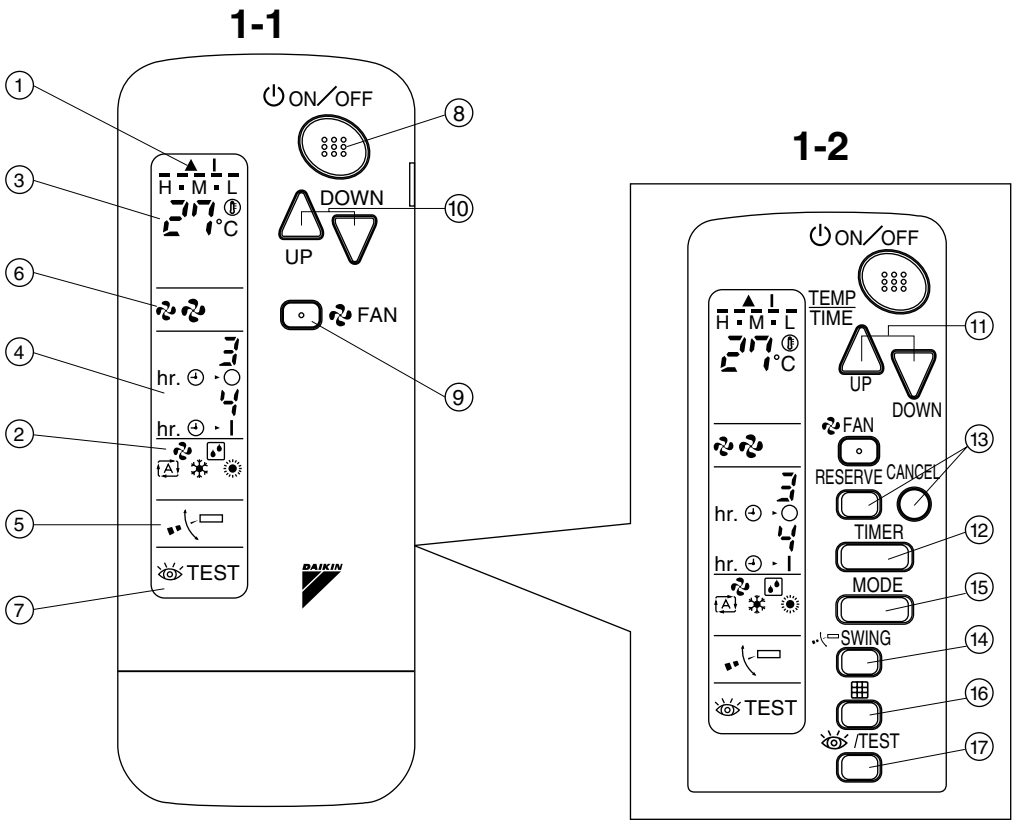
〈**PRECAUTIONS**〉
Refer to malfunction diagnosis label attached to the unit it if does not operate.

Order	Operation
(1)	Open gas side stop valve.
(2)	Open liquid side stop valve.
(3)	Electrify crank case heater for 6 hours.
(4)	Set to cooling with the remote controller and push [ON/OFF] button to start operation.
(5)	Push [/TEST] button twice and operate in TEST OPERATION mode for 3 minutes.
(6)	Push [SWING] button and confirm its operation.
(7)	Push [/TEST] button and operate normally.
(8)	Confirm its function according to the operation manual.

3PA59585-16N-6

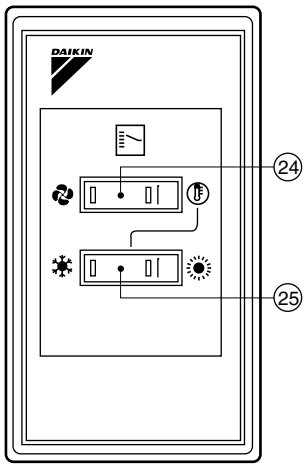
1.2 BRC7E61W / BRC7E65 (for FXF)

1.2.1 Operation

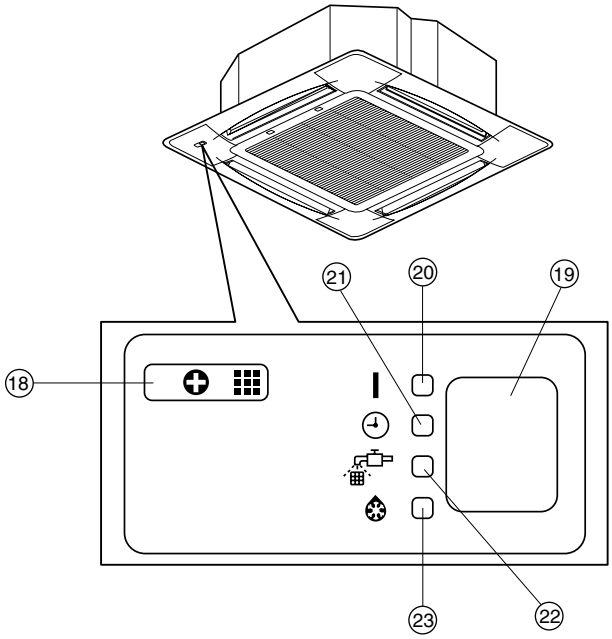


1

COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH



1-3



2

3PA63363-24W-0

1. SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS

Read the following cautions carefully and use your equipment properly.
There are three kinds of safety cautions and tips listed here as follows:

⚠ **WARNING** ..... Improper handling can lead to such serious consequences as death or severe injury.

⚠ **CAUTION** ..... Improper handling can lead to injury or damage. It could also have serious consequences under certain conditions.

NOTE ..... These instructions will ensure proper use of the equipment.

Be sure to follow these important safety cautions.
Keep these warning sheets handy so that you can refer to them if needed.
Also, if this equipment is transferred to a new user, make sure to hand over this user's manual to the new user.

⚠ WARNING

Do not expose yourself directly to the cool air currents too long nor allow the air in the room to become too cold.
Doing so may make you feel sick or damage your health.

If you detect any abnormality (such as the smell of fire), turn off the power and contact your dealer for instructions.
If you keep using the air conditioner under these conditions, it will eventually break down, and could cause electric shocks or catch fire.

Ask your dealer to install your equipment.
Improper installation could cause water leakage, electric shocks or fire.

Ask your dealer to perform servicing or repairs whenever necessary.
Improper servicing or repairs could cause water leakage, electric shocks or fire.

Do not stick your fingers or any other objects into the air inlet, air outlet or air direction vanes during operation.
The high-speed fan is dangerous and could cause injury.

Ask your dealer to remove and reinstall your equipment whenever necessary.
Improper installation could cause water leakage, electric shocks or fire.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use the air conditioner for purposes other than air conditioning.
Do not use the air conditioner for special purposes such as preserving or protecting food, animals, plants, precision machinery or works of art, since the quality of such items could be adversely affected.

When using the air conditioner with other heating equipment, ventilate the room from time to time.
Inadequate ventilation could cause an oxygen shortage.

Do not expose your pets or plants to the air current.
They may be adversely affected.

Do not operate the air conditioner with a wet hand.
Otherwise, you could receive an electric shock.

Do not place any burning appliance in the air current from the air conditioner, since such appliance may suffer incomplete combustion.

Never place nor use any inflammable sprays near the air conditioner, since such sprays could cause a fire.

3PA63363-24W-1

2. NAMES AND FUNCTIONS OF THE OPERATING SECTION (Fig. 1, 2)

1	**DISPLAY " ▲ " (SIGNAL TRANSMISSION)**
	This lights up when a signal is being transmitted.
2	**DISPLAY " " " " " " " " " " " " (OPERATION MODE)**
	This display shows the current OPERATION MODE. For cooling only type, " " (Auto) and " " (Heating) are not installed.
3	**DISPLAY " " (SET TEMPERATURE)**
	This display shows the set temperature.
4	**DISPLAY " hr. hr. " (PROGRAMMED TIME)**
	This display shows PROGRAMMED TIME of the system start or stop.
5	**DISPLAY " " (AIR FLOW FLAP)**
	Refer to Note 1.
6	**DISPLAY " " " " (FAN SPEED)**
	The display shows the set fan speed.
7	**DISPLAY " TEST " (INSPECTION/ TEST OPERATION)**
	When the INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON is pressed, the display shows the system mode is in.
8	**ON/OFF BUTTON**
	Press the button and the system will start. Press the button again and the system will stop.
9	**FAN SPEED CONTROL BUTTON**
	Press this button to select the fan speed, HIGH or LOW, of your choice.
10	**TEMPERATURE SETTING BUTTON**
	Use this button for SETTING TEMPERATURE (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller closed.)
11	**PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON**
	Use this button for programming "START and/or STOP" time. (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller opened.)
12	**TIMER MODE START/STOP BUTTON**
	Refer to Note 1.
13	**TIMER RESERVE/CANCEL BUTTON**
	Refer to Note 2.
14	**AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST BUTTON**
	Refer to Note 1.
15	**OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON**
	Press this button to select OPERATION MODE.
16	**FILTER SIGN RESET BUTTON**
	Refer to the section of MAINTENANCE in the operation manual attached to the indoor unit.
17	**INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON**
	This button is used only by qualified service persons for maintenance purposes.
18	**EMERGENCY OPERATION SWITCH**
	This switch is readily used if the remote controller does not work.
19	**RECEIVER**
	This receives the signals from the remote controller.

3PA63363-24W-2

Note 1 : page 39, Note 2 : page 40

20	**OPERATING INDICATOR LAMP (Red)**
	This lamp stays lit while the air conditioner runs. It flashes when the unit is in trouble.
21	**TIMER INDICATOR LAMP (Green)**
	This lamp stays lit while the timer is set.
22	**AIR FILTER CLEANING TIME INDICATOR LAMP (Red)**
	Lights up when it is time to clean the air filter.
23	**DEFROST LAMP (Orange)**
	Lights up when the defrosting operation has started. (For cooling only type this lamp does not turn on.)
24	**FAN/AIR CONDITIONING SELECTOR SWITCH**
	Set the switch to " " (FAN) for FAN and " " (A/C) for HEAT or COOL.
25	**COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER SWITCH**
	Set the switch to " " (COOL) for COOL and " " (HEAT) for HEAT.

NOTES

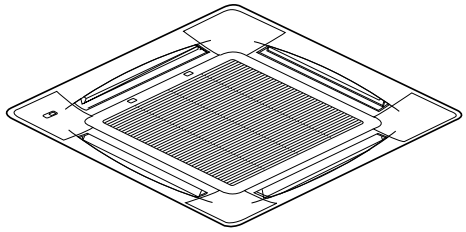
- For the sake of explanation, all indications are shown on the display in Figure 1 contrary to actual running situations.
- Fig. 1-2 shows the remote controller with the front cover opened.
- Fig. 1-3 shows this remote controller can be used in conjunction with the one provided with the VRV system.
- If the air filter cleaning time indicator lamp lights up, clean the air filter as explained in the operation manual provided with the indoor unit.
  After cleaning and reinstalling the air filter, press the filter sign reset button on the remote controller. The air filter cleaning time indicator lamp on the receiver will go out.
- The Defrost Lamp will flash when the power is turned on. This is not a malfunction.

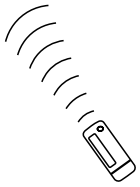
3. HANDLING FOR WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER

Precautions in handling remote controller

Direct the transmitting part of the remote controller to the receiving part of the air conditioner.

If something blocks the transmitting and receiving path of the indoor unit and the remote controller as curtains, it will not operate.





2 short beeps from the receiver indicates that the transmission is properly done.

Transmitting distance is approximately 7 m.

Do not drop or get it wet.

It may be damaged.

Never press the button of the remote controller with a hard, pointed object.

The remote controller may be damaged.

Installation site

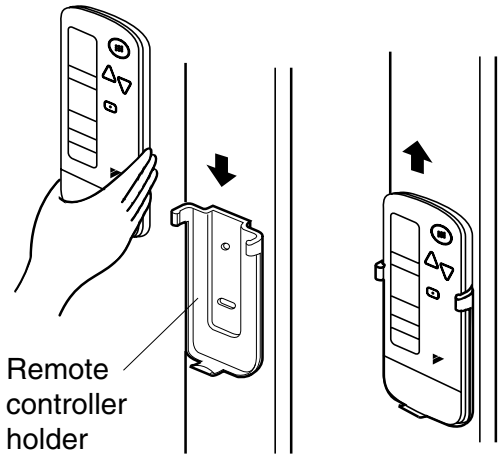
- It is possible that signals will not be received in rooms that have electronic fluorescent lighting. Please consult with the salesman before buying new fluorescent lights.
- If the remote controller operated some other electrical apparatus, move that machine away or consult your dealer.

3PA63363-24W-3

Placing the remote controller in the remote controller holder

Install the remote controller holder to a wall or a pillar with the attached screw. (Make sure it transmits)

Placing the remote controller	Removing the remote controller
Slide from above	Pull it upward

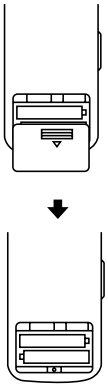


How to put the dry batteries

(1) Remove the back cover of the remote controller to the direction pointed by the arrow mark.

(2) Put the batteries
Use two LR03<IEC> dry cell batteries. Put dry batteries correctly to fit their (+) and (–).

(3) Close the cover



— When to change batteries —

Under normal use, batteries last about a year. However, change them whenever the indoor unit doesn't respond or responds slowly to commands, or if the display becomes dark.

[CAUTIONS]

- Replace all batteries at the same time, do not use new and old batteries intermixed.
- In case the remote controller is not used for a long time take out all batteries in order to prevent liquid leak of the battery.

IN THE CASE OF CENTRALIZED CONTROL SYSTEM

If the indoor unit is under centralized control, it is necessary to switch the remote controller's setting. In this case, contact your DAIKIN dealer.

4. OPERATION RANGE

Split System

If the temperature or the humidity is beyond the following conditions, safety devices may work and the air conditioner may not operate, or sometimes, water may drop from the indoor unit.

COOLING [°C]

OUTDOOR UNIT	INDOOR			OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE	
	TEMPERATURE		HUMIDITY		
RZP71 DV1/VAL RZP100 DV1/VAL RZP125 DV1/TAL RZP140 DTAL	DB	21 to 35	80% or below	DB	– 5 to 50
	WB	14 to 25			

HEATING [°C]

OUTDOOR UNIT	INDOOR TEMPERATURE		OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE	
RZP71 DV1/VAL RZP100 DV1/VAL RZP125 DV1/TAL RZP140 DTAL	DB	15 to 27	DB	– 14 to 21
			WB	– 15 to 15.5

DB: Dry bulb temperature
WB: Wet bulb temperature

3PA63363-24W-4

The setting temperature range of the remote controller is 16°C to 32°C.

VRV System
See the operation manual provided with the air conditioner.

5. OPERATION PROCEDURE

Refer to figure 1 (Note 1)

- Operating procedure varies with heat pump type and cooling only type. Contact your Daikin dealer to confirm your system type.
- To protect the unit, turn on the main power switch 6 hours before operation.
- If the main power supply is turned off during operation, operation will restart automatically after the power turns back on again.

COOLING, HEATING, AUTOMATIC, FAN, AND PROGRAM DRY OPERATION

Operate in the following order.

- AUTOMATIC OPERATION can be selected only by Heat pump split system or Heat recovery VRV system.
- For cooling only type, “COOLING”, and “FAN” and “DRY”operation are able to select.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITHOUT COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH⟩⟩

Refer to figure 1-1, 2 (Note 2)

1 MODE **OPERATION MODE SELECTOR**

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select the OPERATION MODE of your choice as follows.

■ COOLING OPERATION ..... “ ❄ ”
■ HEATING OPERATION ..... “ ☀ ”
■ AUTOMATIC OPERATION ..... “ A ”
- In this operation mode, COOL/HEAT changeover is automatically conducted.

■ FAN OPERATION..... “ ”
■ DRY OPERATION ..... “ ”
- The function of this program is to decrease the humidity in your room with the minimum temperature decrease.
- Micro computer automatically determines TEMPERATURE and FAN SPEED.
- This system does not go into operation if the room temperature is below 16°C.

2 ON/OFF **ON/OFF**

Press ON/OFF button
OPERATION lamp lights up or goes off and the system starts or stops OPERATION.

NOTE
- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes.
  Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITH COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH⟩⟩

Refer to figure 1-1,3 (Note 3)

1 **OPERATION MODE SELECTOR**

(1) Select OPERATION MODE with the COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH as follows.

■ COOLING OPERATION ..... “ ”
■ HEATING OPERATION ..... “ ”

3PA63363-24W-5

Note 1 : page 32, Note 2 : page 32, Note 3 : page 32

■ FAN OPERATION ..... "  "

■ DRY OPERATION ..... "  "

- See "FOR SYSTEM WITHOUT COOL/ HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH" for details on dry operation.

(2) Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select " ◻ "
(This operation is only available during dry operation.)

ON/OFF

Press ON/OFF button
OPERATION lamp lights up or goes off and the system starts or stops OPERATION.

NOTE
- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes.
  Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

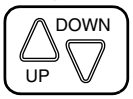
[EXPLANATION OF HEATING OPERATION]
DEFROST OPERATION

- As the frost on the coil of an outdoor unit increase, heating effect decreases and the system goes into DEFROST OPERATION.
- The fan operation stops and the DEFROST lamp of the indoor unit goes on. After 6 to 8 minutes (maximum 10 minutes) of DEFROST OPERATION, the system returns to HEATING OPERATION.

Heating capacity & Outdoor air temperature
- Heating capacity drops as outdoor air temperature lowers. If feeling cold, use another heater at the same time as this air conditioner.
- Hot air is circulated to warm the room. It will take some time from when the air conditioner is first started until the entire room becomes warm. The internal fan automatically turns at low speed until the air conditioner reaches a certain temperature on the inside. In this situation, all you can do is wait.
- If hot air accumulates on the ceiling and feet are left feeling cold, it is recommended to use a circulator. For details, contact the place of purchase.

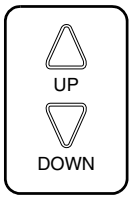
ADJUSTMENT

For programming TEMPERATURE, FAN SPEED and AIR FLOW DIRECTION, follow the procedure shown below.



TEMPERATURE SETTING

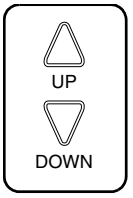
Press TEMPERATURE SETTING button and program the setting temperature.



Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature rises 1°C.

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature lowers 1°C.

In case of automatic operation



Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to "H" side.

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to "L" side.

[°C]

	H	▪	M	▪	L
Setting temperature	25	23	22	21	19

- The setting is impossible for fan operation.

NOTE
- The setting temperature range of the remote controller is 16°C to 32°C.

3PA63363-24W-6

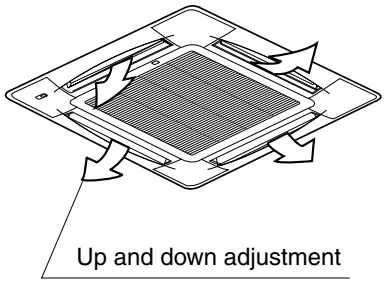
FAN SPEED CONTROL

Press FAN SPEED CONTROL button.
High or Low fan speed can be selected.
The microchip may sometimes control the fan speed in order to protect the unit.

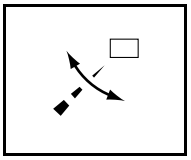
AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST

UP AND DOWN DIRECTION

- The movable limit of the flap is changeable. Contact your Daikin dealer for details.



Press the AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction as shown below.



DISPLAY appears and the air flow direction continuously varies. (Automatic swing setting)

Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction of your choice.

DISPLAY vanishes the air flow direction is fixed (Fixed air flow direction setting).

MOVEMENT OF THE AIR FLOW FLAP

For the following conditions, micro computer controls the air flow direction so it may be different from the display.

Operation mode	Cooling	Heating
Operation conditions	• When operating continuously at horizontal air flow direction	• When room temperature is higher than the set temperature • At defrost operation (The flaps blow horizontally to avoid blowing cold air directly on the occupants of the room.)

NOTE

- If you try cooling or programmed drying, while the flaps are facing downward, air flow direction may change unexpectedly. There is nothing wrong with the equipment. This serves to prevent dew formed on parts in the air discharge outlet from dripping.
- Operation mode includes automatic operation.

PROGRAM TIMER OPERATION

Operate in the following order.

- The timer is operated in the following two ways.
  Programming the stop time (◷ ▸ ○)
  .... The system stops
  operating after the set time has elapsed.
  Programming the start time (◷ ▸ |)
  .... The system starts
  operating after the set time has elapsed.
- The timer can be programmed a maximum of 72 hours.
- The start and the stop time can be simultaneously programmed.

1 TIMER MODE START/STOP

Press the TIMER MODE START/STOP button several times and select the mode on the display.
The display flashes.
For setting the timer stop .... "◷ ▸ ○"
For setting the timer start .... "◷ ▸ |"

3PA63363-24W-7

2 UP DOWN PROGRAMMING TIME

Press the PROGRAMMING TIME button and set the time for stopping or starting the system.

UP

When this button is pressed, the time advances by 1 hour.

DOWN

When this button is pressed, the time goes backward by 1 hour.

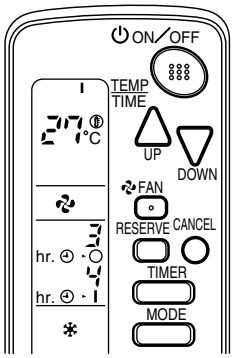
3 RESERVE TIMER RESERVE

Press the TIMER RESERVE button.
The timer setting procedure ends.
The display or changes from flashing light to a constant light.

4 CANCEL TIMER CANCEL

Press the TIMER OFF button to cancel programming. The display vanishes.

For example.



When the timer is programmed to stop the system after 3 hours and start the system after 4 hours, the system will stop after 3 hours and then 1 hour later the system will start.

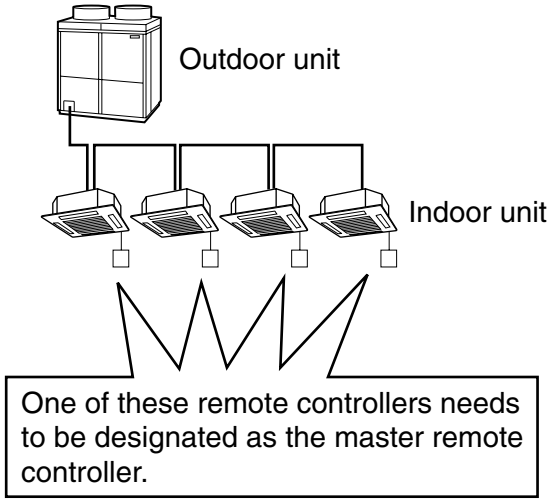
NOTE

- When the timer is programmed to stop the system after 3 hours and start the system after 4 hours, the system will stop after 3 hours and then 1 hour later the system will start.
- After the timer is programmed, the display shows the remaining time.

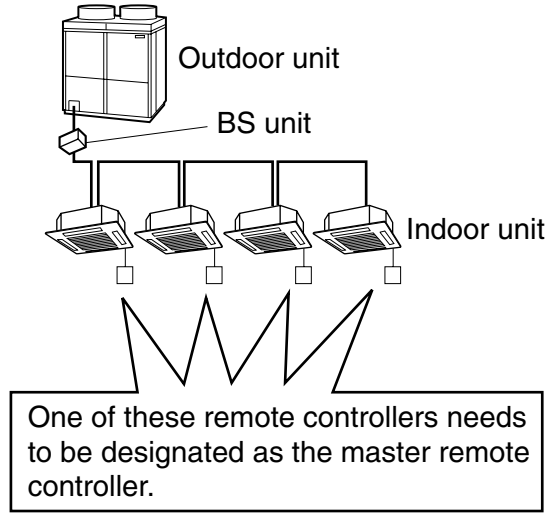
HOW TO SET MASTER REMOTE CONTROLLER (For VRV system)

- When the system is installed as shown below, it is necessary to designate the master remote controller.

■ For Heat pump system
When one outdoor unit is connected with several indoor units.



■ For Heat recovery system
When one BS unit is connected with several indoor units.



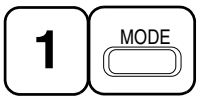
- Only the master remote controller can select HEATING, COOLING or AUTOMATIC (only Heat recovery system) OPERATION.

3PA63363-24W-8

When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “COOL”, you can switch over operation mode between “FAN”, “DRY” and “COOL”.
When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “HEAT”, you can switch over operation mode between “FAN” and “HEAT”.
When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “FAN”, you cannot switch operation mode.
When attempting settings than that consented above, a “peep” is emitted as a warning.
Only with Heat recovery system, you can set the indoor unit to AUTOMATIC. Attempting to do so, a “peep” will be emitted as a warning.

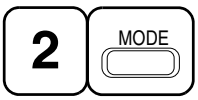
How to designate the master remote controller

Operate in the following order.



Continuously press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button for 4 seconds.

The displays showing “ ◴ ” of all slave indoor unit connected to the same outdoor unit or BS unit flash.



Press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button to the indoor unit that you wish to designate as the master remote controller. Then designation is completed. This indoor unit is designated as the master remote controller and the display showing “ ◴ ” vanishes.

- To change settings, repeat steps 1 and 2.

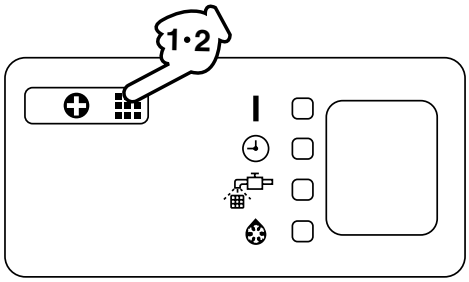
EMERGENCY OPERATION

When the remote controller does not work due to battery failure or the absence thereof, use this switch which is located beside the discharge grille on the main unit. When the remote controller does not work, but the battery low indicator on it is not lit, contact your dealer.

[START]

1 **To press the emergency operation switch.**

The machine runs in the previous mode. The system operates with the previously set air flow direction.



[STOP]

2 **Press the EMERGENCY OPERATION switch again.**

PRECAUTIONS FOR GROUP CONTROL SYSTEM OR TWO REMOTE CONTROLLER CONTROL SYSTEM

This system provides two other control systems beside individual control (one remote controller controls one indoor unit) system. Confirm the following if your unit is of the following control system type.

■ **Group control system**
One remote controller controls up to 16 indoor units.
All indoor units are equally set.

■ **Two remote controller control system**
Two remote controllers control one indoor unit. (In case of group control system, one group of indoor units)
The unit follows individual operation.

3PA63363-24W-9

NOTES
- Cannot have two remote controller control system with only wireless remote controllers. (It will be a two remote controller control system having one wired and one wireless remote controllers.)
- Under two remote controller control system, wireless remote controller cannot control timer operation.
- Only the operating indicator lamp out of 3 other lamps on the indoor unit display functions.

NOTE
- Contact your Daikin dealer in case of changing the combination or setting of group control and two remote controller control systems.

6. NOT MALFUNCTION OF THE AIR CONDITIONER

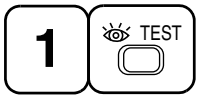
The following symptoms do not indicate air conditioner malfunction

I. THE SYSTEM DOES NOT OPERATE
- **The system does not restart immediately after the ON/OFF button is pressed.**
  If the OPERATION lamp lights, the system is in normal condition. It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **The system does not restart immediately when TEMPERATURE SETTING button is returned to the former position after pushing the button.**
  It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **If the reception beep is rapidly repeated 3 times (It sounds only twice when operating normally.)**
  Control is set to the optional controller for centralized control.
- **If the defrost lamp on the indoor unit's display is lit when heating is started.**
  This indication is to warn against cold air being blown from the unit. There is nothing wrong with the equipment.

7. HOW TO DIAGNOSE TROUBLE SPOTS

I. EMERGENCY STOP

When the air conditioner stops in emergency, the run lamp on the indoor unit starts blinking. Take the following steps yourself to read the malfunction code that appears on the display. Contact your dealer with this code. It will help pinpoint the cause of the trouble, speeding up the repair.



Press the INSPECTION/TEST button to select the inspection mode " 0 ".

" 0 " appears on display and blinks. "UNIT" lights up.

Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the unit number.

Press to change the unit number until the indoor unit beeps and perform the following operation according to the number of beeps.

Number of beeps

3 short beeps .... Perform all steps from [3] to [6].

1 short beep ..... Perform [3] and [6] steps
1 long beep..... Normal state

3PA63363-24W-10

3 MODE

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON

" 0 " on the left-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

4 UP DOWN

Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit beeps twice.

5 MODE

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON

" 0 " on the right-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

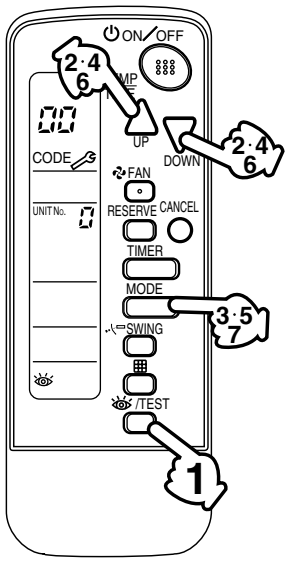
6 UP DOWN

Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit makes a long beep.
The malfunction code is fixed when the indoor unit makes a long beep.

7 MODE **Reset of the display**

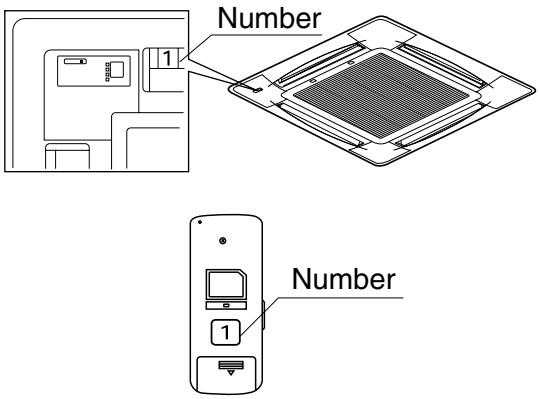
Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON to get the display back to the normal state.



II. IN CASE BESIDES EMERGENCY STOP

1. The unit does not operate at all.

- Check if the receiver is exposed of sunlight or strong light. Keep receiver away from light.
- Check if there are batteries in the remote controller. Place the batteries.
- Check if the indoor unit number and wireless remote controller number are equal.



Operate the indoor unit with the remote controller of the same number.
Signal transmitted from a remote controller of a different number cannot be accepted. (If the number is not mentioned, it is considered as "1")

3PA63363-24W-11

2. **The system operates but it does not sufficiently cool or heat.**
   - If the set temperature is not proper.
   - If the FAN SPEED is set to LOW SPEED.
   - If the air flow angle is not proper.

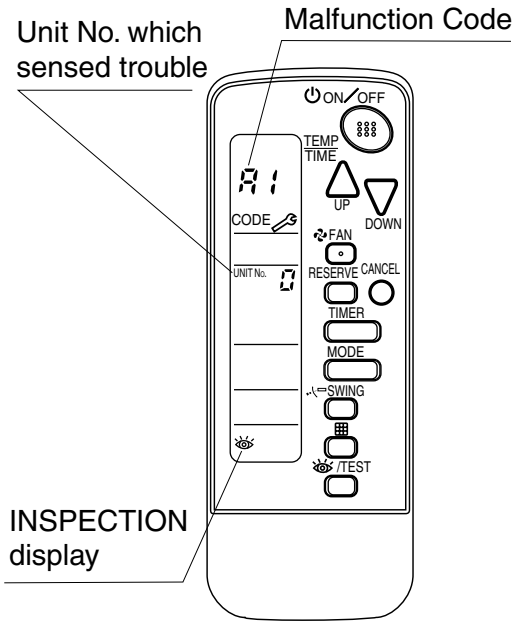
Contact the place of purchase in the following case.

⚠ WARNING

When you detect a burning odor, shut OFF power immediately and contact the place of purchase. Using the equipment in anything but proper working condition can result in equipment damage, electric shock and/or fire.

[Trouble]

The RUN lamp of the indoor unit is flashing and the unit does not work at all.



[Remedial action]

Check the malfunction code (A1 - UF) on the remote control and contact the place of purchase.

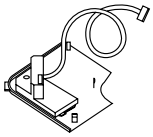
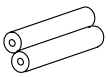
3PA63363-24W-12

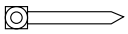
1.2.2 Installation

1. BEFORE INSTALLATION

1-1 ACCESSORIES

Check if the following accessories are included with your unit.

Name	Receiver	Wireless remote controller	Remote controller holder	Dry cell battery LR03 (AM4)	Unit No. label
Quantity	1 set.	1 pc.	1 pc.	2 pcs.	1 pc.
Shape					

Name	Screw for installing remote controller holder	Operation manual	Sealing pad	Binding band
Quantity	2 pcs.	1 pc.	1 pc.	2 pc.
Shape			 20 × 35	

1-2 NOTE TO THE INSTALLER

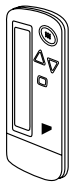
- Be sure to instruct the customer how to properly operate the system showing him/her the attached operation manual.

2. REMOTE CONTROLLER INSTALLATION

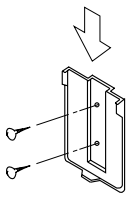
〈**Installing wireless remote controller**〉

- Do not throw the remote controller or impose large shocks. Also, do not store where it may be exposed to moisture or direct sunlight.
- When operating, point the transmitting part of the remote controller in the direction of the receiver.
- The direct transmitting distance of the remote controller is approximately 7 meters.
- The signal cannot be transmitted if something such as curtains blocks the receiver and the remote controller.

- **Installing to a wall or a pillar**
  Slide the remote controller into the remote controller holder from the top.

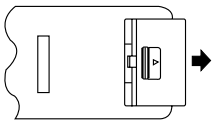


Fix the remote controller holder with the screws.

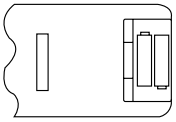


3P091240-3D

- **How to insert the batteries**
  1. Open the back cover of the remote controller by sliding it in the direction of the arrow.



  2. Insert the attached dry cell batteries. Properly insert, set the batteries by matching the (+) and (–) polarity marks as indicated. Then close the cover as before.



3. RECEIVER INSTALLATION

(1) Preparations before installation

Install this kit after installing the decoration panel.

1. Remove the suction grille and the air filter according to the instructions in the installation manual attached to the decoration panel.
2. Remove the control box lid according to the instructions in the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.

(2) Determination of address and MAIN/SUB remote controller.

If setting multiple wireless remote controllers to operate in one room, perform address setting for the receiver and the wireless remote controller.

If setting multiple wired remote controllers in one room, change the MAIN/SUB switch of the receiver.

SETTING PROCEDURE

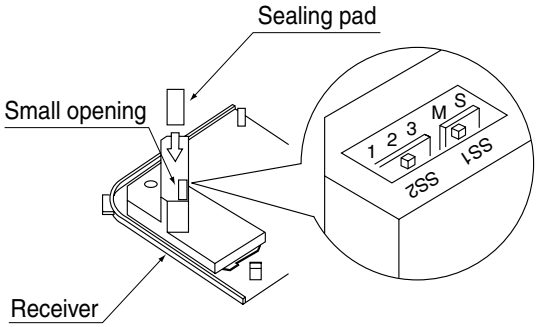
1. Setting the receiver

Through the small opening on the back of the receiver, set the wireless address switch (SS2) on the printed circuit board according to the table below.

Unit No.	No. 1	No. 2	No. 3
Wireless address switch (SS2)			

When using both a wired and a wireless remote controller for 1 indoor unit, the wired controller should be set to MAIN. Therefore, set the MAIN/SUB switch (SS1) of the receiver to SUB.

	MAIN	SUB
MAIN/SUB switch (SS1)		



After completing setting, seal off the opening of the address switch and the MAIN/SUB switch with the attached sealing pad.

3P091240-3D

2. Setting the address of wireless remote controller (It is factory set to " 1 ")
〈Setting from the remote controller〉

1. Hold down the [▦] button and the [/TEST] button for at least 4 seconds to get the Field Set mode. (Indicated in the display area in the figure at right.)

2. Press the [FAN] button and select a multiple setting (A/b). Each time the button is pressed the display switches between "A" and "b".

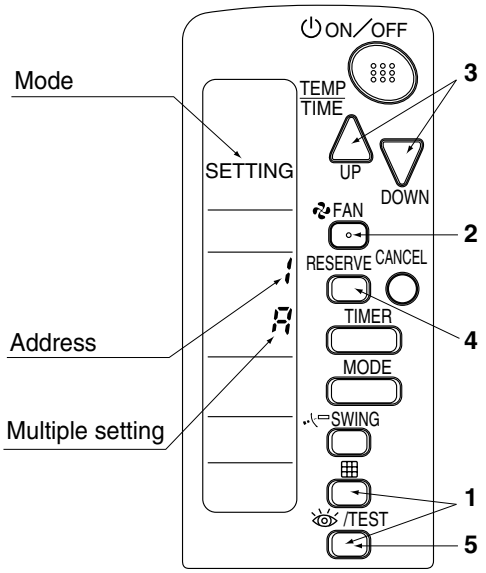
3. Press the " △ UP " button and " ▽ DOWN " button to set the address.

1 → 2 → 3 → 4 → 5 → 6

Address can be set from 1 to 6, but set it to 1 ~ 3 and to same address as the receiver. (The receiver does not work with address 4 ~ 6.)

4. Press the [RESERVE] button to enter the setting.

5. Hold down the [/TEST] button for at least 1 second to quit the Field Set mode and return to the normal display.



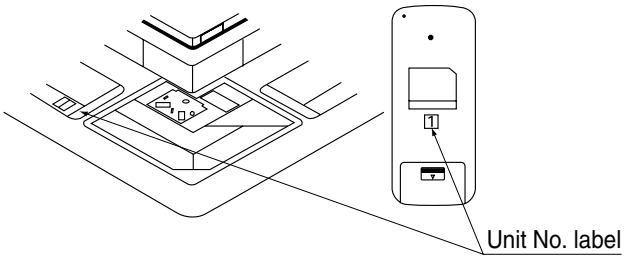
Multiple settings A/b

When the indoor unit is being operating by outside control (central remote controller, etc.), it sometimes does not respond to ON/OFF and temperature setting commands from this remote controller. Check what setting the customer wants and make the multiple setting as shown below.

Remote controller		Movement when the operation is controlled by the other air conditioners and equipment
Multiple setting	Remote controller display	
A: Standard	All items displayed.	When operation changeover, temperature setting or the like is carried out from the remote controller, the indoor unit rejects the instruction. (Signal receiving sound "peeh" or "pick-pick-pick") As a result, a discrepancy between the operation state of the indoor unit and the indication of the remote controller display occurs.
b: Multi System	Operations remain displayed shortly after execution.	Since the indication of the remote controller is turned off, no discrepancy such as mentioned above occurs.

3. Stick the Unit No. label on the air outlet of the decoration panel and the back of the wireless remote controller.

[PRECAUTIONS]
Set the Unit No. of the receiver and the wireless remote controller to be equal. If the settings differs, the signal from the remote controller cannot be transmitted.

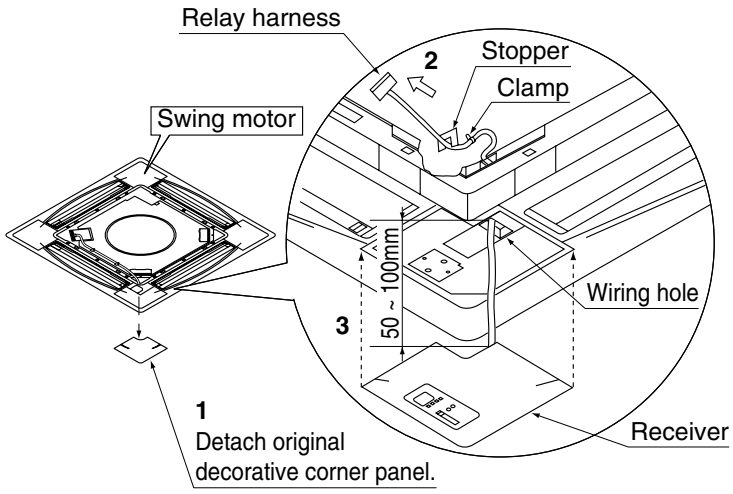


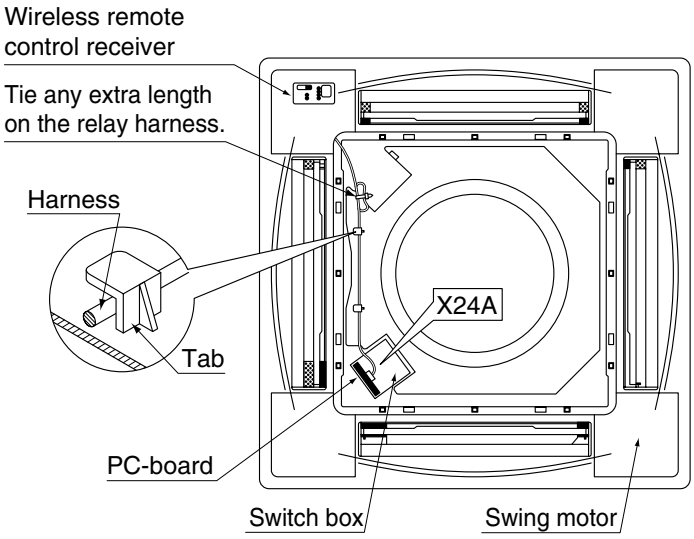
3P091240-3D

(3) Receiver installation

1. Detach the decorative corner panel diagonally opposite to swing motor. This corner panel piece is not needed hereafter.
   (For instructions on attaching/ detaching decorative panels, see the installation manual provided with the original panel.)

   The receiver cannot be installed anywhere but in this corner.
2. Pull the relay harness from the receiver up to where the clamp meets the stopper, as shown at right.
3. Install the receiver where the decorative corner panel before. Proceed in the opposite order in which you removed the corner panel.
4. Fit the relay harness under the tab as shown at right and connect it to connector X24A on the indoor unit PC board. Bundle the remaining harness with the included binding band so that it does not droop or get pinched in the suction grille.
   Use the included binding band to prevent the relay harness from sagging down and getting caught in the suction grill.
5. Attach the lid to the indoor unit's switch box and the suction grille to the decorative panel.



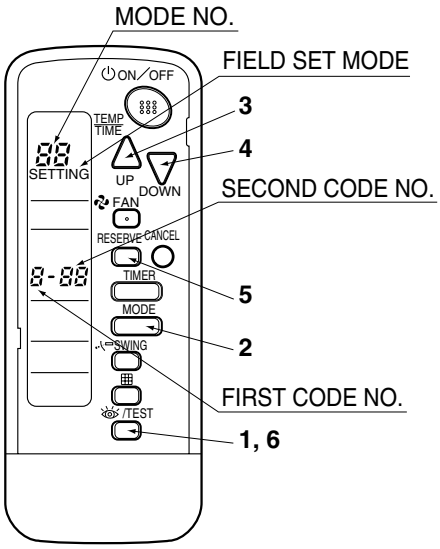


4. FIELD SETTING

If optional accessories are mounted on the indoor unit, the indoor unit setting may have to be changed. Refer to the instruction manual (optional hand book) for each optional accessory.

Procedure

1. When in the normal mode, press the [/TEST] button for a minimum of four seconds, and the FIELD SET MODE is entered.
2. Select the desired MODE NO. with the [MODE] button.
3. Push the " △ UP " button and select the FIRST CODE NO.
4. Push the " ▽ DOWN " button and select the SECOND CODE NO.
5. Push the [RESERVE] button and the present settings are SET.
6. Push the [/TEST] button to return to the NORMAL MODE.



3P091240-3D

(Example)
If the time to clean air filter is set to “Filter Contamination-Heavy”, set Mode No. to “10”, FIRST CODE NO. to “0”, and SECOND CODE NO. to “02”.

MODE NO.	FIRST CODE NO.	DESCRIPTION OF SETTING		SECOND CODE NO. NOTE)				
				01		02		03
10	0	Filter Contamination-Heavy/Light (Setting for spacing time of display time to clean air filter) (Setting for when filter contamination is heavy, and spacing time of display time to clean air filter is to be halved)	Ultra-long-life type	light	approx. 10,000 hours	heavy	approx. 5,000 hours	-
			Long-life type		approx. 2,500 hours		approx. 1,250 hours	
			Standard type		approx. 200 hours		approx. 100 hours	
	1	Long-life filter type (Setting of filter sign indication time) (Change setting when Ultra-long-life filter is installed)		Long-life filter		Ultra-long-life filter (1)		-
	3	Spacing time of display time to clean air filter count (Setting for when the filter sign is not to be displayed)		Display		Do not display		-
11 (Split system)	0	Setting the number of connected simultaneous operation system indoor units.		Pair		Twin		Triple
12 (VRV system)	1	ON/OFF input from outside (Set to enable starting/stopping from remote.)		Forced OFF input		ON/OFF		-
	2	Thermostat differential changeover (Set when using remote controller thermostat sensor.)		1°C		0.5°C		-
13	0	High ceiling setting (Setting for when installed in a ceiling higher than 2.7 m)		Normal		High Ceiling 1		High Ceiling 2
	1	Selection of Air Flow Direction (Setting for when a blocking pad kit has been installed)		F		T		W
	4	Air Flow Direction Range Setting		Upper		Normal		-

NOTE
- The SECOND CODE NO. is factory set to “01”. However, for the following cases it is set to “02”.
  - Air Flow Direction Range Setting

Do not use any settings not listed in the table.
For group control with a wireless remote controller, initial settings for all the indoor units of the group are equal. (For group control, refer to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit for group control.)

3P091240-3D

5. TEST OPERATION

- Perform test operation according to the instructions in the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.
- After refrigerant piping, drain piping, and electric wiring, operate according to the table to protect the unit.

[PRECAUTIONS]

1. Refer to malfunction diagnosis label attached to the unit if it does not operate.
2. Refer to the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit for individual operation system types.

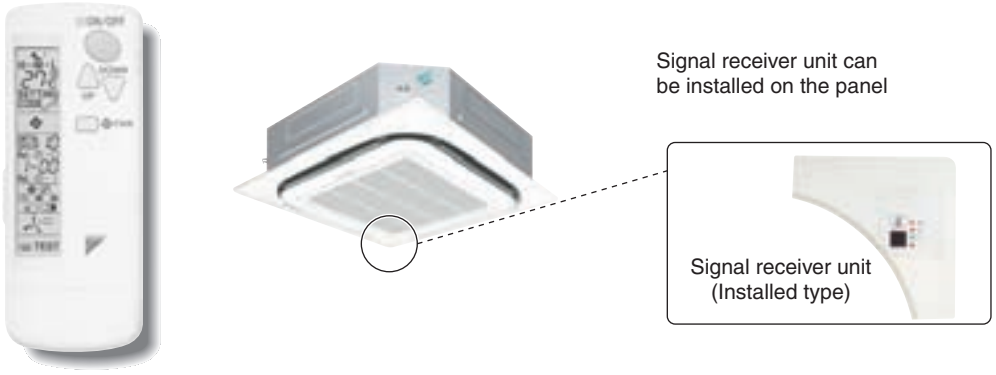
Order	Operation
(1)	Open gas side stop valve.
(2)	Open liquid side stop valve.
(3)	Electrify crank case heater for 6 hours. (Not necessary for cooling type units)
(4)	Set to cooling with the remote controller and push ON/OFF button to start operation.
(5)	Push /TEST button twice and operate in TEST OPERATION mode for 3 minutes.
(6)	Push SWING button and confirm its operation.
(7)	Push /TEST button and operate normally.
(8)	Confirm its function according to the operation manual.

3P091240-3D

1.3 BRC7F634F / BRC7F635F (for FXFQ-P)

1.3.1 Features

BRC7F634F (for Heat Pump)
BRC7F635F (for Cooling Only)



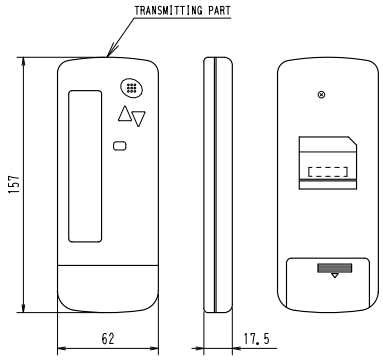
- The same operation modes and settings as with wired remote controllers are possible.
- A light receiver unit for a Ceiling Mounted Cassette (Round Flow) type is mounted into the indoor unit.
- This unit supports the three-speed airflow rate control (HH / H / L).

1.3.2 Function

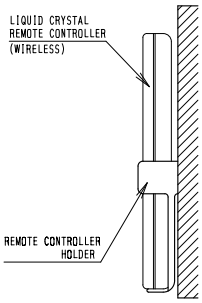
Model	BRC7F634F/635F
ON/OFF	Possible
Temp. setting	Possible
Air flow rate setting	Possible
Air flow direction setting	Possible
Timer setting	Possible
Mode setting	Possible
Filter sign reset	Possible
Inspection/Test operation	Possible

1.3.3 Dimensions

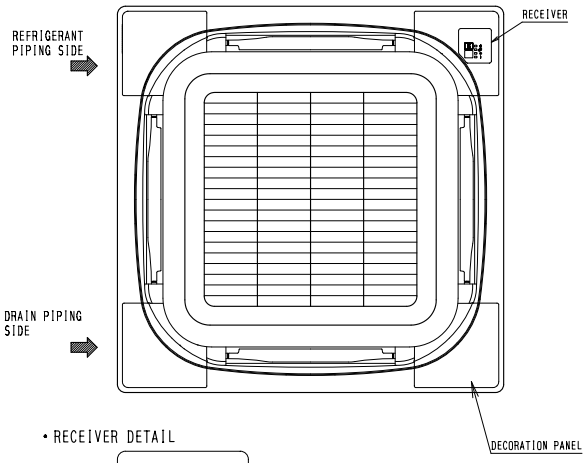
• REMOTE CONTROLLER DIMENSIONS



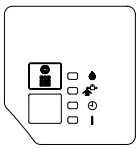
• REMOTE CONTROLLER HOLDER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE
< INSTALLATION TO WALL SURFACE >



• RECEIVER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE



• RECEIVER DETAIL



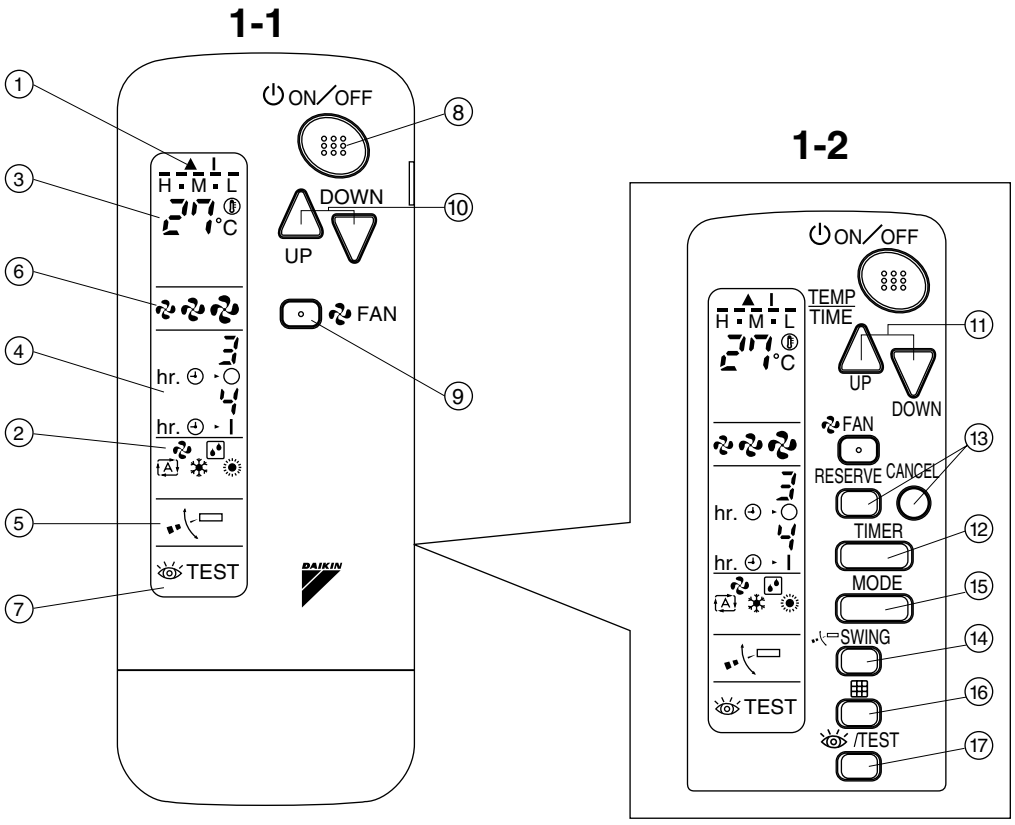
• WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER KIT FOR EACH DECORATION PANEL

WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER KIT	DECORATION PANEL
BRC7F634F BRC7F635F	BYCP125K-W1

C: 3D052918C

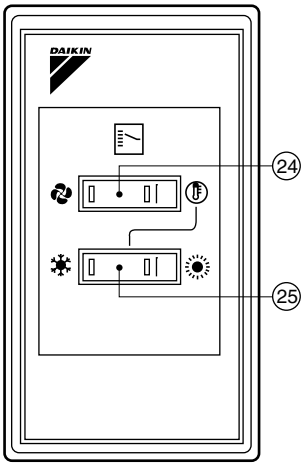
1.3.4 Operation Manual

■ **Names and Functions of the Operating Section**

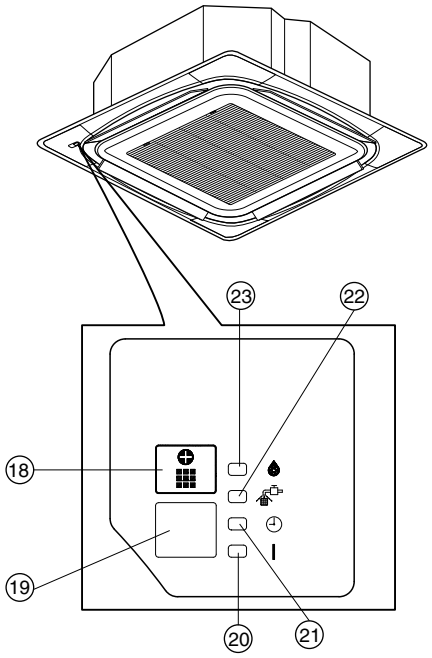


1

COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH



1-3



2

See Fig. 1, 2

1	**DISPLAY " ▲ " (SIGNAL TRANSMISSION)**
	This lights up when a signal is being transmitted.
2	**DISPLAY " " " " " " " " " " " " (OPERATION MODE)**
	This display shows the current OPERATION MODE. For cooling only type, " " (Auto) and " " (Heating) are not installed.
3	**DISPLAY " " (SET TEMPERATURE)**
	This display shows the set temperature.
4	**DISPLAY " " (PROGRAMMED TIME)**
	This display shows PROGRAMMED TIME of the system start or stop.
5	**DISPLAY " " (AIR FLOW FLAP)**
	Refer to page 60.
6	**DISPLAY " " " " " " " " (FAN SPEED)**
	The display shows the set fan speed.
7	**DISPLAY " TEST " (INSPECTION/ TEST OPERATION)**
	When the INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON is pressed, the display shows the system mode is in.
8	**ON/OFF BUTTON**
	Press the button and the system will start. Press the button again and the system will stop.
9	**FAN SPEED CONTROL BUTTON**
	Press this button to select the fan speed, HH, H, L of your choice.
10	**TEMPERATURE SETTING BUTTON**
	Use this button for SETTING TEMPERATURE (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller closed.)
11	**PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON**
	Use this button for programming "START and/or STOP" time. (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller opened.)
12	**TIMER MODE START/STOP BUTTON**
	Refer to page 61.
13	**TIMER RESERVE/CANCEL BUTTON**
	Refer to page 61.
14	**AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST BUTTON**
	Refer to page 60.
15	**OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON**
	Press this button to select OPERATION MODE.
16	**FILTER SIGN RESET BUTTON**
	Refer to the section of MAINTENANCE in the operation manual attached to the indoor unit.
17	**INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON**
	This button is used only by qualified service persons for maintenance purposes.
18	**EMERGENCY OPERATION SWITCH**
	This switch is readily used if the remote controller does not work.
19	**RECEIVER**
	This receives the signals from the remote controller.
20	**OPERATING INDICATOR LAMP (Red)**
	This lamp stays lit while the air conditioner runs. It flashes when the unit is in trouble.
21	**TIMER INDICATOR LAMP (Green)**
	This lamp stays lit while the timer is set.
22	**AIR FILTER CLEANING TIME INDICATOR LAMP (Red)**
	Lights up when it is time to clean the air filter.
23	**DEFROST LAMP (Orange)**
	Lights up when the defrosting operation has started. (For cooling only type this lamp does not turn on.)

24	**FAN/AIR CONDITIONING SELECTOR SWITCH**
	Set the switch to " " (FAN) for FAN and " " (A/C) for HEAT or COOL.
25	**COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER SWITCH**
	Set the switch to " " (COOL) for COOL and " " (HEAT) for HEAT.

NOTES

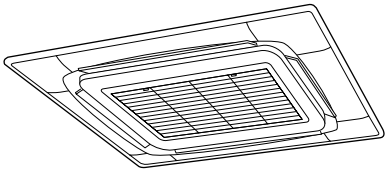
- For the sake of explanation, all indications are shown on the display in Figure 1 contrary to actual running situations.
- Fig. 1-2 shows the remote controller with the front cover opened.
- Fig. 1-3 shows this remote controller can be used in conjunction with the one provided with the VRV system.
- If the air filter cleaning time indicator lamp lights up, clean the air filter as explained in the operation manual provided with the indoor unit.
  After cleaning and reinstalling the air filter, press the filter sign reset button on the remote controller. The air filter cleaning time indicator lamp on the receiver will go out.
- The Defrost Lamp will flash when the power is turned on. This is not a malfunction.

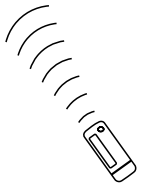
■ Handling for Wireless Remote Controller

Precautions in handling remote controller

Direct the transmitting part of the remote controller to the receiving part of the air conditioner.

If something blocks the transmitting and receiving path of the indoor unit and the remote controller as curtains, it will not operate.





2 short beeps from the receiver indicates that the transmission is properly done.

Transmitting distance is approximately 7 m.

Do not drop or get it wet.

It may be damaged.

Never press the button of the remote controller with a hard, pointed object.

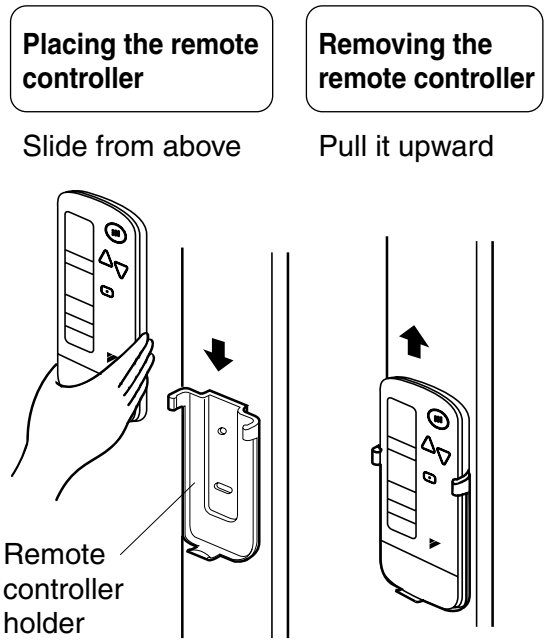
The remote controller may be damaged.

Installation site

- It is possible that signals will not be received in rooms that have electronic fluorescent lighting. Please consult with the salesman before buying new fluorescent lights.
- If the remote controller operated some other electrical apparatus, move that machine away or consult your dealer.

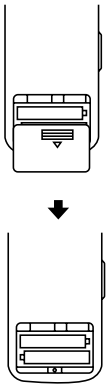
Placing the remote controller in the remote controller holder

Install the remote controller holder to a wall or a pillar with the attached screw. (Make sure it transmits)



How to put the dry batteries

(1) Remove the back cover of the remote controller to the direction pointed by the arrow mark.
(2) Put the batteries
Use two LR03 <IEC> dry cell batteries.
Put dry batteries correctly to fit their (+) and (–).
(3) Close the cover



When to change batteries

Under normal use, batteries last about a year. However, change them whenever the indoor unit doesn't respond or responds slowly to commands, or if the display becomes dark.

[CAUTIONS]

- Replace all batteries at the same time, do not use new and old batteries intermixed.
- In case the remote controller is not used for a long time take out all batteries in order to prevent liquid leak of the battery.

IN THE CASE OF CENTRALIZED CONTROL SYSTEM

If the indoor unit is under centralized control, it is necessary to switch the remote controller's setting.
In this case, contact your DAIKIN dealer.

■ Operation Range

Split System

If the temperature or the humidity is beyond the following conditions, safety devices may work and the air conditioner may not operate, or sometimes, water may drop from the indoor unit.

COOLING [°C]

INDOOR			OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE	
TEMPERATURE		HUMIDITY		
DB	21 to 35	80% or below	DB	– 5 to 50
WB	14 to 25			

HEATING [°C]

INDOOR TEMPERATURE		OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE	
DB	15 to 27	DB	– 14 to 21
		WB	– 15 to 15.5

DB : Dry bulb temperature
WB: Wet bulb temperature

The setting temperature range of the remote controller is 16°C to 32°C.

VRV System

See the operation manual provided with the air conditioner.

■ Operation Procedure

Refer to figure 1 on page 53

- Operating procedure varies with heat pump type and cooling only type. Contact your Daikin dealer to confirm your system type.
- To protect the unit, turn on the main power switch 6 hours before operation.
- If the main power supply is turned off during operation, operation will restart automatically after the power turns back on again.

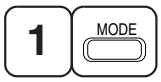
COOLING, HEATING, AUTOMATIC, FAN, AND PROGRAM DRY OPERATION

Operate in the following order.

- AUTOMATIC OPERATION can be selected only by Heat pump split system or Heat recovery VRV system.
- For cooling only type, “COOLING”, and “FAN” and “DRY” operation are able to select.

(1) For Systems Without Cool / Heat Changeover Remote Control Switch

Refer to figure 1-1, 2 on page 53



OPERATION MODE SELECTOR

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select the OPERATION MODE of your choice as follows.

- COOLING OPERATION ..... “ ❄ ”
- HEATING OPERATION ..... “ ☀ ”
- AUTOMATIC OPERATION ..... “ A ”
  - In this operation mode, COOL/HEAT changeover is automatically conducted.
- FAN OPERATION ..... “ ”
- DRY OPERATION ..... “ ”
  - The function of this program is to decrease the humidity in your room with the minimum temperature decrease.
  - The set point is the air temperature when starting operation by dry operation.
  - Micro computer automatically determines TEMPERATURE and FAN SPEED.
  - This system does not go into operation if the room temperature is below 16°C.

2 ON/OFF

ON/OFF

Press ON/OFF button.
OPERATION lamp lights up or goes off and the system starts or stops OPERATION.

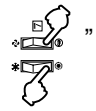
NOTE
- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes. Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

(2) For Systems with Cool/Heat Changeover Remote Control Switch
Refer to figure 1-1,3 on page 53

1

OPERATION MODE SELECTOR

(1) Select OPERATION MODE with the COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH as follows.

- COOLING OPERATION..... “  ”
- HEATING OPERATION..... “  ”
- FAN OPERATION ..... “  ”
- DRY OPERATION..... “  ”
  - See “FOR SYSTEM WITHOUT COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH” for details on dry operation.

(2) Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select “ ”.
(This operation is only available during dry operation.)

2 ON/OFF

ON/OFF

Press ON/OFF button.
OPERATION lamp lights up or goes off and the system starts or stops OPERATION.
- The fan may keep on running for about 1 minute after the heating operation stops for removing the heat in the indoor unit.
- The air flow rate may be adjusted automatically depending on the room temperature or the fan may stop immediately. This is not a malfunction.

NOTE
- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes. Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

[EXPLANATION OF HEATING OPERATION]
- For general heating operation, it may take longer to reach the set temperature than in cooling operation. We recommend starting the operation which was used before using timer operation.

DEFROST OPERATION
- As the frost on the coil of an outdoor unit increase, heating effect decreases and the system goes into DEFROST OPERATION.
- The fan operation stops and the DEFROST lamp of the indoor unit goes on.
  After 6 to 8 minutes (maximum 10 minutes) of DEFROST OPERATION, the system returns to HEATING OPERATION.

Heating capacity & Outdoor air temperature

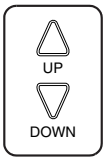
- Heating capacity drops as outdoor air temperature lowers. If feeling cold, use another heater at the same time as this air conditioner.
- Hot air is circulated to warm the room. It will take some time from when the air conditioner is first started until the entire room becomes warm. The internal fan automatically turns at low speed until the air conditioner reaches a certain temperature on the inside. In this situation, all you can do is wait.
- If hot air accumulates on the ceiling and feet are left feeling cold, it is recommended to use a circulator. For details, contact the place of purchase.

(3) Adjustment

For programming TEMPERATURE, FAN SPEED and AIR FLOW DIRECTION, follow the procedure shown below.

TEMPERATURE SETTING

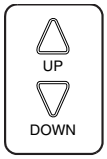
Press TEMPERATURE SETTING button and program the setting temperature.



Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature rises 1°C.

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature lowers 1°C.

In case of automatic operation



Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to “H” side.

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to “L” side.

[°C]

	H	•	M	•	L
Setting temperature	25	23	22	21	19

- The setting is impossible for fan operation.

NOTE

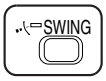
- The setting temperature range of the remote controller is 16°C to 32°C.

FAN SPEED CONTROL

Press FAN SPEED CONTROL button.

Fan speed (HH, H, L) can be selected.

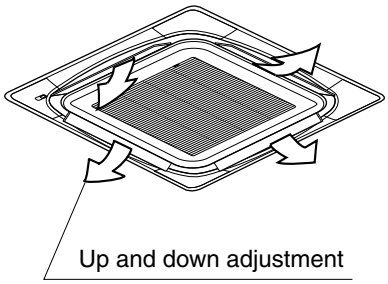
The microchip may sometimes control the fan speed in order to protect the unit.



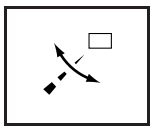
AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST

UP AND DOWN DIRECTION

- The movable limit of the flap is changeable. Contact your Daikin dealer for details.



Press the AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction as shown below.



DISPLAY appears and the air flow direction continuously varies. (Automatic swing setting)

Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction of your choice.

DISPLAY vanishes the air flow direction is fixed (Fixed air flow direction setting).

MOVEMENT OF THE AIR FLOW FLAP

For the following conditions, micro computer controls the air flow direction so it may be different from the display.

Operation mode	Cooling	Heating
Operation conditions	● When operating continuously at horizontal air flow direction	● When room temperature is higher than the set temperature ● At defrost operation (The flaps blow horizontally to avoid blowing cold air directly on the occupants of the room.)

NOTES

- If you try cooling or programmed drying, while the flaps are facing downward, air flow direction may change unexpectedly. There is nothing wrong with the equipment. This serves to prevent dew formed on parts in the air discharge outlet from dripping.
- Operation mode includes automatic operation.

(4) Program Timer Operation

Operate in the following order.

- The timer is operated in the following two ways.
  Programming the stop time (◷ ▸ ◯)
  .... The system stops
  operating after the set time has elapsed.
  Programming the start time (◷ ▸ |)
  .... The system starts
  operating after the set time has elapsed.
- The timer can be programmed a maximum of 72 hours.
- The start and the stop time can be simultaneously programmed.

1 TIMER

TIMER MODE START/STOP

Press the TIMER MODE START/STOP button several times and select the mode on the display.
The display flashes.
For setting the timer stop .... " ◷ ▸ ◯ "
For setting the timer start .... " ◷ ▸ | "

2 UP DOWN

PROGRAMMING TIME

Press the PROGRAMMING TIME button and set the time for stopping or starting the system.

UP

DOWN

When this button is pressed, the time advances by 1 hour.

When this button is pressed, the time goes backward by 1 hour.

3 RESERVE

TIMER RESERVE

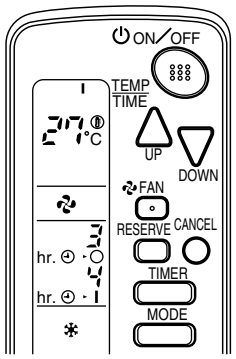
Press the TIMER RESERVE button.
The timer setting procedure ends.
The display or changes from flashing light to a constant light.

4 CANCEL

TIMER CANCEL

Press the TIMER OFF button to cancel programming. The display vanishes.

For example.
When the timer is programmed to stop the system after 3 hours and start the system after 4 hours, the system will stop after 3 hours and then 1 hour later the system will start.



NOTES

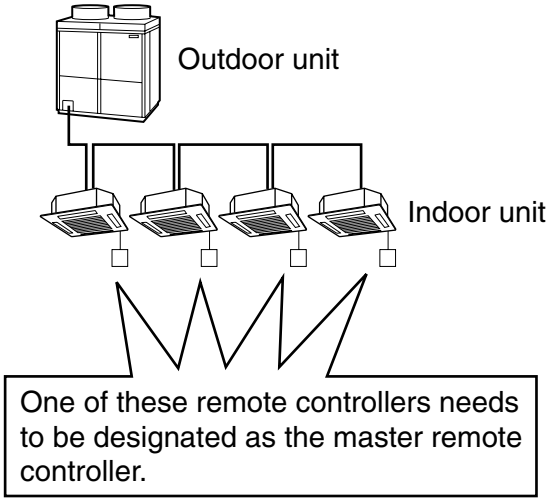
- When the timer is programmed to stop the system after 3 hours and start the system after 4 hours, the system will stop after 3 hours and then 1 hour later the system will start.
- After the timer is programmed, the display shows the remaining time.

(5) How to Set Master Remote Controller (For VRV System)

- When the system is installed as shown below, it is necessary to designate the master remote controller.

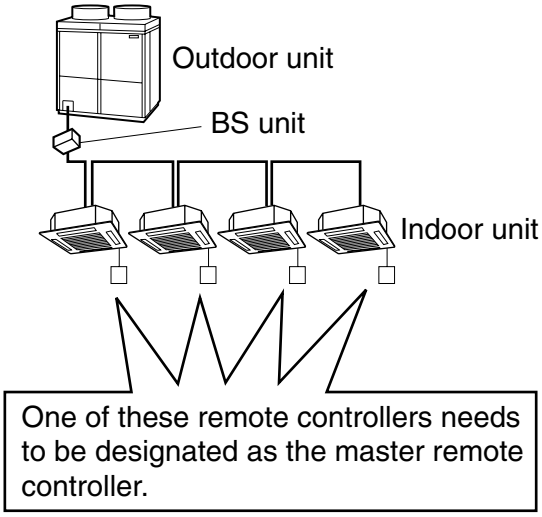
■ **For Heat pump system**

When one outdoor unit is connected with several indoor units.



■ **For Heat recovery system**

When one BS unit is connected with several indoor units.



- Only the master remote controller can select HEATING, COOLING or AUTOMATIC (only Heat recovery system) OPERATION.
  When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “COOL”, you can switch over operation mode between “FAN”, “DRY” and “COOL”.
  When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “HEAT”, you can switch over operation mode between “FAN” and “HEAT”.
  When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “FAN”, you cannot switch operation mode.
  When attempting settings than that consented above, a “peep” is emitted as a warning.
  Only with Heat recovery system, you can set the indoor unit to AUTOMATIC. Attempting to do so, a “peep” will be emitted as a warning.

How to designate the master remote controller

Operate in the following order.

1 MODE

Continuously press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button for 4 seconds.

The displays showing " ⏲ " of all slave indoor unit connected to the same outdoor unit or BS unit flash.

2 MODE

Press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button to the indoor unit that you wish to designate as the master remote controller. Then designation is completed. This indoor unit is designated as the master remote controller and the display showing " ⏲ " vanishes.

- To change settings, repeat steps (1) and (2).

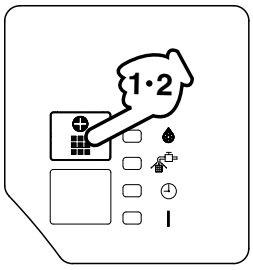
(6) Emergency Operation

When the remote controller does not work due to battery failure or the absence thereof, use this switch which is located beside the discharge grille on the main unit. When the remote controller does not work, but the battery low indicator on it is not lit, contact your dealer.

[START]

1 **To press the emergency operation switch.**

The machine runs in the previous mode.
The system operates with the previously set air flow direction.



[STOP]

2 **Press the EMERGENCY OPERATION switch again.**

(7) Precautions for Group Control System or Two Remote Controller Control System

This system provides two other control systems beside individual control (one remote controller controls one indoor unit) system. Confirm the following if your unit is of the following control system type.

- **Group control system**
  One remote controller controls up to 16 indoor units.
  All indoor units are equally set.

- **Two remote controller control system**
  Two remote controllers control one indoor unit. (In case of group control system, one group of indoor units)
  The unit follows individual operation.

NOTES

- Cannot have two remote controller control system with only wireless remote controllers. (It will be a two remote controller control system having one wired and one wireless remote controllers.)
- Under two remote controller control system, wireless remote controller cannot control timer operation.
- Only the operating indicator lamp out of 3 other lamps on the indoor unit display functions.

NOTE

- Contact your Daikin dealer in case of changing the combination or setting of group control and two remote controller control systems.

■ Not Malfunction of the Air Conditioner

The following symptoms do not indicate air conditioner malfunction

I. THE SYSTEM DOES NOT OPERATE

- **The system does not restart immediately after the ON/OFF button is pressed.**
  If the OPERATION lamp lights, the system is in normal condition. It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **The system does not restart immediately when TEMPERATURE SETTING button is returned to the former position after pushing the button.**
  It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **If the reception beep is rapidly repeated 3 times (It sounds only twice when operating normally.)**
  Control is set to the optional controller for centralized control.
- **If the defrost lamp on the indoor unit's display is lit when heating is started.**
  This indication is to warn against cold air being blown from the unit. There is nothing wrong with the equipment.

II. THE UNIT STOPS ONCE IN A WHILE

- **The remote controller indicates "U4" and "U5", the unit stops. Within several minutes the unit restarts.**
  Due to electrical noise other than that from the air conditioner, the communication between the units is cut off and the unit stops.
  When the noise is gone, the unit automatically restarts.

III. NO CHANGEOVER IS AVAILABLE BETWEEN HEATING AND COOLING MODES

- **The indoor unit makes a "PEEE" receiving sound.**
  When operation changeover is under control, the control is set to the mode that cannot be carried out.

IV. AIR FLOW RATE CANNOT BE OBTAINED AS SET

- **Even if the air flow rate adjusting button is pressed, the air flow rate does not change.**
  When the room temperature reaches the indoor unit set temperature, the outdoor unit stops and the air flow rate of indoor unit drops to the minimum.
  This is to avoid the cold air from getting in contact with the people in the room.

V. AIR DISCHARGE DIRECTION IS NOT AS SET

- **The remote controller indication and the air discharge direction is not the same.**
  Air discharge direction swing is impossible.
  Because it is controlled by microcomputer. Refer to "AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST" on page 60.

VI. ONLY A PART OF INDICATION SHOWS

- **Even if the unit is operated, only the operation indication shows, or even if the indication shows, soon after, the indication other than that for operation disappears.**
  The corresponding indoor unit is that for multi-system and the remote controller is set to the multi-system.

VII.NO INDICATION SHOWS OR ALL INDICATION SHOW

- **When the remote controller button is pressed.**
  The battery is dead.

VIII.INSUFFICIENT COOLING

- **It is in program dry operation.**
  The program dry operation is an operation mode trying to keep the room temperature constant as much as possible. Refer to "Cooling, Heating, Automatic, Fan and Program dry operation" on page 57.

■ How to Diagnose Trouble Spots

I. EMERGENCY STOP

When the air conditioner stops in emergency, the run lamp on the indoor unit starts blinking. Take the following steps yourself to read the malfunction code that appears on the display. Contact your dealer with this code. It will help pinpoint the cause of the trouble, speeding up the repair.

Press the INSPECTION/TEST button to select the inspection mode "⌂".

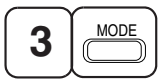
"⌂" appears on display and blinks. "UNIT" lights up.

Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the unit number.

Press to change the unit number until the indoor unit beeps and perform the following operation according to the number of beeps.

Number of beeps

3 short beeps ..... Perform all steps from [3] to [6] .
1 short beep ..... Perform [3] and [6] steps
1 long beep ..... Normal state



Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON.

"⌂" on the left-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit beeps twice.

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON.

"⌂" on the right-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

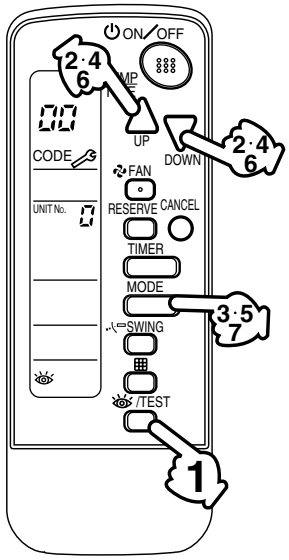
Press until the indoor unit makes a long beep.

The malfunction code is fixed when the indoor unit makes a long beep.

7 MODE

Reset of the display

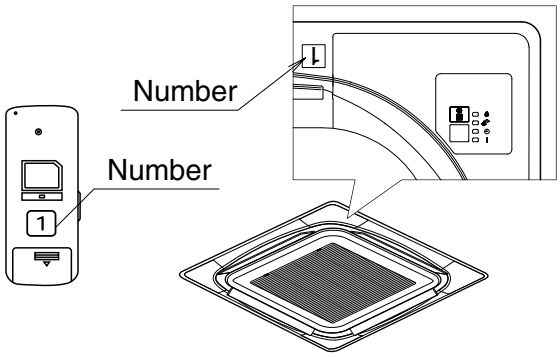
Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON to get the display back to the normal state.



II. IN CASE BESIDES EMERGENCY STOP

1. The unit does not operate at all.

- Check if the receiver is exposed of sunlight or strong light. Keep receiver away from light.
- Check if there are batteries in the remote controller. Place the batteries.
- Check if the indoor unit number and wireless remote controller number are equal.



Operate the indoor unit with the remote controller of the same number.
Signal transmitted from a remote controller of a different number cannot be accepted. (If the number is not mentioned, it is considered as “1”)

2. The system operates but it does not sufficiently cool or heat.

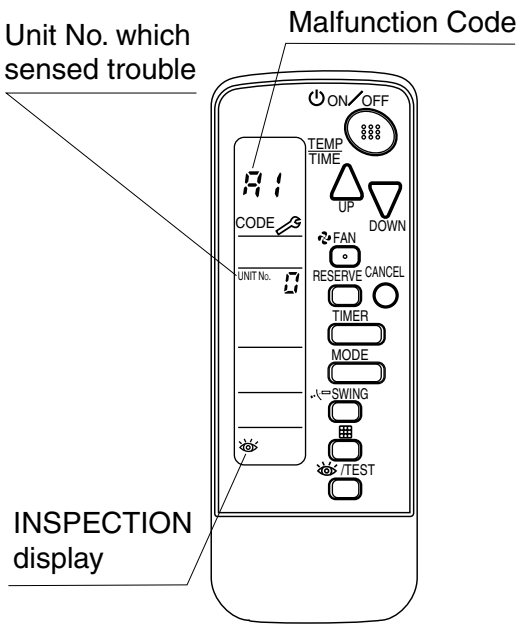
- If the set temperature is not proper.
- If the FAN SPEED is set to LOW SPEED.
- If the air flow angle is not proper.

Contact the place of purchase in the following case.

WARNING When you detect a burning odor, shut OFF power immediately and contact the place of purchase. Using the equipment in anything but proper working condition can result in equipment damage, electric shock and/or fire.

[Trouble]

The RUN lamp of the indoor unit is flashing and the unit does not work at all.



[Remedial action]

Check the malfunction code (A1 - UF) on the remote control and contact the place of purchase. (See page 65.)

1.3.5 Installation

■ Safety Precautions

Please read these “SAFETY PRECAUTIONS” carefully before installing air conditioning unit and be sure to install it correctly.
After completing installation, conduct a trial operation to check for faults and explain to the customer how to operate the air conditioner and take care of it with the aid of the operation manual. Ask the customer to store the installation manual along with the operation manual for future reference.

Meaning of CAUTION notices

CAUTION Failure to observe these instructions properly may result in property damage or personal injury, which may be serious depending on the circumstances.

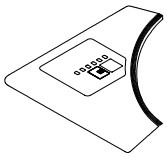
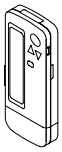
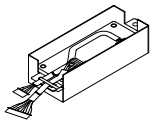
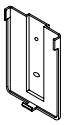
CAUTION

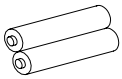
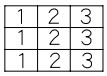
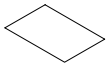
- Refer also to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit and the installation manual attached to the decoration panel.
- Confirm that following conditions are satisfied prior to installation.
  - Ensure that noting interrupts the operation of the wireless remote controller. (Ensure that there is neither a source of light nor fluorescent lamp near the receiver. Also, ensure that the receiver is not exposed of direct sun light.)
  - Ensure that the operation display lamp and other indicators are easy to see.
- The installation position of this kit is 1 position of the decoration panel. Therefore, confirm that its position is set so that the single form the wireless remote controller can be easily transmitted and its display can be easily seen.
- If both this kit and fresh air intake kit are installed, only one duct chamber shall be used. Refer to the installation manual of the fresh air intake kit (optional hand book).

■ Before Installation

(1) Accessories

Check if the following accessories are included with your unit.

Name	Receiver	Wireless remote controller	Transmission	Remote controller holder	Screw for installing transmission	Screw for installing remote controller holder
Quantity	1 set	1 pc.	1 set	1 pc.	2 pcs.	2 pcs.
Shape						

Name	Clamp	Dry cell battery LR03 (AM4)	Unit No. label	Field setting label	Operation manual	Installation manual
Quantity	1 pc.	2 pcs.	1 pc.	1 pc.	1 pc.	1 pc.
Shape						

(2) Note to the Installer

- Be sure to instruct the customer how to properly operate the system showing him/her the attached operation manual.

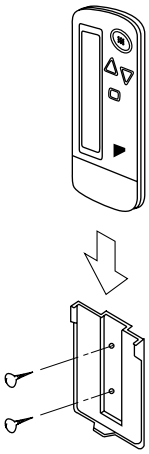
■ Remote Controller Installation

NOTES

- Do not throw the remote controller or impose large shocks. Also, do not store where it may be exposed to moisture or direct sunlight.
- When operating, point the transmitting part of the remote controller in the direction of the receiver.
- The direct transmitting distance of the remote controller is approximately 7 meters.
- The signal cannot be transmitted if something such as curtains blocks the receiver and the remote controller.

- **When attaching in a wall or a pillar**

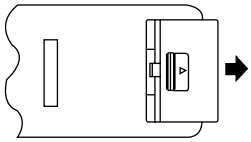
1. Fix the remote controller holder with the screws.



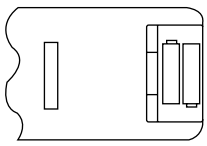
2. Slide the remote controller into the remote controller holder from the top.

- **How to insert the batteries**

1. Open the back cover of the remote controller by sliding it in the direction of the arrow.



2. Insert the attached dry cell batteries. Properly insert, set the batteries by matching the (+) and (–) polarity marks as indicated. Then close the cover as before.



■ Address Set Up

Determination of address and MAIN/SUB remote controller.

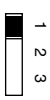
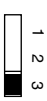
If setting multiple wireless remote controllers to operate in one room, perform address setting for the receiver and the wireless remote controller.

If setting multiple wired remote controllers in one room, change the MAIN/SUB switch of the receiver.

SETTING PROCEDURE

(1) Setting the receiver

Set the wireless address switch (SS2) on the printed circuit board according to the table below.

Unit No.	No. 1	No. 2	No. 3
Wireless address switch (SS2)			

When using both a wired and a wireless remote controller for 1 indoor unit, the wired controller should be set to MAIN. Therefore, set the MAIN/SUB switch (SS1) of the receiver to SUB.

	MAIN	SUB
MAIN/SUB switch (SS1)		

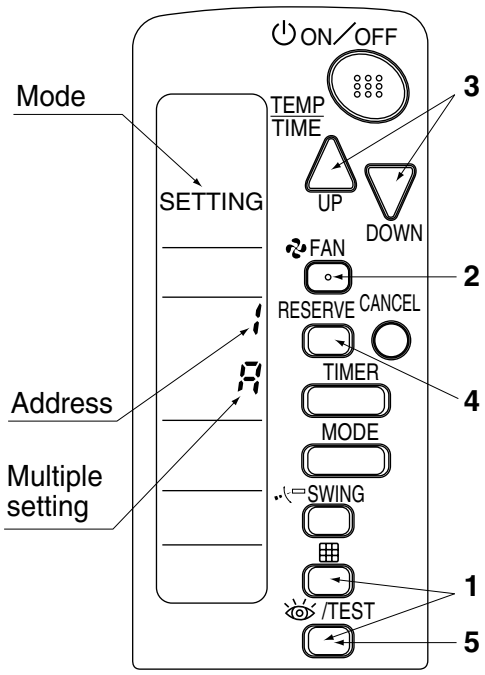
(2) Setting the address of wireless remote controller (It is factory set to " 1 ")

〈Setting from the remote controller〉

1. Hold down the [▦] button and the [/TEST] button for at least 4 seconds to get the Field Set mode.
   (Indicated in the display area in the figure at right.)
2. Press the [FAN] button and select a multiple setting (A/b). Each time the button is pressed the display switches between "A" and "b".
3. Press the " △ UP " button or " ▽ DOWN " button to set the address.

   1 → 2 → 3 → 4 → 5 → 6

   Address can be set from 1 to 6, but set it to 1 ~ 3 and to same address as the receiver. (The receiver does not work with address 4 ~ 6.)
4. Press the [RESERVE] button to enter the setting.
5. Hold down the [/TEST] button for at least 1 second to quit the Field Set mode and return to the normal display.



Multiple settings A/b

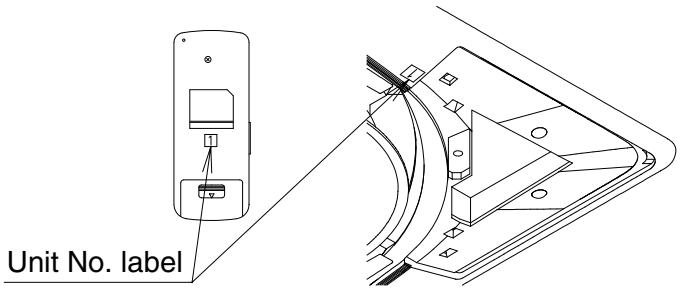
When the indoor unit is being operating by outside control (central remote controller, etc.), it sometimes does not respond to ON/OFF and temperature setting commands from this remote controller. Check what setting the customer wants and make the multiple setting as shown below.

Remote controller		Movement when the operation is controlled by the other air conditioners and equipment
Multiple setting	Remote controller display	
A: Standard	All items displayed.	When operation changeover, temperature setting or the like is carried out from the remote controller, the indoor unit rejects the instruction. (Signal receiving sound "peeh" or "pick-pick-pick") As a result, a discrepancy between the operation state of the indoor unit and the indication of the remote controller display occurs.
b: Multi System	Operations remain displayed shortly after execution.	Since the indication of the remote controller is turned off, no discrepancy such as mentioned above occurs.

(3) Stick the Unit No. label on the air outlet of the decoration panel and the back of the wireless remote controller.

[PRECAUTIONS]

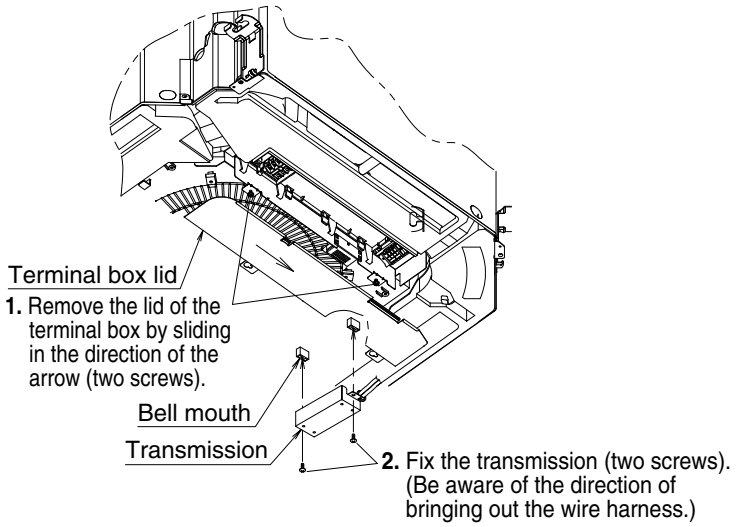
Set the Unit No. of the receiver and the wireless remote controller to be equal. If the settings differ, the signal from the remote controller cannot be transmitted.

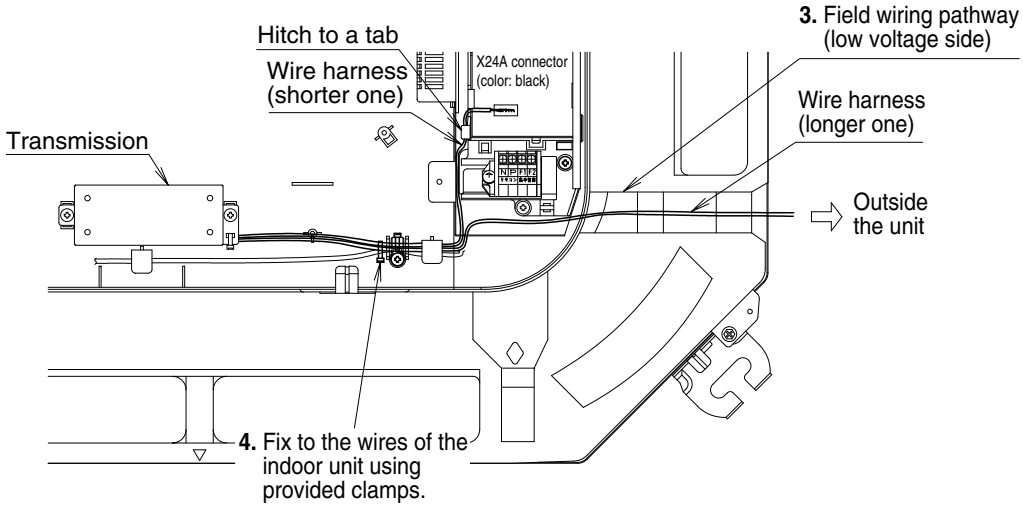


<Attachment of Unit No. label>

■ Installation of the Transmission

1. Remove the lid of the terminal box as described in the Installation Manual supplied with the indoor unit.
2. Fix the transmission at the bottom of the bell mouths on the indoor unit body using provided transmission fixing screws as shown below.
3. Connect the wire harness (shorter one) from the transmission to X24A connector on the printed circuit board in the indoor unit. Bring out the wire harness (longer one) from the transmission to outside of the unit through the field wiring pathway (low voltage side) of the indoor unit.
4. Fix two wire harnesses from the transmission using provided clamps.





■ Installation of the Decoration Panel

Install the decoration panel as described in the Installation Manual supplied with the decoration panel.

NOTE

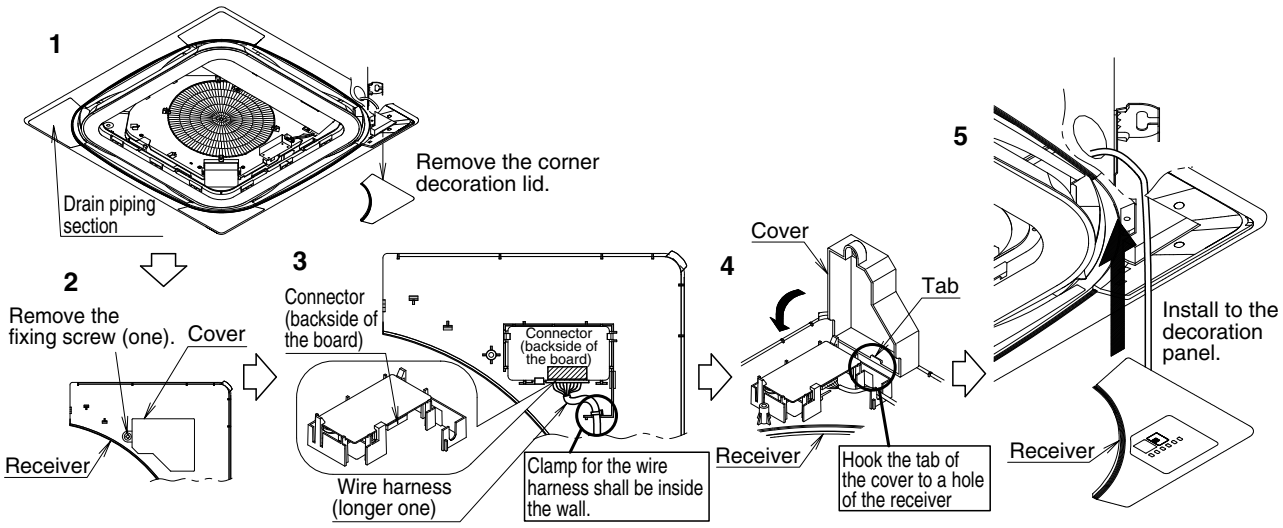
- Watch that the wire harness (longer one) from the transmission is not caught between the indoor unit and the decoration panel, and ceiling and the decoration panel.

■ Installation of the Receiver

1. Remove the corner decoration lid of the decoration panel, locating at the opposing corner of the drain piping section. The lid will be no longer in use.

Be sure to install the receiver to this corner.

2. Remove a backside cover of the receiver.
3. Connect the wire harness (longer one) from the transmission to the connector of the printed circuit board of the receiver.
4. Attach the backside cover of the receiver in reverse procedure to **2**.
5. Install the receiver to the decoration panel.

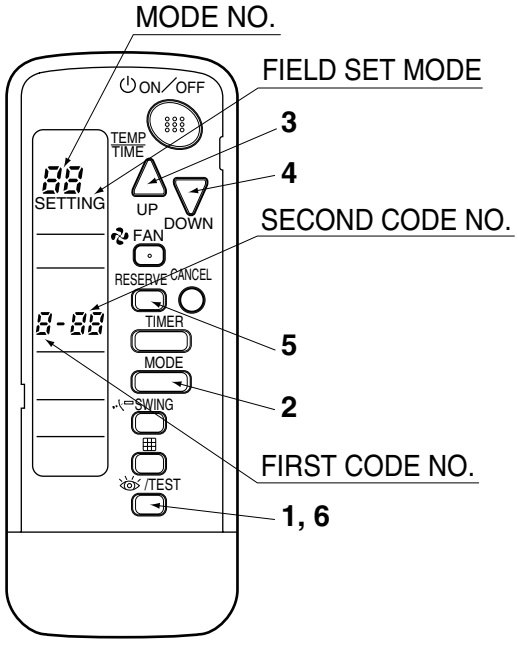


■ Field Setting

If optional accessories are mounted on the indoor unit, the indoor unit setting may have to be changed. Refer to the instruction manual (optional hand book) for each optional accessory.

Procedure

1. When in the normal mode, press the [/TEST] button for a minimum of four seconds, and the FIELD SET MODE is entered.
2. Select the desired MODE NO. with the [MODE] button.
3. Push the " ∆ UP " button and select the FIRST CODE NO.
4. Push the " ∇ DOWN " button and select the SECOND CODE NO.
5. Push the [RESERVE] button and the present settings are SET.
6. Push the [/TEST] button to return to the NORMAL MODE.



(Example)
If the time to clean air filter is set to "Filter Contamination-Heavy", set Mode No. to "10", FIRST CODE NO. to "0", and SECOND CODE NO. to "02".

MODE NO.	FIRST CODE NO.	DESCRIPTION OF SETTING		SECOND CODE NO. NOTE)				
				01		02		03
10	0	Filter Contamination-Heavy/Light (Setting for spacing time of display time to clean air filter) (Setting for when filter contamination is heavy, and spacing time of display time to clean air filter is to be halved)	Ultra-long-life type	light	approx. 10,000 hours	heavy	approx. 5,000 hours	-
			Long-life type		approx. 2,500 hours		approx. 1,250 hours	
			Standard type		approx. 200 hours		approx. 100 hours	
	1	Long-life filter type (Setting of filter sign indication time) (Change setting when Ultra-long-life filter is installed)		Long-life filter		Ultra-long-life filter		-
	3	Spacing time of display time to clean air filter count (Setting for when the filter sign is not to be displayed)		Display		Do not display		-
13	0	High ceiling setting (Setting for when installed in a ceiling higher than 2.7 m)		Normal		High Ceiling 1		High Ceiling 2
	1	Selection of Air Flow Direction (Setting for when a blocking pad kit has been installed)		F		T		W
	4	Air Flow Direction Range Setting		Upper		Normal		-

NOTE

- The SECOND CODE NO. is factory set to "01". However, for the following cases it is set to "02".
  - Air Flow Direction Range Setting

Do not use any settings not listed in the table.
For group control with a wireless remote controller, initial settings for all the indoor units of the group are equal. (For group control, refer to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit for group control.)

■ Test Operation

- Perform test operation according to the instructions in the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.
- After refrigerant piping, drain piping, and electric wiring, operate according to the table to protect the unit.

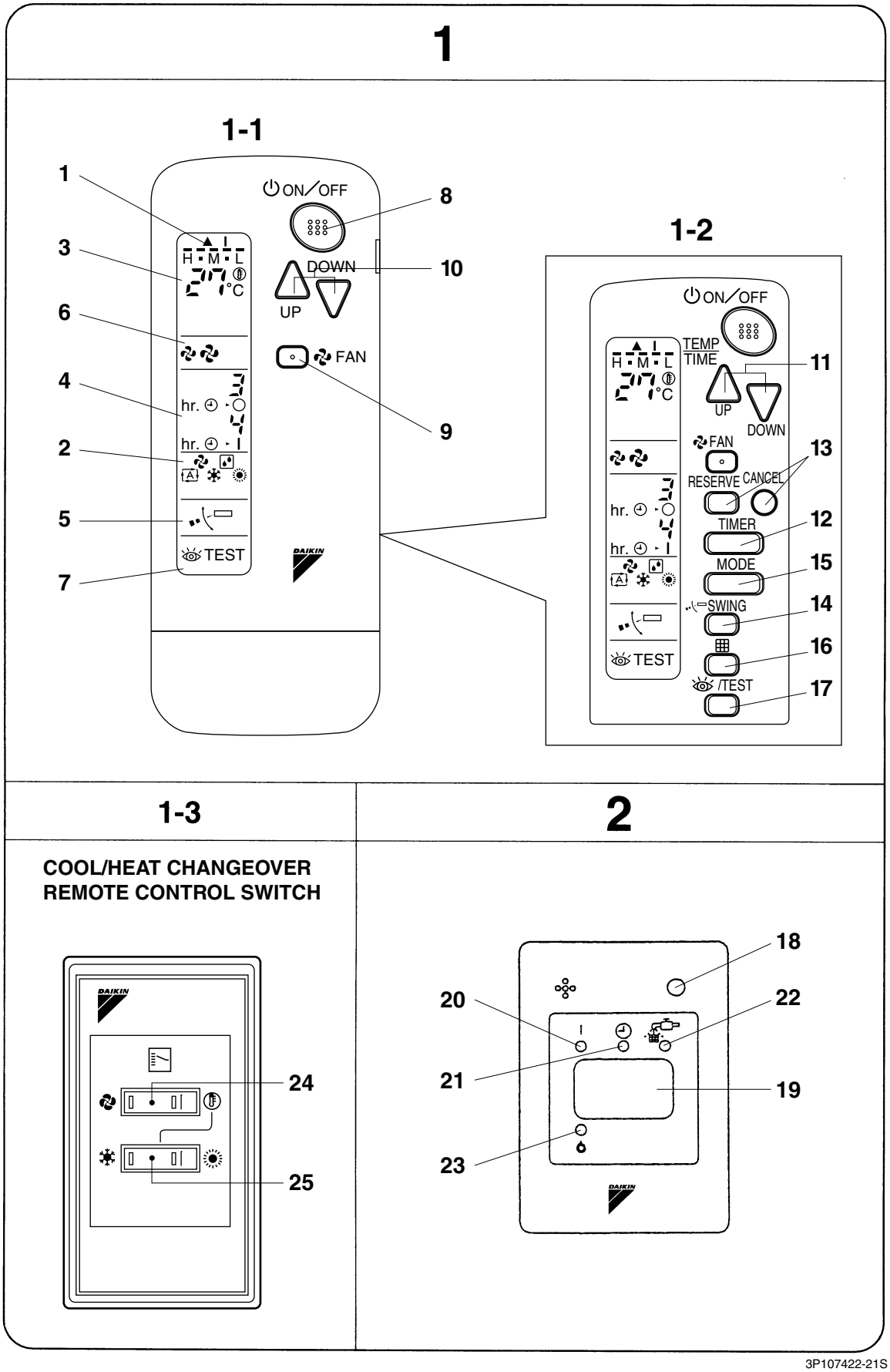
[PRECAUTIONS]

1. Refer to malfunction diagnosis in the installation manual attached to the indoor unit for split types.
2. Refer to malfunction diagnosis in the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit for VRV system types.

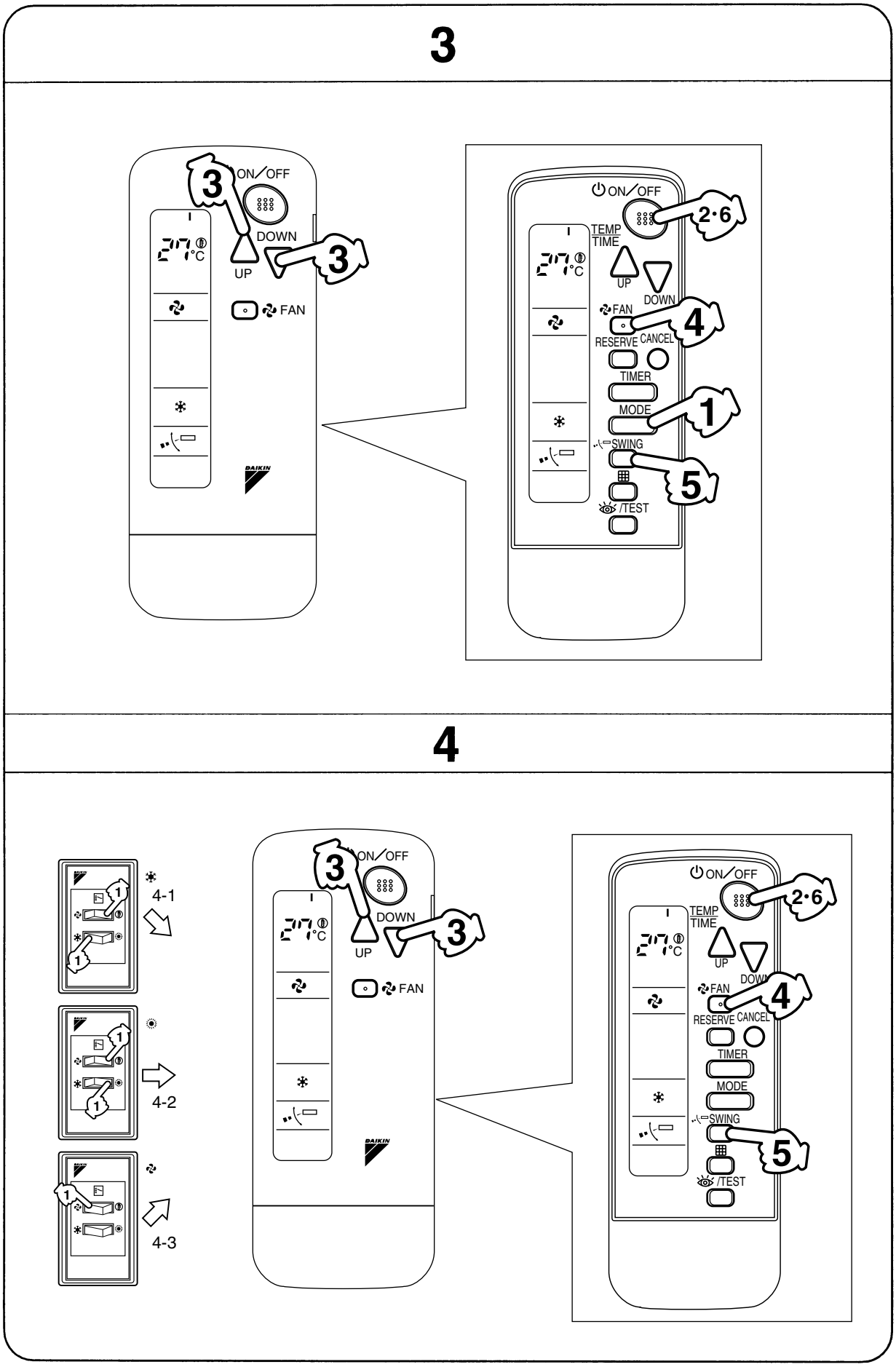
Order	Operation
(1)	Open gas side stop valve.
(2)	Open liquid side stop valve.
(3)	Electrify crank case heater for 6 hours. (Not necessary for cooling type units)
(4)	Set to cooling with the remote controller and push [ON/OFF] button to start operation.
(5)	Push [/TEST] button twice and operate in TEST OPERATION.
(6)	Push [SWING] button and confirm its operation.
(7)	Push [/TEST] button and operate normally.
(8)	Confirm its function according to the operation manual.

1.4 BRC4C61 / BRC4C62 / BRC4C63 / BRC4C64 (for FXK(Q), FXD, FXDYQ, FXS, FXSYQ, FXM, FXMQ-M(A), FXL(Q), FXN(Q), FXYD, FXYB)

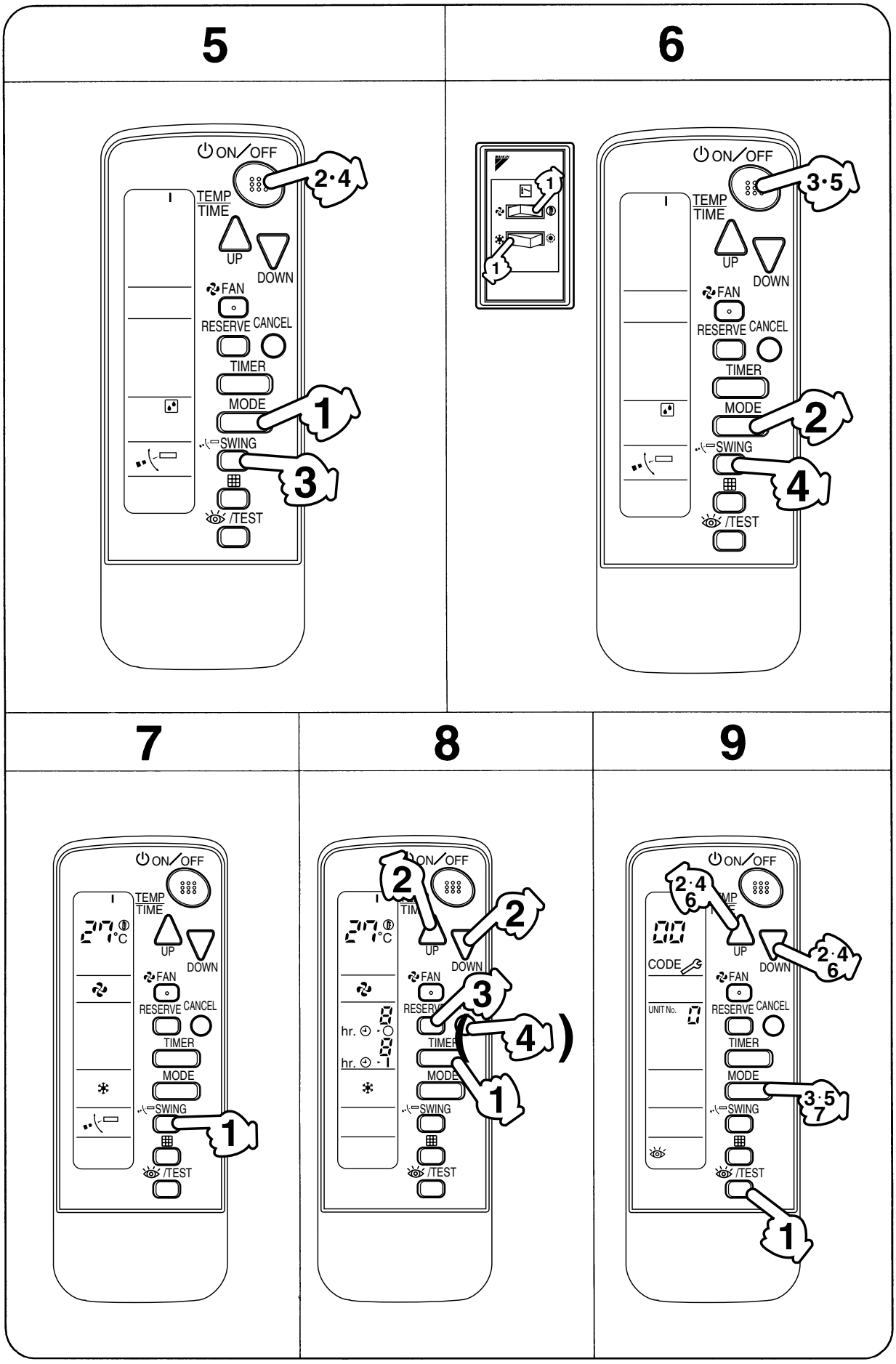
1.4.1 Operation



3P107422-21S



3P107422-21S



3P107422-21S

2. NAMES AND FUNCTIONS OF THE OPERATING SECTION (Fig. 1, 2)

1	**DISPLAY " ▲ " (SIGNAL TRANSMISSION)**
	This lights up when a signal is being transmitted.
2	**DISPLAY " " " " " " " " " " " " (OPERATION MODE)**
	This display shows the current OPERATION MODE. For straight cooling type, " " (Auto) and " " (Heating) are not installed.
3	**DISPLAY " " (SET TEMPERATURE)**
	This display shows the set temperature.
4	**DISPLAY " " (PROGRAMMED TIME)**
	This display shows PROGRAMMED TIME of the system start or stop.
5	**DISPLAY " " (AIR FLOW FLAP) (BRC4C61, 63 only)**
	Refer to Note 1.
6	**DISPLAY " " " " (FAN SPEED)**
	The display shows the set fan speed.
7	**DISPLAY " TEST " (INSPECTION/ TEST OPERATION)**
	When the INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON is pressed, the display shows the system mode is in.
8	**ON/OFF BUTTON**
	Press the button and the system will start. Press the button again and the system will stop.
9	**FAN SPEED CONTROL BUTTON**
	Press this button to select the fan speed, HIGH or LOW, of your choice.
10	**TEMPERATURE SETTING BUTTON**
	Use this button for SETTING TEMPERATURE (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller closed.)
11	**PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON**
	Use this button for programming "START and/or STOP" time. (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller opened.)
12	**TIMER MODE START/STOP BUTTON**
	Refer to Note 2.
13	**TIMER RESERVE/CANCEL BUTTON**
	Refer to Note 3.
14	**AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST BUTTON (BRC4C61, 63 only)**
	Refer to Note 4.
15	**OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON**
	Press this button to select OPERATION MODE.
16	**FILTER SIGN RESET BUTTON**
	Refer to the section of MAINTENANCE in the operation manual attached to the indoor unit.
17	**INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON**
	This button is used only by qualified service persons for maintenance purposes.
18	**EMERGENCY OPERATION SWITCH**
	This switch is readily used if the remote controller does not work.
19	**RECEIVER**
	This receives the signals from the remote controller.
20	**OPERATING INDICATOR LAMP (Red)**
	This lamp stays lit while the air conditioner runs. It flashes when the unit is in trouble.
21	**TIMER INDICATOR LAMP (Green)**
	This lamp stays lit while the timer is set.
22	**AIR FILTER CLEANING TIME INDICATOR LAMP (Red)**
	Lights up when it is time to clean the air filter.

3P107422-21S

Note 1 : page 82, Note 2 : page 82, Note 3 : page 82, Note 4 : page 82

23	**DEFROST LAMP (Orange)**
	Lights up when the defrosting operation has started. (For straight cooling type this lamp does not turn on.)
24	**FAN/AIR CONDITIONING SELECTOR SWITCH**
	Set the switch to " " (FAN) for FAN and " " (A/C) for HEAT or COOL.
25	**COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER SWITCH**
	Set the switch to " " (COOL) for COOL and " " (HEAT) for HEAT.

NOTES

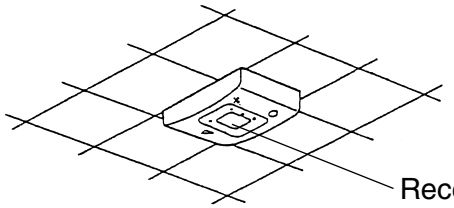
- For the sake of explanation, all indications are shown on the display in Figure 1 contrary to actual running situations.
- Fig. 1-2 shows the remote controller with the front cover opened.
- Fig. 1-3 shows this remote controller can be used in conjunction with the one provided with the VRV system.
- If the air filter cleaning time indicator lamp lights up, clean the air filter as explained in the operation manual provided with the indoor unit.
  After cleaning and reinstalling the air filter, press the filter sign reset button on the remote controller. The air filter cleaning time indicator lamp on the receiver will go out.

3. HANDLING FOR WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER

Precautions in handling remote controller

Direct the transmitting part of the remote controller to the receiving part of the air conditioner.

If something blocks the transmitting and receiving path of the indoor unit and the remote controller as curtains, it will not operate.



2 short beeps from the receiver indicates that the transmission is properly done.

Transmitting distance is approximately 7 m.

Do not drop or get it wet.

It may be damaged.

Never press the button of the remote controller with a hard, pointed object.

The remote controller may be damaged.

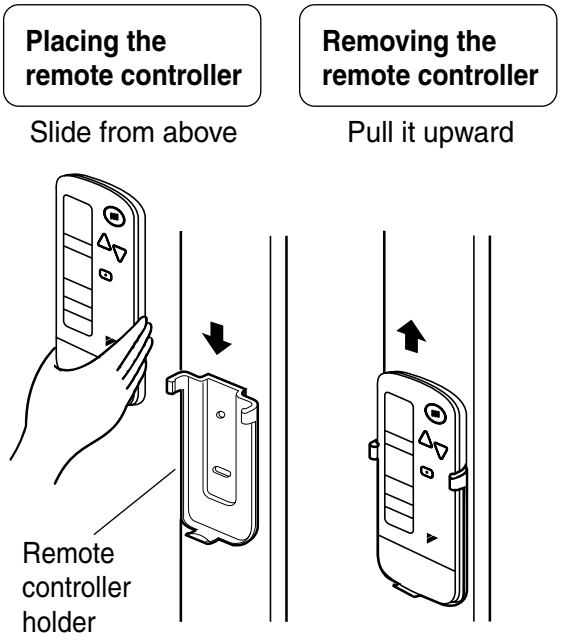
Installation site

- It is possible that signals will not be received in rooms that have electronic fluorescent lighting. Please consult with the salesman before buying new fluorescent lights.
- If the remote controller operated some other electrical apparatus, move that machine away or consult your dealer.

3P107422-21S

Placing the remote controller in the remote controller holder

Install the remote controller holder to a wall or a pillar with the attached screw. (Make sure it transmits)

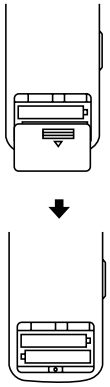


How to put the dry batteries

(1) Remove the back cover of the remote controller to the direction pointed by the arrow mark.

(2) Put the batteries
Use two dry cell batteries (AAA.LR03 (alkaline)). Put dry batteries correctly to fit their (+) and (–).

(3) Close the cover



— When to change batteries

Under normal use, batteries last about a year. However, change them whenever the indoor unit doesn't respond or responds slowly to commands, or if the display becomes dark.

[CAUTIONS]

- Replace all batteries at the same time, do not use new and old batteries intermixed.
- In case the remote controller is not used for a long time remove all batteries in order to prevent liquid leak of the battery.

IN THE CASE OF CENTRALIZED CONTROL SYSTEM

- If the indoor unit is under centralized control, it is necessary to switch the remote controller's setting.
  In this case, contact your DAIKIN dealer.

4. OPERATION PROCEDURE

- Operating procedure varies with heat pump type and straight cooling type. Contact your Daikin dealer to confirm your system type.
- To protect the unit, turn on the main power switch 6 hours before operation.
- If the main power supply is turned off during operation, operation will restart automatically after the power turns back on again.

COOLING, HEATING, AUTOMATIC AND FAN OPERATION (Fig. 3, 4)

- AUTOMATIC OPERATION can be selected only by Heat recovery system.
- Cooling only system gives selection of FAN or COOLING OPERATION only.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITHOUT COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 3)⟩⟩

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select the OPERATION MODE of your choice as follows.

- COOLING OPERATION ..... " ☼ "
- HEATING OPERATION ..... " ☀ "
- AUTOMATIC OPERATION ..... " Ⓐ "
- FAN OPERATION ..... " ✣ "

3P107422-21S

On AUTOMATIC OPERATION

In this operation mode, COOL/HEAT changeover is automatically conducted at a present indoor temperature.

2 Press ON/OFF button.

OPERATION lamp lights up and the system starts OPERATION.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITH COOL/ HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 4)⟩⟩

1 Select OPERATION MODE with the COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH as follows.

■ COOLING OPERATION .....
Refer to fig. 4-1 (,)

■ HEATING OPERATION .....
Refer to fig. 4-2 (,)

■ FAN OPERATION .....
Refer to fig. 4-3 ( )

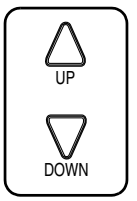
2 Press ON/OFF button.

OPERATION lamp lights up and the system starts OPERATION.

ADJUSTMENT

For programming TEMPERATURE and FAN SPEED and AIR FLOW DIRECTION, follow the procedure shown below.

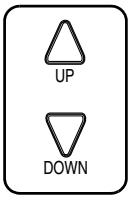
3 Press TEMPERATURE SETTING button and program the setting temperature.



Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature rises 1°C.

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature lowers 1°C.

In case of automatic operation



Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to “H” side.

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to “L” side.

[°C]

	H	▪	M	▪	L
Setting temperature	25	23	22	21	19

NOTE

- The setting is impossible for fan operation.

4 Press FAN SPEED CONTROL button.

High or Low fan speed can be selected.

5 Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION button. (BRC4C61, 63 only)

Refer to “ADJUSTING THE AIR FLOW DIRECTION” (Note) for details.

STOPPING THE SYSTEM

6 Press ON/OFF button once again.

OPERATION lamp goes off, and the system stops OPERATION.

NOTE

- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes. Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

[EXPLANATION OF HEATING OPERATION]

DEFROST OPERATION

- As the frost on the coil of an outdoor unit increase, heating effect decreases and the system goes into DEFROST OPERATION.
- The fan operation stops and the DEFROST lamp of the indoor unit goes on. After 6 to 8 minutes (maximum 10 minutes) of DEFROST OPERATION, the system returns to HEATING OPERATION.

Note : page 82

3P107422-21S

Heating capacity & Outdoor air temperature

- Heating capacity drops as outdoor air temperature lowers. If feeling cold, use another heater at the same time as this air conditioner.
- Hot air is circulated to warm the room. It will take some time from when the air conditioner is first started until the entire room becomes warm. The internal fan automatically turns at low speed until the air conditioner reaches a certain temperature on the inside. In this situation, all you can do is wait.
- If hot air accumulates on the ceiling and feet are left feeling cold, it is recommended to use a circulator. For details, contact the place of purchase.

PROGRAM DRY OPERATION (Fig. 5, 6)

- The function of this program is to decrease the humidity in your room with the minimum temperature decrease.
- Micro computer automatically determines TEMPERATURE and FAN SPEED.
- This system does not go into operation if the room temperature is below 16°C.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITHOUT COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 5)⟩⟩

(1) Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select "💧" (PROGRAM DRY OPERATION).

(2) Press ON/OFF button.

OPERATION lamp lights up and system starts OPERATION.

ADJUSTMENT

(3) Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button. (BRC4C61, 63 only)

Refer to "ADJUSTING THE AIR FLOW DIRECTION" (Note) for details.

STOPPING THE SYSTEM

(4) Press ON/OFF button again.

OPERATION lamp goes off and the system stops OPERATION.

NOTE

- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes. Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITH COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 6)⟩⟩

(1) Select COOLING OPERATION MODE with the COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH.

(2) Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select PROGRAM DRY "💧".

(3) Press ON/OFF button.

OPERATION lamp lights up and the system starts.

(4) Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button. (BRC4C61, 63 only)

Refer to "ADJUSTING THE AIR FLOW DIRECTION" (p. 9) for details.

STOPPING THE SYSTEM

(5) Press ON/OFF button once again.

OPERATION lamp goes off, and the system stops OPERATION.

NOTE

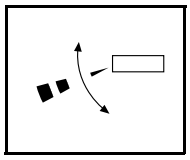
- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes. Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

Note : page 82

ADJUSTING THE AIR FLOW DIRECTION (Fig. 7)

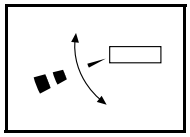
Press the AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to adjust up/down air flow angle.

1 Press the AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction as shown below.



DISPLAY appears and the air flow direction continuously varies. (Automatic swing setting)

Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction of your choice.



DISPLAY vanishes and the desired air flow direction is fixed. (Fixed air flow setting)

- The movable limit of the blade is changeable. Contact your Daikin dealer for details.

MOVEMENT OF THE AIR FLOW FLAP

For the following conditions, micro computer controls the air flow direction so it may be different from the display.

Operation mode	Cooling	Heating
Operation conditions	• When room temperature is lower than the set temperature	• When room temperature is higher than the set temperature • At defrost operation
	• When operating continuously at horizontal air flow direction	

Operation mode includes automatic operation.

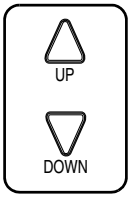
PROGRAM TIMER OPERATION (Fig. 8)

- The timer is operated in the following two ways.
  Programming the stop time (🕘 ▸ ◯)
  ....The system stops operating after the set time has elapsed.
  Programming the start time (🕘 ▸ |)
  .... The system starts operating after the set time has elapsed.
- The timer can be programmed a maximum of 72 hours.
- The start and the stop time can be simultaneously programmed.

1 Press the TIMER MODE START/STOP button several times and select the mode on the display.

The display flashes.
For setting the timer stop.....“🕘 ▸ ◯”
For setting the timer start .....“🕘 ▸ | ”

2 Press the PROGRAMMING TIMER button and set the time for stopping or starting the system.



When this button is pressed, the time advances by 1 hour.

When this button is pressed, the time goes backward by 1 hour.

3 Press RESERVE button.

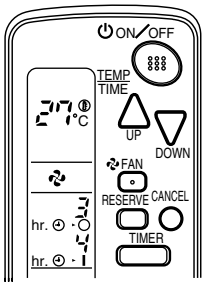
The timer setting procedure ends.
The display changes from flashing light to a constant light.

NOTE

- When setting the timer Off and On at the same time, repeat the above procedure from 1 to 3 once again.

3P107422-21S

For example.



When the timer is programmed to stop the system after 3 hours and start the system after 4 hours, the system will stop after 3 hours and then 1 hour later the system will start.

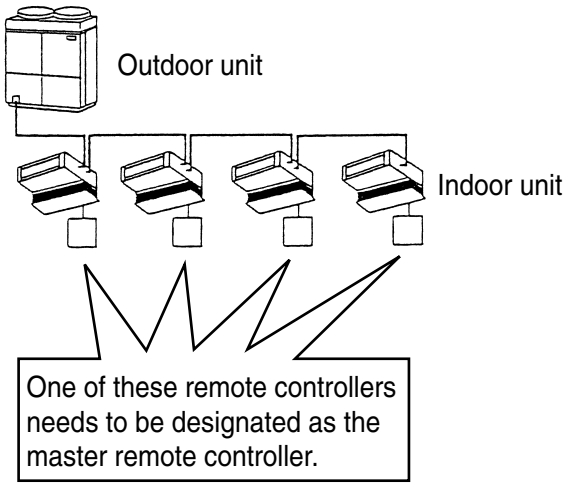
- After the timer is programmed, the display shows the remaining time.
- Press the TIMER OFF button to cancel programming. The display vanishes. (4)

HOW TO SET MASTER REMOTE CONTROLLER (For VRV series)

- When the system is installed as shown below, it is necessary to designate the master remote controller.

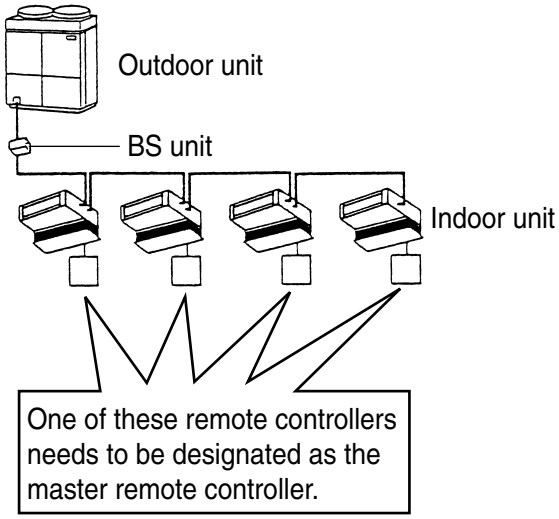
⟨⟨For Heat pump system⟩⟩

When one outdoor unit is connected with several indoor units.



⟨⟨For Heat recovery system⟩⟩

When one BS unit is connected with several indoor units.



- Only the master remote controller can select HEATING, COOLING or AUTOMATIC (only Heat recovery system) OPERATION.

When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “COOL”, you can switch over operation mode between “FAN”, “DRY” and “COOL”.
When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “HEAT”, you can switch over operation mode between “FAN” and “HEAT”.
When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “FAN”, you cannot switch operation mode.
When attempting settings than that consented above, a “peep” is emitted as a warning.
Only with Heat recovery system, you can set the indoor unit to AUTOMATIC. Attempting to do so, a “peep” will be emitted as a warning.

How to designate the master remote controller

(1) Continuously press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button for 4 seconds.

The displays showing "⏲" of all slave indoor unit connected to the same outdoor unit or BS unit flash.

(2) Press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button to the indoor unit that you wish to designate as the master remote controller. Then designation is completed. This indoor unit is designated as the master remote controller and the display showing "⏲" vanishes.

- To change settings, repeat steps (1) and (2).

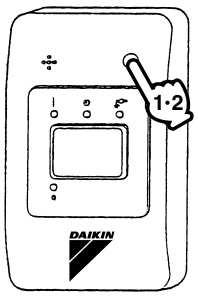
EMERGENCY OPERATION

When the remote controller does not work due to battery failure or the absence thereof, use this switch which is located beside the discharge grille on the main unit. When the remote controller does not work, but the battery low indicator on it is not lit, contact your dealer.

[START]

(1) Press the EMERGENCY OPERATION switch.

The machine runs in the previous mode. The system operates with the previously set air flow direction, and air flow rate.



[STOP]

(2) Press the EMERGENCY OPERATION switch again.

PRECAUTIONS FOR GROUP CONTROL SYSTEM OR TWO REMOTE CONTROLLER CONTROL SYSTEM

This system provides two other control systems beside individual control (one remote controller controls one indoor unit) system. Confirm the following if your unit is of the following control system type.

■ **Group control system**
One remote controller controls up to 16 indoor units.
All indoor units are equally set.

■ **Two remote controller control system**
Two remote controllers control one indoor unit. (In case of group control system, one group of indoor units)
The unit follows individual operation.

NOTES

- Cannot have two remote controller control system with only wireless remote controllers. (It will be a two remote controller control system having one wired and one wireless remote controllers.)
- Under two remote controller control system, wireless remote controller cannot control timer operation.
- Only the operating indicator lamp out of 3 other lamps on the indoor unit display functions.
- Contact your Daikin dealer in case of changing the combination or setting of group control and two remote controller control systems.

3P107422-21S

5. NOT MALFUNCTION OF THE AIR CONDITIONER

The following symptoms do not indicate air conditioner malfunction

I. THE SYSTEM DOES NOT OPERATE

- **The system does not restart immediately after the ON/OFF button is pressed.**
  If the OPERATION lamp lights, the system is in normal condition. It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **The system does not restart immediately when TEMPERATURE SETTING button is returned to the former position after pushing the button.**
  It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **If the reception beep is rapidly repeated 3 times (It sounds only twice when operating normally.)**
  Control is set to the optional controller for centralized control.
- **If the defrost lamp on the indoor unit's display is lit when heating is started.**
  This indication is to warn against cold air being blown from the unit. There is nothing wrong with the equipment.

6. HOW TO DIAGNOSE TROUBLE SPOTS (Fig. 9)

I. EMERGENCY STOP

When the air conditioner stops in emergency, the run lamp on the indoor unit starts blinking. Take the following steps yourself to read the malfunction code that appears on the display. Contact your dealer with this code. It will help pinpoint the cause of the trouble, speeding up the repair.

① Press the INSPECTION/TEST button to select the inspection mode " 0 ".

" 0 " appears on display and blinks. "UNIT" lights up.

② Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the unit number.

Press to change the unit number until the indoor unit beeps and perform the following operation according to the number of beeps.

Number of beeps

3 short beeps .....Perform all steps from ③ to ⑥
1 short beep .....Perform ③ and ⑥ steps
1 long beep .....Normal state

③ Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON.

" 0 " on the left-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

④ Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit beeps twice.

⑤ Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON.

" 0 " on the right-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

⑥ Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit makes a long beep.
The malfunction code is fixed when the indoor unit makes a long beep.

⑦ Reset of the display.

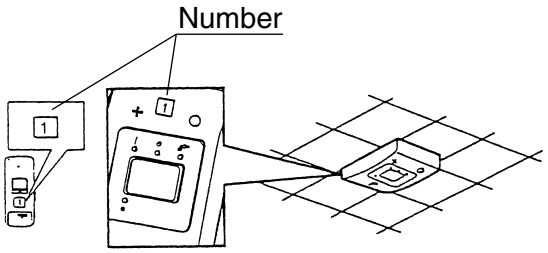
Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON to get the display back to the normal state.

3P107422-21S

II. IN CASE BESIDES EMERGENCY STOP

1. The unit does not operate at all.

- Check if the receiver is exposed of sunlight or strong light. Keep receiver away from light.
- Check if there are batteries in the remote controller. Place the batteries.
- Check if the indoor unit number and wireless remote controller number are equal.



Operate the indoor unit with the remote controller of the same number.
Signal transmitted from a remote controller of a different number cannot be accepted. (If the number is not mentioned, it is considered as “1”)

2. The system operates but it does not sufficiently cool or heat.

- If the set temperature is not proper.
- If the FAN SPEED is set to LOW SPEED.
- If the air flow angle is not proper.

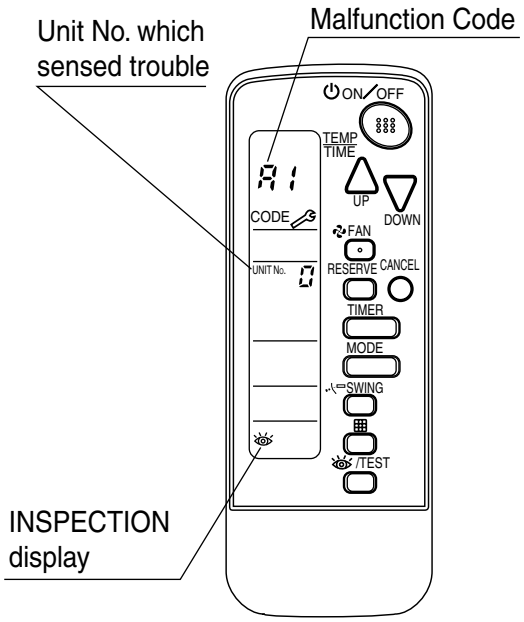
Contact the place of purchase in the following case.

⚠ WARNING

When you detect a burning odor, shut OFF power immediately and contact the place of purchase. Using the equipment in anything but proper working condition can result in equipment damage, electric shock and/or fire.

[Trouble]

The RUN lamp of the indoor unit is flashing and the unit does not work at all.



[Remedial action]

Check the malfunction code (A1 ~ UF) on the remote control and contact the place of purchase. (See Note)

Disposal requirements
Batteries supplied with the remote controller are marked with this symbol.
This means that the batteries shall not be mixed with unsorted household waste.
If a chemical symbol is printed beneath the symbol, this chemical symbol means that the battery contains a heavy metal above a certain concentration. Possible chemical symbols are:
■ Pb: lead (>0.004%)
Waste batteries must be treated at a specialized treatment facility for re-use.
By ensuring waste batteries are disposed of correctly, you will help to prevent potential negative consequences for the environment and human health.

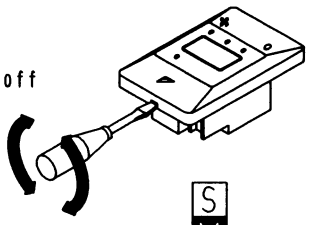
3P107422-21S

Note : page 85

1.4.2 Installation

〈Caution〉
- Do not install more than 3 receivers in the vicinity of one another.
- With 4 or more units, there is always the possibility of malfunction.

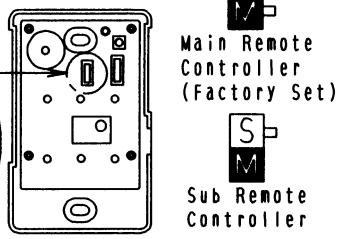
1. Remove the upper part of receiver.
   - Insert the screwdriver here and gently work off the upper part of the receiver.



2. Initial setting

Change the MAIN/SUB changeover switch

(When using both a wired and a wireless remote controller for 1 indoor unit, the wired controller should be set to MAIN. And the wireless remote controller should be set to SUB.)



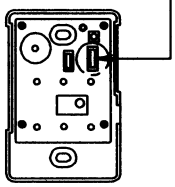
NOTES)
- If controlling with one remote controller, be sure to set it to "MAIN"
- Set the remote controller before turning power supply on.

3. Address setting
- If setting multiple wireless remote controllers to operate in one room, perform address setting for the receiver and the wireless remote controller.

Setting the receiver (It is fuctory set to "1")

Referring to the table below, set the wireless address switch (SS2) on the PC board.

Unit No.	NO. 1	NO. 2	NO. 3
Wireless address switch (SS2)	SS2 1 2 3	SS2 1 2 3	SS2 1 2 3



Setting the address of wireless remote controller (It is factory set to "1")

〈Setting from the remote controller〉

① Hold down the [▦] button and the [/TEST] button for at least 4 seconds to get the Field Set mode. (indicated in the display area in the figure at right).

② Press the [FAN] button and select a multiple setting(A/b). Each time the button is pressed the display switches between "A" and "b".

③ Press the "△UP" button and "▽DOWN" button to set the 1→2→3→4→5→6

Address can be set from 1 to 6, but set it to 1~3 and to same address as the receiver. (The receiver does not work with address 4~6.)

④ Press the [RESERVE] button to enter the setting.

⑤ Hold down the [/TEST] button for at least 1 second to quit the Field Set mode and return to the normal display.

2P018568

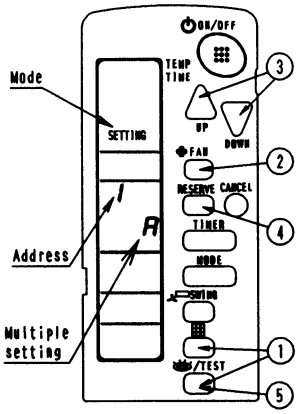
PRECAUTIONS

Set the Unit NO. of the receiver and the wireless remote controller to be equal.
If the settings differs, the signal from the remote controller cannot be transmitted.

(Multiple setting A/b)

When the indoor unit is being operating by outside control (central remote controller, etc.), it sometimes does not respond to ON/OFF and temperature setting commands from this remote controller. Check what setting the customer wants and make the multiple setting as shown below.

Remote controller		Indoor unit	
Multiple setting	Remote controller display	To control other air conditions and units	For other than on left
A : Standard	All items displayed.	Commands other than ON/OFF and temperature setting accepted. (1 LONG BEEP or 3 SHORT BEEPS emitted)	
b : Multi System	Operations remain displayed shortly after execution.	All commands accepted (2 SHORT BEEPS)	



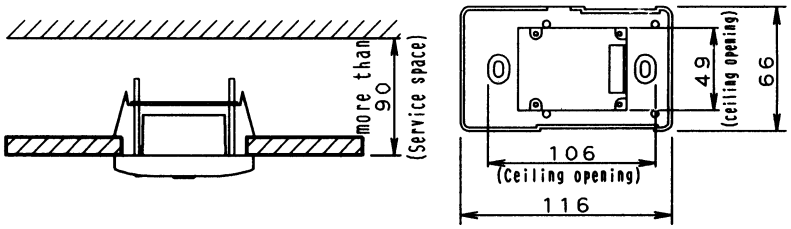
SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS

Please read this "SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS" carefully before installing air conditioning equipment and be sure to install it correctly.
After completing the installation, make sure at start up operation that the unit operates properly. Please instruct the customer how to operate the unit and keep maintenance.

For ceiling installation

1. Prepare the ceiling for the receiver.

   Open a hole in the ceiling for the receiver. (Use the provided ceiling installation pattern.)

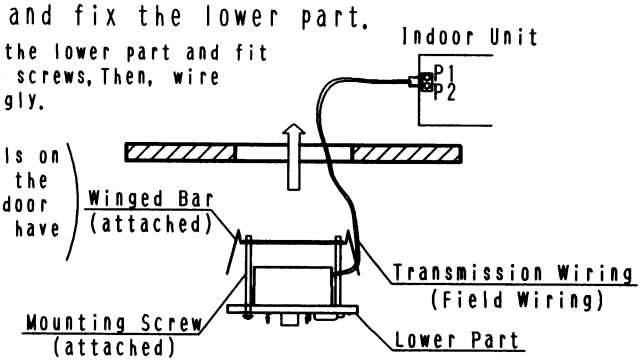


2P018568

2. Wire the indoor unit and fix the lower part.

- Install the winged bar to the lower part and fit the part with the attached screws. Then, wire (field supplied) accordingly.

(Connect the P1 and P2 terminals on the rear of the lower part to the P1 and P2 terminals on the indoor unit. The P1 and P2 terminals have no polarity.)



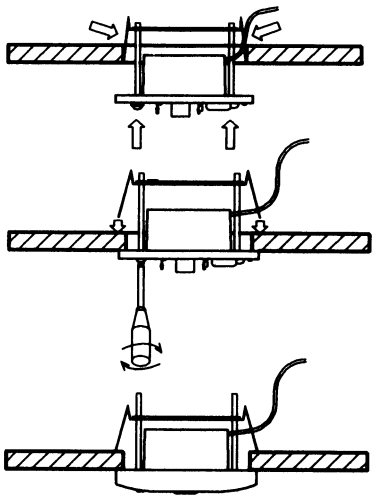
- Insert the lower part into the opening in the ceiling, first by pressing the wings inward to fit the hole and then by pushing from the screws until it sits flat on the ceiling.

- Tighten the screws until the lower part is fixed in place.

(Tighten both screws evenly. Overtightening may deform the case and possibly make it harder to install the upper part.)

- Rettach the upper part of receiver.

(Install the upper part on the lower part being careful parts are facing in the correct direction. And, test the emergency run button.)



《Precautions on transmission wiring》

① When wiring, run the wiring away the power supply wiring in order to avoid receiving electric noise (external noise)

② When wiring, refer to the wiring diagram of indoor unit (attached to indoor unit) as well.

WIRING SPECIFICATION

Wiring type	Sheathed wire (2 wire)
Size	0.75~1.25mm²
Wiring length	max 200m (See Note 1)

NOTE)
1. Keep wires to less than 200m total when using 2 remote controller (wired or wireless) and when not.

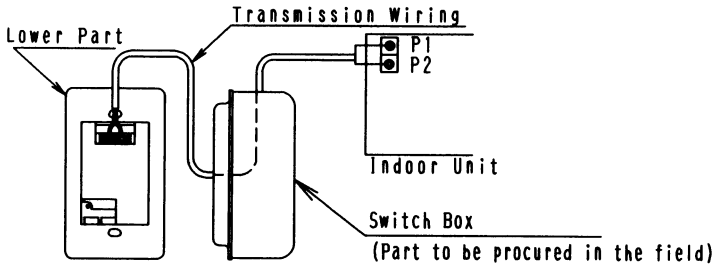
2P018568

⚠ CAUTION

- Confirm that following conditions are satisfied prior to installation.
  - Ensure that nothing interrupts the operation of the wireless remote controller. (Ensure that there is neither a source of light nor fluorescent lamp near the receiver. Also, ensure that the receiver is not exposed of direct sun light.)
- Ensure that the operation display lamp and other indicators are easy to see.

For wall mounting

1. Wire the indoor unit

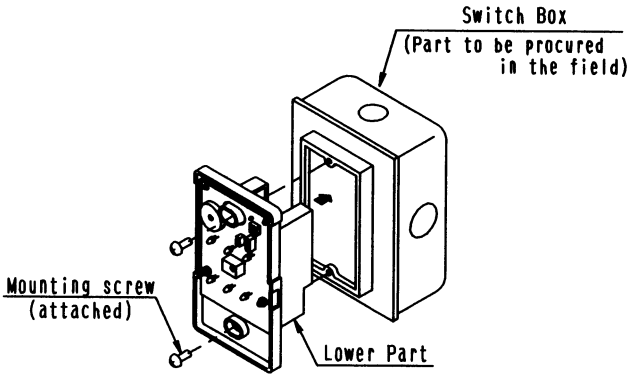


(Connect the P1 and P2 terminals on the rear of the lower part to the P1 and P2 terminals on the indoor unit. Neither of the terminals is polarized, so it is not important if connections are crossed.)

2. Fix the lower part.

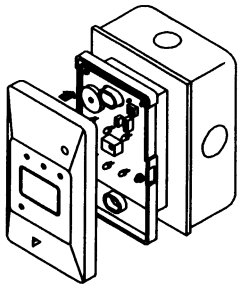
- Install the lower part on theh switch box(field supplied part)

(Select as flat a place ash possible to install the lower part. Also, be aware of the fact that overtightening the screws (attached) may deform the case and possibly make it harder to install the upper part.)



3. Rettach the upper part of remote controller.

(Install the upper part on the lower part being careful parts are facing in the correct direction. And, test the emergency run button.)



NOTES)
1. The switch box and wiring are not included.
2. Do not directly touch the PC board with your hand.

2P018568

1.5 BRC4C65 / BRC4C66 (for FXDQ and FXMQ-P)

1.5.1 Features

BRC4C65 (for Heat Pump)
BRC4C66 (for Cooling Only)

Signal receiver unit

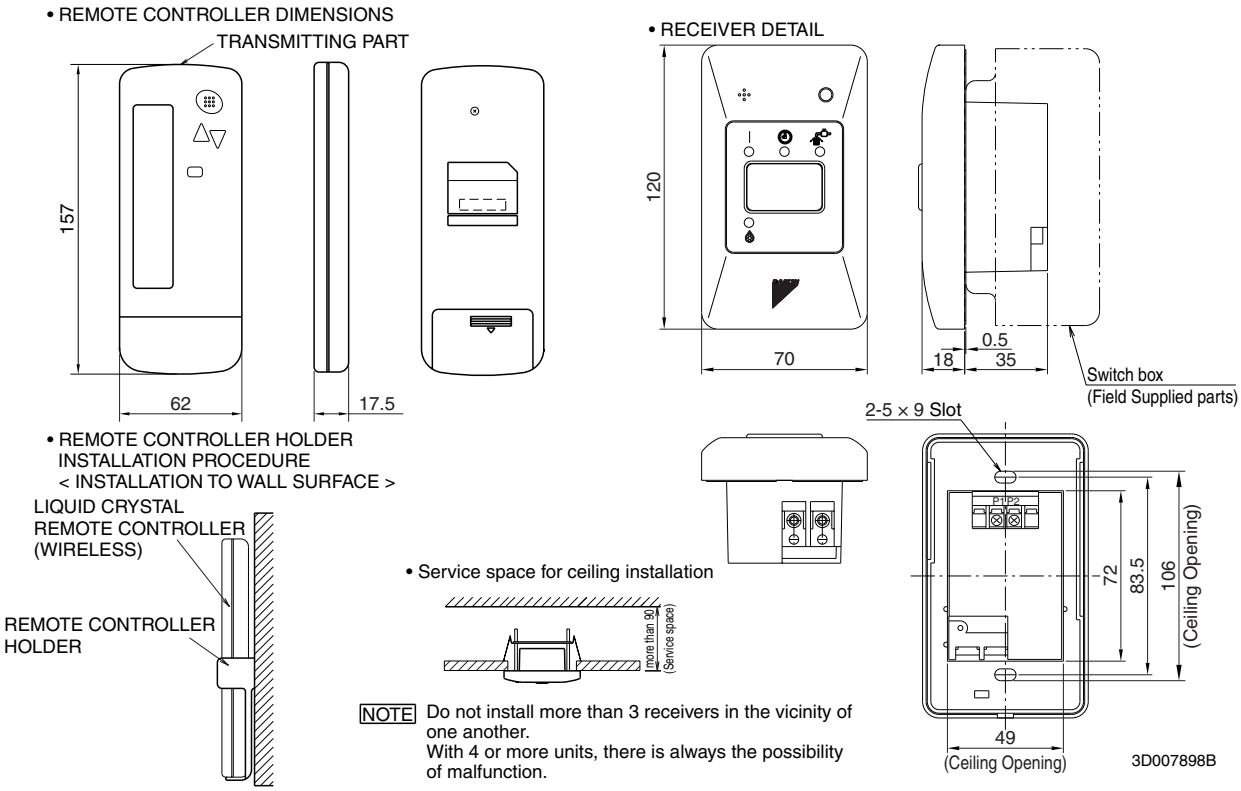
- The same operation modes and settings as with wired remote controllers are possible.
- A compact and light signal receiver unit to be mounted into a wall or ceiling is included.
- This unit supports the three-speed airflow rate control (HH / H / L).

1.5.2 Function

Model	BRC4C65/66
ON/OFF	Possible
Temp. setting	Possible
Air flow rate setting	Possible
Air flow direction setting	Possible
Timer setting	Possible
Mode setting	Possible
Filter sign reset	Possible
Inspection/Test operation	Possible

(No support for swing mode)

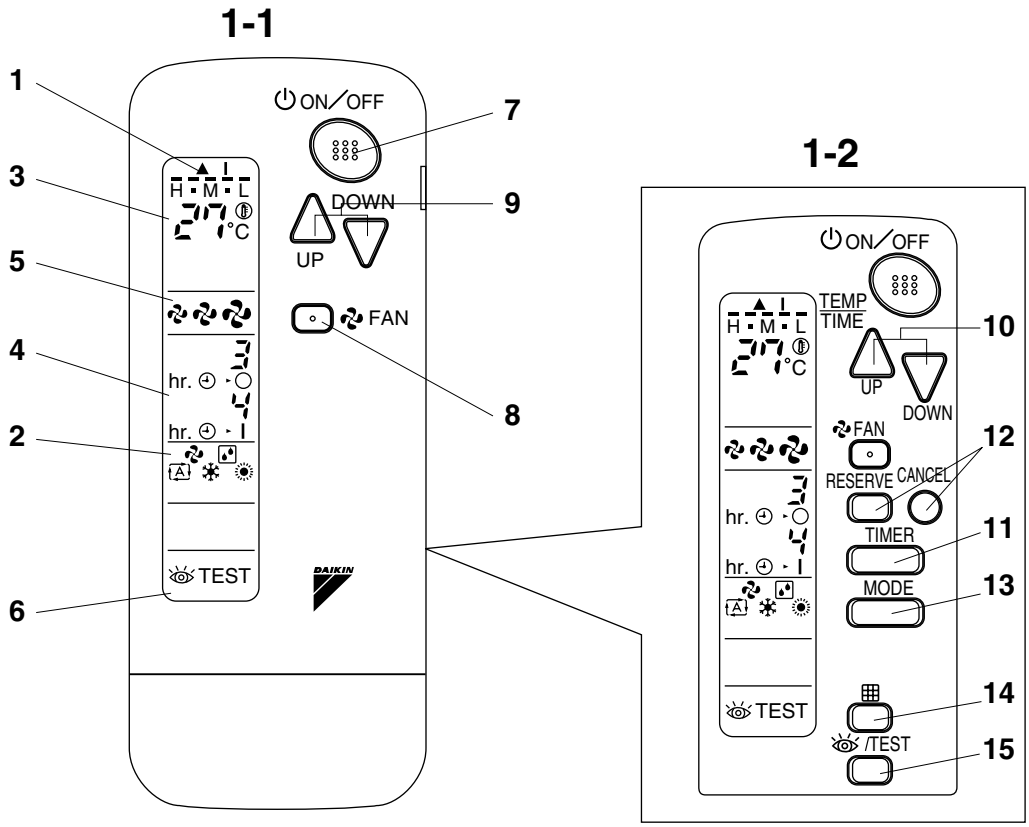
1.5.3 Dimensions



NOTE Do not install more than 3 receivers in the vicinity of one another.
With 4 or more units, there is always the possibility of malfunction.

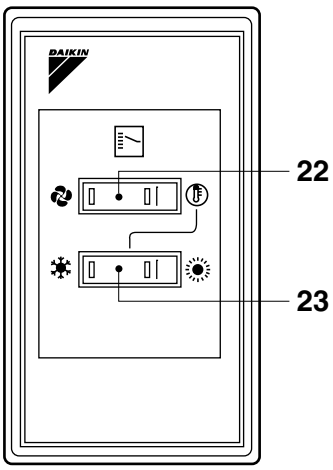
1.5.4 Operation Manual

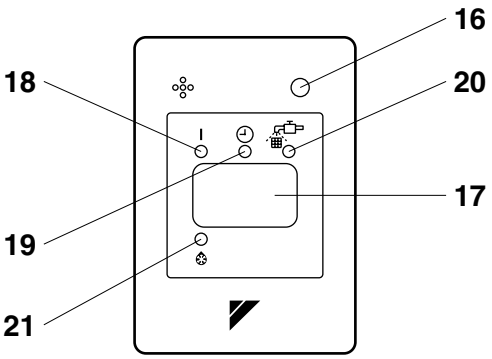
■ **Names and Functions of the Operating Section**



1

COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH





1-3 2

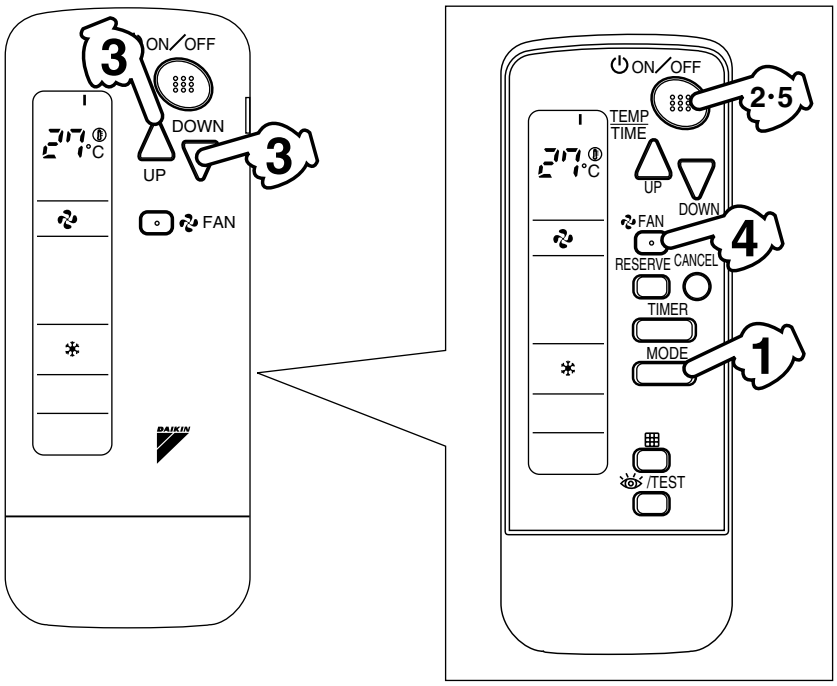
See Fig. 1, 2

1	**DISPLAY " ▲ " (SIGNAL TRANSMISSION)**
	This lights up when a signal is being transmitted.
2	**DISPLAY " " " " " " " " " (OPERATION MODE)**
	This display shows the current OPERATION MODE. For straight cooling type, " " (Auto) and " " (Heating) are not installed.
3	**DISPLAY " " (SET TEMPERATURE)**
	This display shows the set temperature.
4	**DISPLAY " " (PROGRAMMED TIME)**
	This display shows PROGRAMMED TIME of the system start or stop.
5	**DISPLAY " " " " " " (FAN SPEED)**
	The display shows the set fan speed.
6	**DISPLAY " TEST " (INSPECTION/ TEST OPERATION)**
	When the INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON is pressed, the display shows the system mode is in.
7	**ON/OFF BUTTON**
	Press the button and the system will start. Press the button again and the system will stop.
8	**FAN SPEED CONTROL BUTTON**
	Press this button to select the fan speed, HH or H or L, of your choice.
9	**TEMPERATURE SETTING BUTTON**
	Use this button for SETTING TEMPERATURE (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller closed.)
10	**PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON**
	Use this button for programming "START and/or STOP" time. (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller opened.)
11	**TIMER MODE START/STOP BUTTON**
	Refer to page 102.
12	**TIMER RESERVE/CANCEL BUTTON**
	Refer to page 102.
13	**OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON**
	Press this button to select OPERATION MODE.
14	**FILTER SIGN RESET BUTTON**
	Refer to the section of MAINTENANCE in the operation manual attached to the indoor unit.
15	**INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON**
	This button is used only by qualified service persons for maintenance purposes.
16	**EMERGENCY OPERATION SWITCH**
	This switch is readily used if the remote controller does not work.
17	**RECEIVER**
	This receives the signals from the remote controller.
18	**OPERATING INDICATOR LAMP (Red)**
	This lamp stays lit while the air conditioner runs. It flashes when the unit is in trouble.
19	**TIMER INDICATOR LAMP (Green)**
	This lamp stays lit while the timer is set.

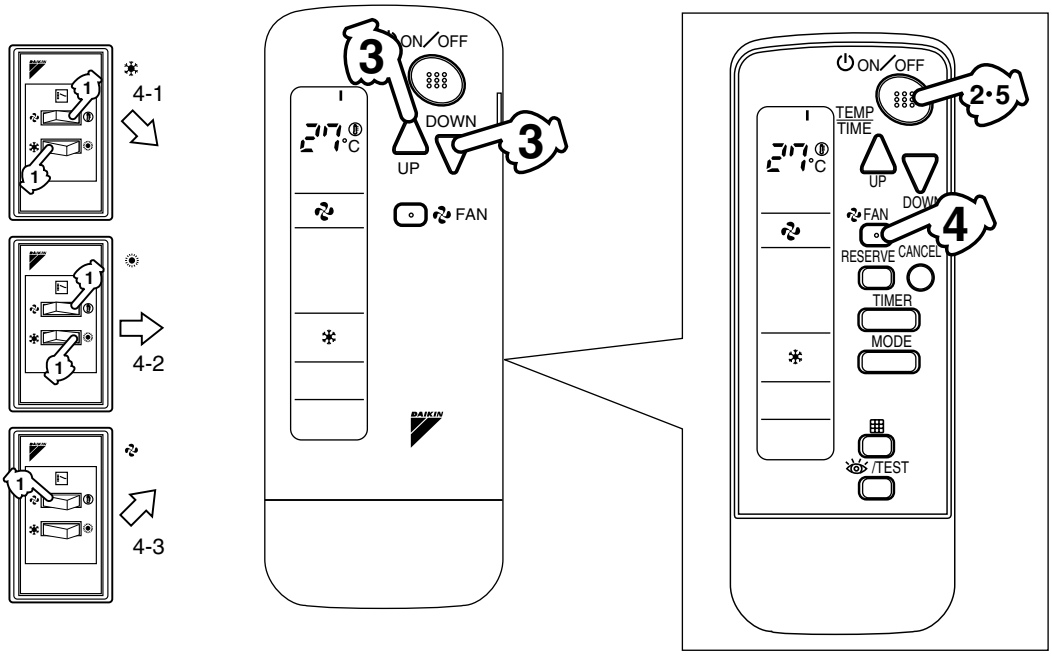
20	**AIR FILTER CLEANING TIME INDICATOR LAMP (Red)**
	Lights up when it is time to clean the air filter.
21	**DEFROST LAMP (Orange)**
	Lights up when the defrosting operation has started. (For straight cooling type this lamp does not turn on.)
22	**FAN/AIR CONDITIONING SELECTOR SWITCH**
	Set the switch to " " (FAN) for FAN and " " (A/C) for HEAT or COOL.
23	**COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER SWITCH**
	Set the switch to " " (COOL) for COOL and " " (HEAT) for HEAT.

NOTE

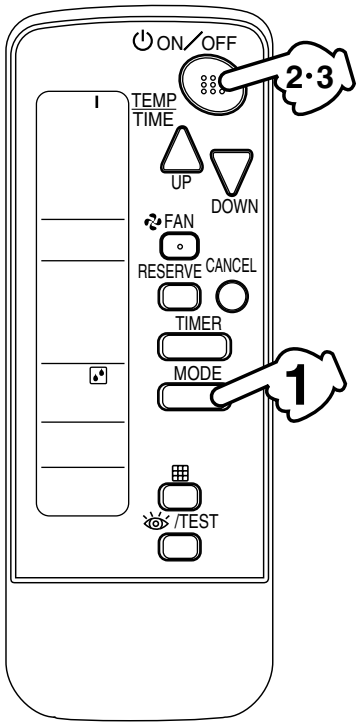
- For the sake of explanation, all indications are shown on the display in Figure 1 contrary to actual running situations.
- Fig. 1-2 shows the remote controller with the front cover opened.
- Fig. 1-3 shows this remote controller can be used in conjunction with the one provided with the VRV system.
- If the air filter cleaning time indicator lamp lights up, clean the air filter as explained in the operation manual provided with the indoor unit.
  After cleaning and reinstalling the air filter, press the filter sign reset button on the remote controller.
  The air filter cleaning time indicator lamp on the receiver will go out.


ON/OFF
DOWN
UP
FAN
TEMP
TIME
RESERVE
CANCEL
TIMER
MODE
/TEST
2·5
3
4
1

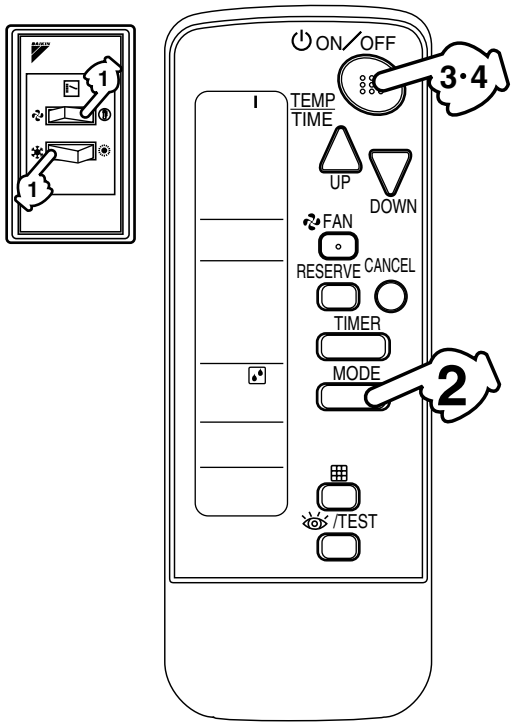
3


4-1
4-2
4-3
ON/OFF
DOWN
UP
FAN
TEMP
TIME
RESERVE
CANCEL
TIMER
MODE
/TEST
2·5
3
4

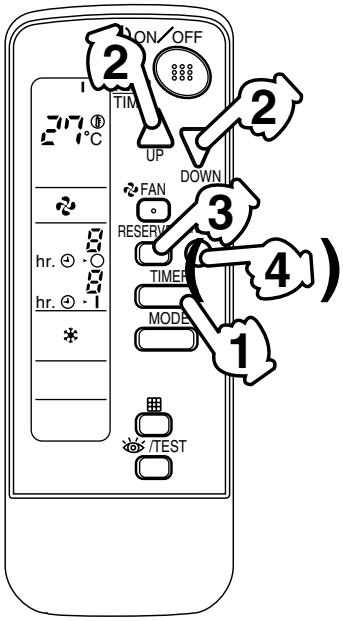
4


ON/OFF
2·3
TEMP
TIME
UP
DOWN
FAN
RESERVE
CANCEL
TIMER
MODE
1
/TEST

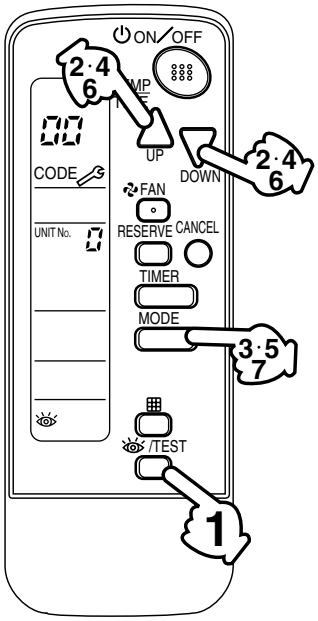
5


1
1
ON/OFF
3·4
TEMP
TIME
UP
DOWN
FAN
RESERVE
CANCEL
TIMER
MODE
2
/TEST

6


ON/OFF
2
2
UP
DOWN
FAN
RESERVE
3
TIMER
4
MODE
1
/TEST

7


ON/OFF
2·4
6
UP
DOWN
2·4
6
CODE
FAN
UNIT No.
RESERVE
CANCEL
TIMER
MODE
3·5
7
/TEST
1

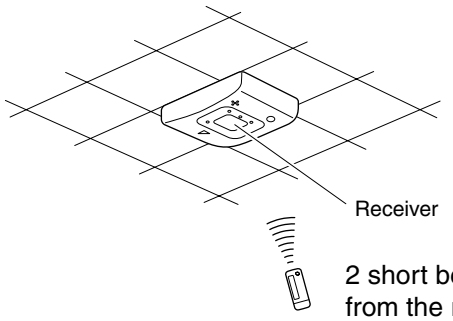
8

■ Handling for Wireless Remote Controller

Precautions in handling remote controller

Direct the transmitting part of the remote controller to the receiving part of the air conditioner.

If something blocks the transmitting and receiving path of the indoor unit and the remote controller as curtains, it will not operate.



Transmitting distance is approximately 7m.

Do not drop or get it wet.

It may be damaged.

Never press the button of the remote controller with a hard, pointed object.

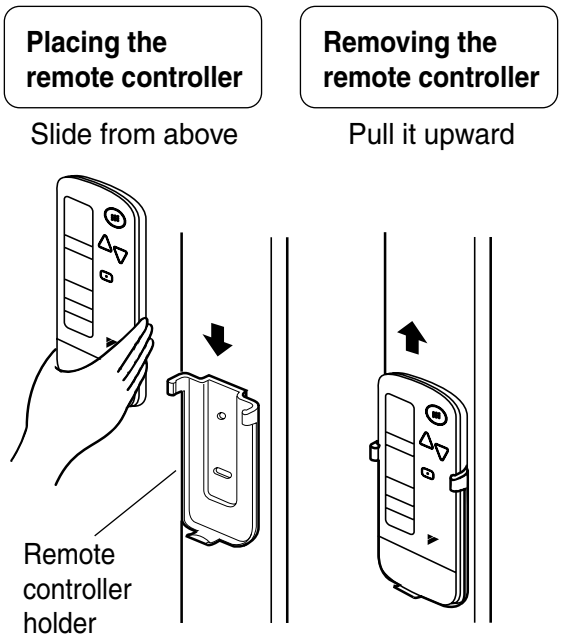
The remote controller may be damaged.

Installation site

- It is possible that signals will not be received in rooms that have electronic fluorescent lighting. Please consult with the salesman before buying new fluorescent lights.
- If the remote controller operated some other electrical apparatus, move that machine away or consult your dealer.

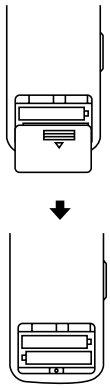
Placing the remote controller in the remote controller holder

Install the remote controller holder to a wall or a pillar with the attached screw. (Make sure it transmits.)



How to put the dry batteries

1. Remove the back cover of the remote controller to the direction pointed by the arrow mark.
2. Put the batteries
   Use two LR03 <IEC> dry cell batteries. Put dry batteries correctly to fit their (+) and (–).
3. Close the cover



When to change batteries

Under normal use, batteries last about a year. However, change them whenever the indoor unit doesn't respond or responds slowly to commands, or if the display becomes dark.

[CAUTIONS]

- Replace all batteries at the same time, do not use new and old batteries intermixed.
- In case the remote controller is not used for a long time remove all batteries in order to prevent liquid leak of the battery.

IN THE CASE OF CENTRALIZED CONTROL SYSTEM

- If the indoor unit is under centralized control, it is necessary to switch the remote controller's setting. In this case, contact your DAIKIN dealer.

■ Operation Procedure

- Operating procedure varies with heat pump type and straight cooling only type. Contact your Daikin dealer to confirm your system types.
- To protect the unit, turn on the main power switch 6 hours before operation.
- If the main power supply is turned off during operation, operation will restart automatically after the power turns back on again.

COOLING, HEATING, AUTOMATIC AND FAN OPERATION (Fig. 3, 4)

- AUTOMATIC OPERATION can be selected only by Heat recovery system.
- Cooling only system gives selection of FAN or COOLING OPERATION only.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITHOUT COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 3)⟩⟩

1 Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select the OPERATION MODE of your choice as follows.

- COOLING OPERATION ..... " ☼ "
- HEATING OPERATION..... " ☼ "
- AUTOMATIC OPERATION ..... " A "
- FAN OPERATION ..... " "

On AUTOMATIC OPERATION

In this operation mode, COOL/HEAT changeover is automatically conducted at a present indoor temperature.

2 Press ON/OFF button.

OPERATION lamp lights up and the system starts OPERATION.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITH COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 4)⟩⟩

1 Select OPERATION MODE with the COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH as follows.

- COOING OPERATION ..... Refer to fig. 4-1 (ⓕ , ☼)
- HEATING OPERATION..... Refer to fig. 4-2 (ⓕ , ☼)
- FAN OPERATION ..... Refer to fig. 4-3 ( )

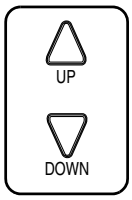
Press ON/OFF button.

OPERATION lamp lights up and the system starts OPERATION.

ADJUSTMENT

For programming TEMPERATURE and FAN SPEED and AIR FLOW DIRECTION, follow the procedure shown below.

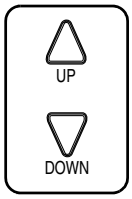
Press TEMPERATURE SETTING button and program the setting temperature.



Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature rises 1°C.

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature lowers 1°C.

In case of automatic operation



Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to “H” side.

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to “L” side.

[°C]

	H	•	M	•	L
Setting temperature	25	23	22	21	19

NOTE

- The setting is impossible for fan operation.

Press FAN SPEED CONTROL button.

HH, H or L fan speed can be selected.

STOPPING THE SYSTEM

Press ON/OFF button once again.

OPERATION lamp goes off, and the system stops OPERATION.

NOTE

- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes. Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

[EXPLANATION OF HEATING OPERATION]

DEFROST OPERATION

- As the frost on the coil of an outdoor unit increases, heating effect decreases and the system goes into DEFROST OPERATION.
- The fan operation stops and the DEFROST lamp of the indoor unit goes on.
  After 6 to 8 minutes (maximum 10 minutes) of DEFROST OPERATION, the system returns to HEATING OPERATION.

Heating capacity & Outdoor air temperature

- Heating capacity drops as outdoor air temperature lowers. If feeling cold, use another heater at the same time as this air conditioner.
- Hot air is circulated to warm the room. It will take some time from when the air conditioner is first started until the entire room becomes warm. The internal fan automatically turns at low speed until the air conditioner reaches a certain temperature on the inside. In this situation, all you can do is wait.
- If hot air accumulates on the ceiling and feet are left feeling cold, it is recommended to use a circulator. For details, contact the place of purchase.

PROGRAM DRY OPERATION (Fig. 5, 6)

- The function of this program is to decrease the humidity in your room with the minimum temperature decrease.
- Micro computer automatically determines TEMPERATURE and FAN SPEED.
- This system does not go into operation if the room temperature is below 16°C.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITHOUT COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 5)⟩⟩

1. **Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select "💧" (PROGRAM DRY OPERATION).**
2. **Press ON/OFF button.**

OPERATION lamp lights up and system starts OPERATION.

ADJUSTMENT

STOPPING THE SYSTEM

3. **Press ON/OFF button again.**

OPERATION lamp goes off and the system stops OPERATION.

NOTE

- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes. Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITH COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 6)⟩⟩

1. **Select COOLING OPERATION MODE with the COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH.**
2. **Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select PROGRAM DRY "💧".**
3. **Press ON/OFF button.**

OPERATION lamp lights up and the system starts.

STOPPING THE SYSTEM

4. **Press ON/OFF button once again.**

OPERATION lamp goes off, and the system stops OPERATION.

NOTE

- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes. Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

MOVEMENT OF THE AIR FLOW FLAP

For the following conditions, micro computer controls the air flow direction so it may be different from the display.

Operation mode	Cooling	Heating
Operation conditions	■ When room temperature is lower than the set temperature	■ When room temperature is higher than the set temperature ■ At defrost operation
	■ When operating continuously at horizontal air flow direction	

Operation mode includes automatic operation.

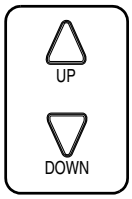
PROGRAM TIMER OPERATION (Fig. 7)

- The timer is operated in the following two ways.
  Programming the stop time (🕘 ▸◯)
  ....The system stops operating after the set time has elapsed.
  Programming the start time (🕘 ▸ |)
  .... The system starts operating after the set time has elapsed.
- The timer can be programmed a maximum of 72 hours.
- The start and the stop time can be simultaneously programmed.

Press the TIMER MODE START/STOP button several times and select the mode on the display.

The display flashes.
For setting the timer stop .....“🕘 ▸◯”
For setting the timer start .....“🕘 ▸ | ”

Press the PROGRAMMING TIMER button and set the time for stopping or starting the system.



When this button is pressed, the time advances by 1 hour.

When this button is pressed, the time goes backward by 1 hour.

Press RESERVE button.

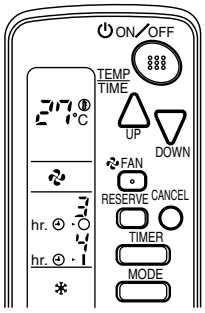
The timer setting procedure ends.
The display changes from flashing light to a constant light.

NOTE

- When setting the timer Off and On at the same time, repeat the above procedure from ☞1 to ☞3 once again.

For example

When the timer is programmed to stop the system after 3 hours and start the system after 4 hours, the system will stop after 3 hours and then 1 hour later the system will start.

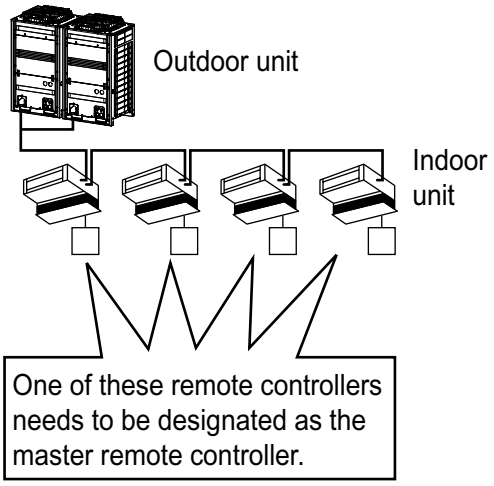


- After the timer is programmed, the display shows the remaining time.
- Press the TIMER OFF button to cancel programming. The display vanishes. (☞4)

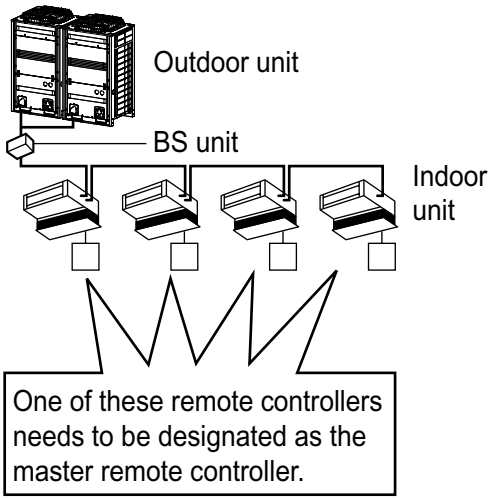
HOW TO SET MASTER REMOTE CONTROLLER (For VRV system)

- When the system is installed as shown below, it is necessary to designate the master remote controller.

〈〈**For Heat pump system**〉〉
When one outdoor unit is connected with several indoor units.



〈〈**For Heat recovery system**〉〉
When one BS unit is connected with several indoor units.



■ Only the master remote controller can select HEATING, COOLING or AUTOMATIC (only Heat recovery system) OPERATION.

When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “COOL”, you can switch over operation mode between “FAN”, “DRY” and “COOL”.
When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “HEAT”, you can switch over operation mode between “FAN” and “HEAT”.
When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “FAN”, you cannot switch operation mode.
When attempting settings than that consented above, a “peep” is emitted as a warning.
Only with Heat recovery system, you can set the indoor unit to AUTOMATIC. Attempting to do so, a “peep” will be emitted as a warning.

How to designate the master remote controller

(1) **Continuously press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button for 4 seconds.**

The displays showing “⏱” of all slave indoor unit connected to the same outdoor unit or BS unit flash.

(2) **Press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button to the indoor unit that you wish to designate as the master remote controller. Then designation is completed. This indoor unit is designated as the master remote controller and the display showing “⏱” vanishes.**

■ To change settings, repeat steps (1) and (2).

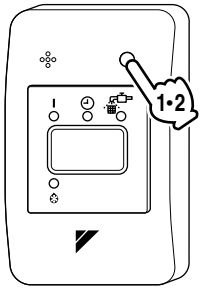
EMERGENCY OPERATION

When the remote controller does not work due to battery failure or the absence thereof, use this switch which is located beside the discharge grille on the main unit. When the remote controller does not work, but the battery low indicator on it is not lit, contact your dealer.

[START]

Press the EMERGENCY OPERATION switch.

The machine runs in the previous mode.
The system operates with the previously set air flow direction, and airflow rate.



[STOP]

Press the EMERGENCY OPERATION switch again.

PRECAUTIONS FOR GROUP CONTROL SYSTEM OR TWO REMOTE CONTROLLER CONTROL SYSTEM

This system provides two other control systems beside individual control (one remote controller controls one indoor unit) system. Confirm the following if your unit is of the following control system type.

- **Group control system**
  One remote controller controls up to 16 indoor units.
  All indoor units are equally set.
- **Two remote controller control system**
  Two remote controllers control one indoor unit. (In case of group control system, one group of indoor units.)
  The unit follows individual operation.

NOTE

- Cannot have two remote controllers control system with only wireless remote controllers. (It will be a two remote controller control system having one wired and one wireless remote controllers.)
- Under two remote controller control system, wireless remote controller cannot control timer operation.
- Only the operating indicator lamp out of 3 other lamps on the indoor unit display functions.
- Contact your Daikin dealer in case of changing the combination or setting of group control and two remote controller control systems.

■ Not Malfunction of the Air Conditioner

The following symptoms do not indicate air conditioner malfunction

I. THE SYSTEM DOES NOT OPERATE

- **The system does not restart immediately after the ON/OFF button is pressed.**
  If the OPERATION lamp lights, the system is in normal condition. It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **The system does not restart immediately when TEMPERATURE SETTING button is returned to the former position after pushing the button.**
  It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **If the reception beep is rapidly repeated 3 times (It sounds only twice when operating normally.)**
  Control is set to the optional controller for centralized control.
- **If the defrost lamp on the indoor unit's display is lit when heating is started.**
  This indication is to warn against cold air being blown from the unit. There is nothing wrong with the equipment.

■ How to Diagnose Trouble Spots

See Fig. 8

I. EMERGENCY STOP

When the air conditioner stops in emergency, the run lamp on the indoor unit starts blinking. Take the following steps yourself to read the malfunction code that appears on the display. Contact your dealer with this code. It will help pinpoint the cause of the trouble, speeding up the repair.

(1) **Press the INSPECTION/TEST button to select the inspection mode " 0 ".**

" 0 " appears on display and blinks. "UNIT" lights up.

(2) **Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the unit number.**

Press to change the unit number until the indoor unit beeps and perform the following operation according to the number of beeps.

Number of beeps

3 short beeps ..... Perform all steps from (3) to (6)
1 short beep ..... Perform (3) and (6) steps
1 long beep ..... Normal state

(3) **Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON.**

" 0 " on the left-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

(4) **Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.**

Press until the indoor unit beeps twice.

(5) **Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON.**

" 0 " on the right-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

(6) **Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.**

Press until the indoor unit makes a long beep.
The malfunction code is fixed when the indoor unit makes a long beep.

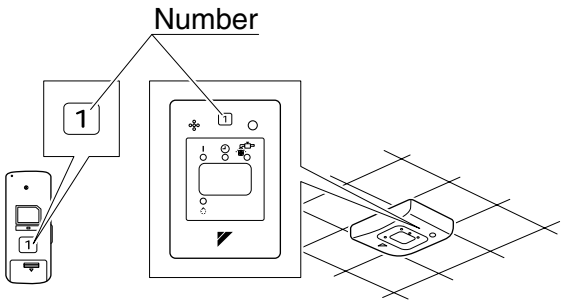
(7) **Reset of the display.**

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON to get the display back to the normal state.

II. IN CASE BESIDES EMERGENCY STOP

1. The unit does not operate at all.

- Check if the receiver is exposed of sunlight or strong light. Keep receiver away from light.
- Check if there are batteries in the remote controller. Place the batteries.
- Check if the indoor unit number and wireless remote controller number are equal.



Operate the indoor unit with the remote controller of the same number.
Signal transmitted from a remote controller of a different number cannot be accepted. (If the number is not mentioned, it is considered as “1”.)

2. The system operates but it does not sufficiently cool or heat.

- If the set temperature is not proper.
- If the FAN SPEED is set to L SPEED.
- If the air flow angle is not proper.

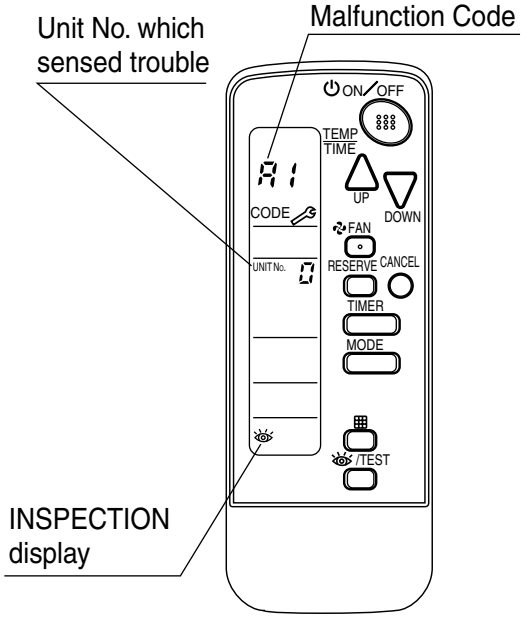
Contact the place of purchase in the following case.

⚠ WARNING

When you detect a burning odor, shut OFF power immediately and contact the place of purchase. Using the equipment in anything but proper working condition can result in equipment damage, electric shock and/or fire.

[Trouble]

The RUN lamp of the indoor unit is flashing and the unit does not work at all.



[Remedial action]

Check the malfunction code (A1 ~ UF) on the remote control and contact the place of purchase. (See page 105.)

1.5.5 Installation

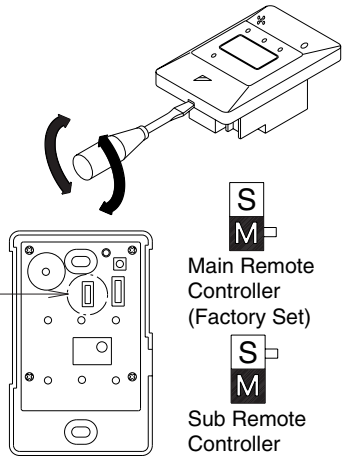
Caution

- Do not install more than 3 receivers in the vicinity of one another.
- With 4 or more units, there is always the possibility of malfunction.

■ **Remove the Upper Part of Receiver**

- Insert the screwdriver here and gently work off the upper part of the receiver.

■ **Initial Setting**



Change the MAIN/SUB changeover switch

When using both a wired and a wireless remote controller for 1 indoor unit, the wired controller should be set to MAIN. And the wireless remote controller should be set to SUB.

NOTES

- If controlling with one remote controller, be sure to set it to "MAIN"
- Set the remote controller before turning power supply on.

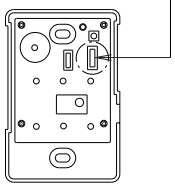
■ **Address Setting**

- If setting multiple wireless remote controllers to operate in one room, perform address setting for the receiver and the wireless remote controller.

Setting the receiver (It is factory set to "1")

Referring to the table below, set the wireless address switch (SS2) on the PC board.

Unit No.	NO.1	NO.2	NO.3
Wireless address switch (SS2)	SS2 1 2 3	SS2 1 2 3	SS2 1 2 3



Setting the address of wireless remote controller (It is factory set to "1")

<Setting from the remote controller>

① Hold down the [▦] button and the [/TEST] button for at least 4 seconds to get the Field Set mode. (indicated in the display area in the figure at right).
② Press the [FAN] button and select a multiple setting (A/b). Each time the button is pressed the display switches between "A" and "b".
③ Press the " △ UP " button and " ▽ DOWN " button to set the →1→2→3→4→5→6
Address can be set from 1 to 6, but set it to 1~3 and to same address as the receiver. (The receiver does not work with address 4~6.)
④ Press the [RESERVE] button to enter the setting.
⑤ Hold down the [/TEST] button for at least 1 second to quit the Field Set mode and return to the normal display.

PRECAUTIONS

Set the Unit NO. of the receiver and the wireless remote controller to be equal.
If the settings differs, the signal from the remote controller cannot be transmitted.

SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS

Please read this "SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS" carefully before installing air conditioning equipment and be sure to install it correctly.

After completing the installation, make sure at start up operation that the unit operates properly. Please instruct the customer how to operate the unit and keep maintenance.

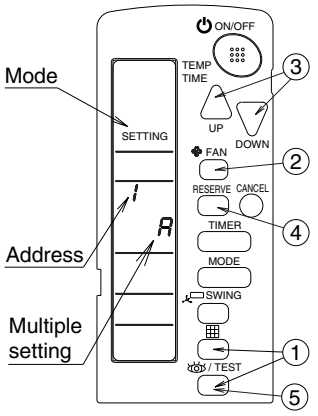
CAUTION

- Confirm that following conditions are satisfied prior to installation.
  - Ensure that nothing interrupts the operation of the wireless remote controller. (Ensure that there is neither a source of light nor fluorescent lamp near the receiver. Also, ensure that the receiver is not exposed of direct sun light.)
- Ensure that the operation display lamp and other indicators are easy to see.

⟨Multiple setting A/b⟩

When the indoor unit is being operating by outside control (central remote controller, etc.), it sometimes does not respond to ON/OFF and temperature setting commands from this remote controller. Check what setting the customer wants and make the multiple setting as shown below.

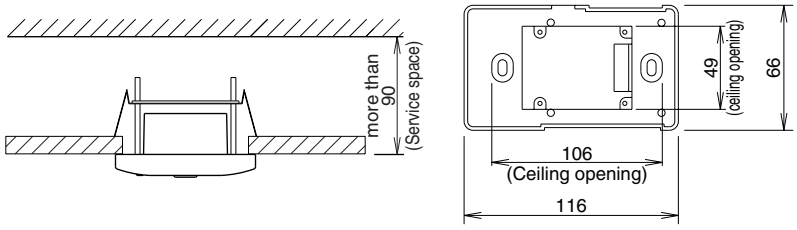
Remote controller		Indoor unit	
Multiple setting	Remote controller display	To control other air conditions and units	For other than on left
A: Standard	All items displayed.	Commands other than ON/OFF and temperature setting accepted. (1 LONG BEEP or 3 SHORT BEEPS emitted)	
b: Multi System	Operations remain displayed shortly after execution.	All commands accepted (2 SHORT BEEPS)	



■ For Ceiling Installation

(1) Prepare the Ceiling for the Receiver

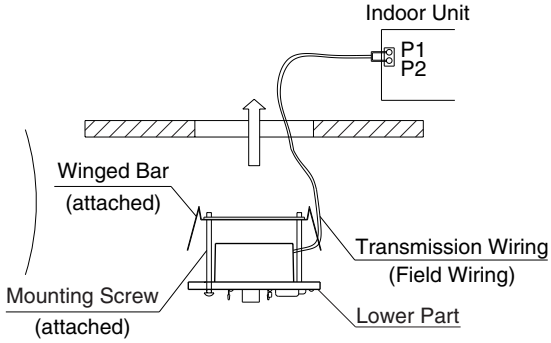
Open a hole in the ceiling for the receiver. (Use the provided ceiling installation pattern.)



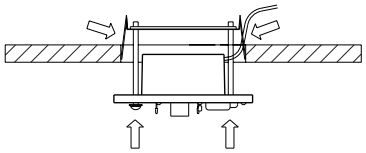
(2) Wire the Indoor Unit and Fix the Lower Part

- Install the winged bar to the lower part and fit the part with the attached screws, Then, wire (field supplied) accordingly.

Connect the P1 and P2 terminals on the rear of the lower part to the P1 and P2 terminals on the indoor unit. The P1 and P2 terminals have no polarity.

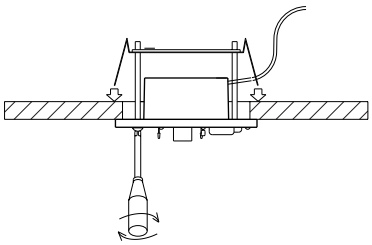


- Insert the lower part into the opening in the ceiling, first by pressing the wings inward to fit the hole and then by pushing from the screws until it sits flat on the ceiling.



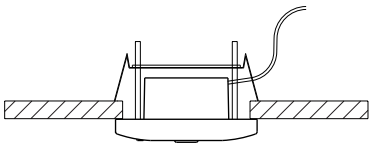
- Tighten the screws until the lower part is fixed in place.

(Tighten both screws evenly. Overtightening may deform the case and possibly make it harder to install the upper part.)



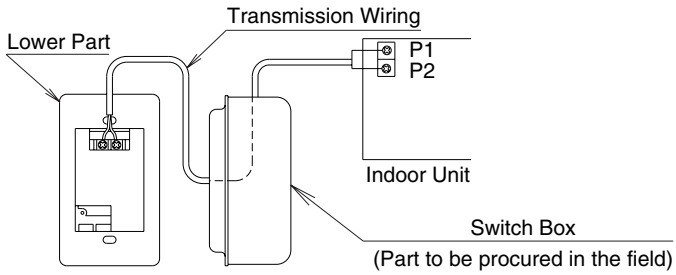
- Reattach the upper part of receiver.

(Install the upper part on the lower part being careful parts are facing in the correct direction. And, test the emergency run button.)



■ For Wall Mounting

(1) Wire the Indoor Unit

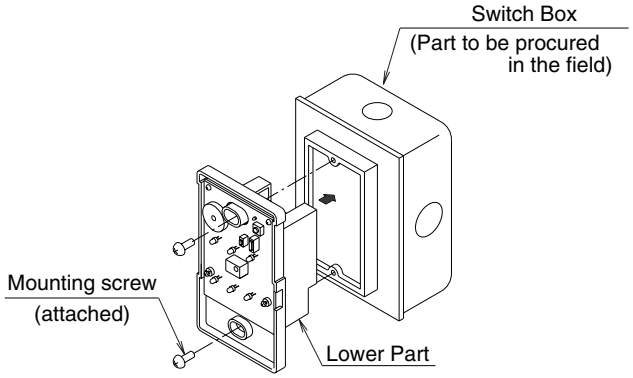


(Connect the P1 and P2 terminals on the rear of the lower part to the P1 and P2 terminals on the indoor unit.
Neither of the terminals is polarized, so it is not important if connections are crossed.)

(2) Fix the Lower Part

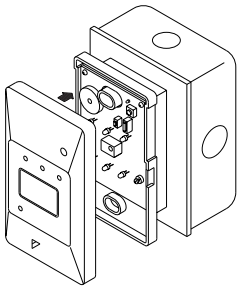
- Install the lower part on the switch box (field supplied part)

Select as flat a place ash possible to install the lower part. Also, be aware of the fact that overtightening the screws (attached) may deform the case and possibly make it harder to install the upper part.



(3) Reattach the Upper Part of Remote Controller

Install the upper part on the lower part being careful parts are facing in the correct direction.
And, test the emergency run button.



NOTES)
1. The switch box and wiring are not included.
2. Do not directly touch the PC board with your hand.

⟨⟨Precautions on transmission wiring⟩⟩

① When wiring, run the wiring away the power supply wiring in order to avoid receiving electric noise (external noise).
② When wiring, refer to the wiring diagram of indoor unit (attached to indoor unit) as well.

WIRING SPECIFICATION

Wiring type	Sheathed wire (2 wire)
Size	0.75~1.25mm^2
Wiring length	max 200m (See Note 1)

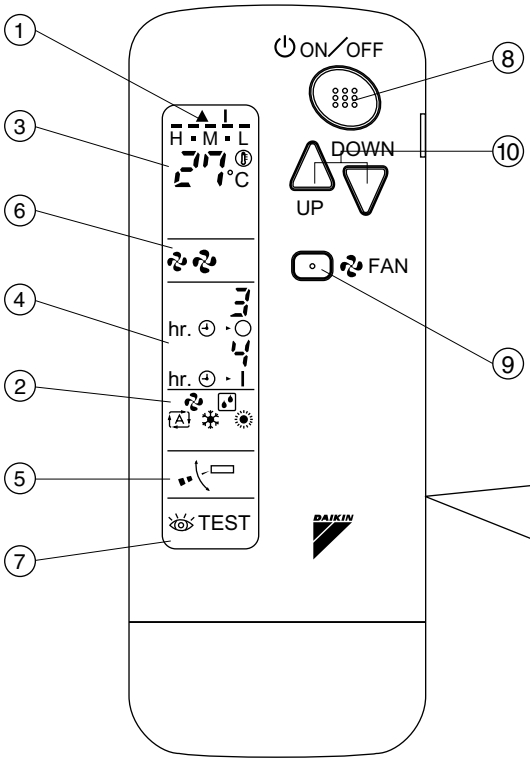
NOTE)
1. Keep wires to less than 200m total when using 2 remote controller (wired or wireless) and when not.

2P018568

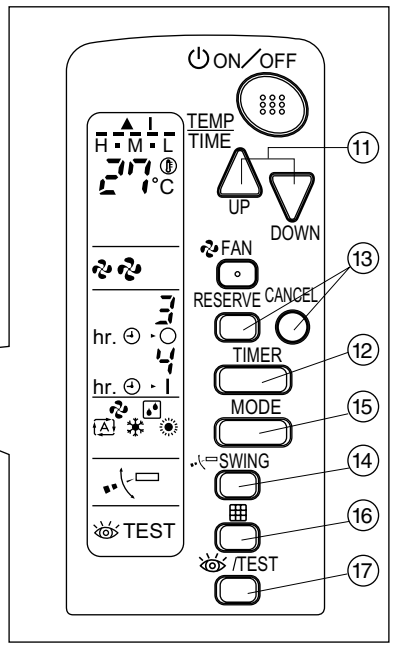
1.6 BRC7EA63W / BRC7EA66 (for FXH(Q))

1.6.1 Operation

1-1

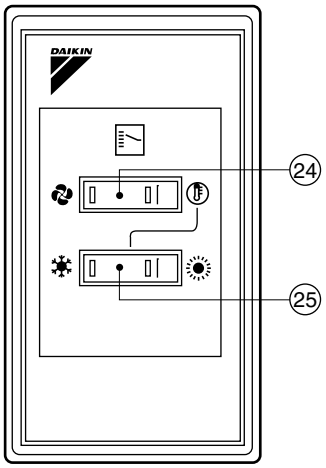


1-2

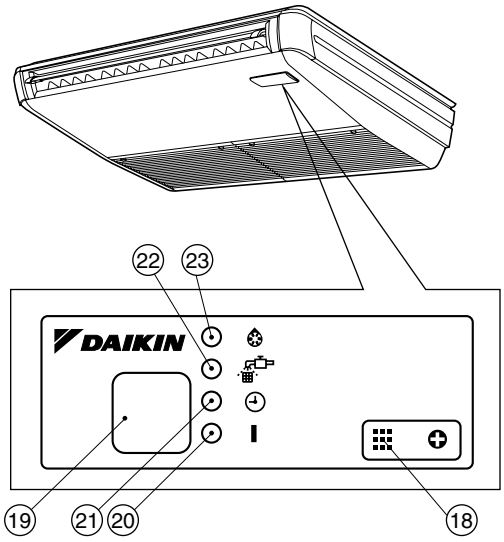


1

COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH



1-3



2

3P107422-8S

2. NAMES AND FUNCTIONS OF THE OPERATING SECTION (Fig. 1, 2)

1	**DISPLAY " ▲ " (SIGNAL TRANSMISSION)**
	This lights up when a signal is being transmitted.
2	**DISPLAY " " " " " " " " " " " " (OPERATION MODE)**
	This display shows the current OPERATION MODE. For straight cooling type, " " (Auto) and " " (Heating) are not installed.
3	**DISPLAY " " (SET TEMPERATURE)**
	This display shows the set temperature.
4	**DISPLAY " " (PROGRAMMED TIME)**
	This display shows PROGRAMMED TIME of the system start or stop.
5	**DISPLAY " " (AIR FLOW FLAP)**
	Refer to Note 1.
6	**DISPLAY " " " " (FAN SPEED)**
	The display shows the set fan speed.
7	**DISPLAY " TEST " (INSPECTION/ TEST OPERATION)**
	When the INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON is pressed, the display shows the system mode is in.
8	**ON/OFF BUTTON**
	Press the button and the system will start. Press the button again and the system will stop.
9	**FAN SPEED CONTROL BUTTON**
	Press this button to select the fan speed, HIGH or LOW, of your choice.
10	**TEMPERATURE SETTING BUTTON**
	Use this button for SETTING TEMPERATURE (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller closed.)
11	**PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON**
	Use this button for programming "START and/or STOP" time. (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller opened.)
12	**TIMER MODE START/STOP BUTTON**
	Refer to Note 2.
13	**TIMER RESERVE/CANCEL BUTTON**
	Refer to Note 3.
14	**AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST BUTTON**
	Refer to Note 4.
15	**OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON**
	Press this button to select OPERATION MODE.
16	**FILTER SIGN RESET BUTTON**
	Refer to the section of MAINTENANCE in the operation manual attached to the indoor unit.
17	**INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON**
	This button is used only by qualified service persons for maintenance purposes.
18	**EMERGENCY OPERATION SWITCH**
	This switch is readily used if the remote controller does not work.
19	**RECEIVER**
	This receives the signals from the remote controller.
20	**OPERATING INDICATOR LAMP (Red)**
	This lamp stays lit while the air conditioner runs. It flashes when the unit is in trouble.
21	**TIMER INDICATOR LAMP (Green)**
	This lamp stays lit while the timer is set.

C: 3P107422-8S

Note 1 : page 117, Note 2 : page 117, Note 3 : page 118, Note 4 : page 116

22	**AIR FILTER CLEANING TIME INDICATOR LAMP (Red)**
	Lights up when it is time to clean the air filter.
23	**DEFROST LAMP (Orange)**
	Lights up when the defrosting operation has started. (For straight cooling type this lamp does not turn on.)
24	**FAN/AIR CONDITIONING SELECTOR SWITCH**
	Set the switch to " " (FAN) for FAN and " " (A/C) for HEAT or COOL.
25	**COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER SWITCH**
	Set the switch to " " (COOL) for COOL and " " (HEAT) for HEAT.

NOTES

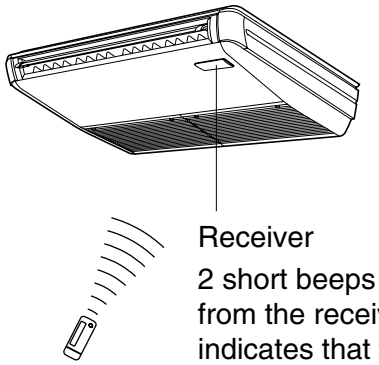
- For the sake of explanation, all indications are shown on the display in Figure 1 contrary to actual running situations.
- Fig. 1-2 shows the remote controller with the front cover opened.
- Fig. 1-3 shows this remote controller can be used in conjunction with the one provided with the VRV system.
- If the air filter cleaning time indicator lamp lights up, clean the air filter as explained in the operation manual provided with the indoor unit.
  After cleaning and reinstalling the air filter, press the filter sign reset button on the remote controller. The air filter cleaning time indicator lamp on the receiver will go out.

3. HANDLING FOR WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER

Precautions in handling remote controller

Direct the transmitting part of the remote controller to the receiving part of the air conditioner.

If something blocks the transmitting and receiving path of the indoor unit and the remote controller as curtains, it will not operate.



Transmitting distance is approximately 7 m.

Do not drop or get it wet.
It may be damaged.

Never press the button of the remote controller with a hard, pointed object.
The remote controller may be damaged.

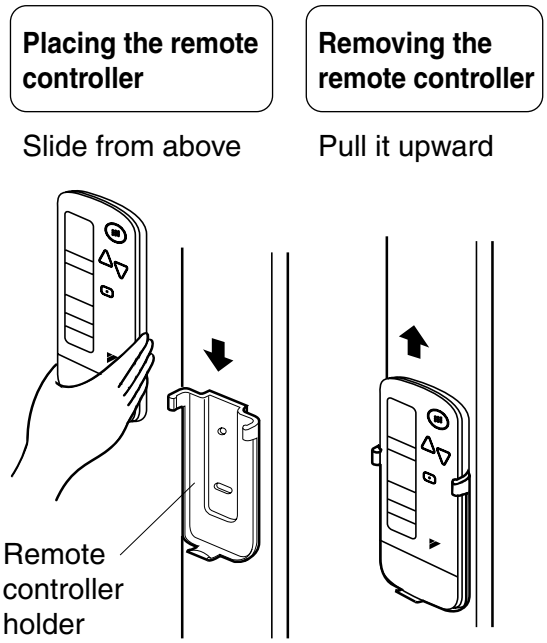
Installation site

- It is possible that signals will not be received in rooms that have electronic fluorescent lighting. Please consult with the salesman before buying new fluorescent lights.
- If the remote controller operated some other electrical apparatus, move that machine away or consult your dealer.

C: 3P107422-8S

Placing the remote controller in the remote controller holder

Install the remote controller holder to a wall or a pillar with the attached screw. (Make sure it transmits)

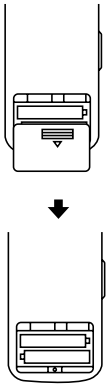


How to put the dry batteries

(1) Remove the back cover of the remote controller to the direction pointed by the arrow mark.

(2) Put the batteries
Use two dry cell batteries (AAA.LR03 (alkaline)). Put dry batteries correctly to fit their (+) and (–).

(3) Close the cover



— When to change batteries —

Under normal use, batteries last about a year. However, change them whenever the indoor unit doesn't respond or responds slowly to commands, or if the display becomes dark.

[CAUTIONS]

- Replace all batteries at the same time, do not use new and old batteries intermixed.
- In case the remote controller is not used for a long time take out all batteries in order to prevent liquid leak of the battery.

IN THE CASE OF CENTRALIZED CONTROL SYSTEM

If the indoor unit is under centralized control, it is necessary to switch the remote controller's setting.
In this case, contact your DAIKIN dealer.

4. OPERATION PROCEDURE

Refer to figure 1 (Note)

- Operating procedure varies with heat pump type and cooling only type. Contact your Daikin dealer to confirm your system type.
- To protect the unit, turn on the main power switch 6 hours before operation.
- If the main power supply is turned off during operation, operation will restart automatically after the power turns back on again.

COOLING, HEATING, AUTOMATIC, FAN, AND PROGRAM DRY OPERATION

Operate in the following order.

- AUTOMATIC OPERATION can be selected only by Heat recovery system.
- For cooling only type, "COOLING", and "FAN" and "DRY"operation are able to select.

Note 1 : page 111

C: 3P107422-8S

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITHOUT COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH⟩⟩

Refer to figure 1-1, 2 (Note 1)

1 MODE OPERATION MODE SELECTOR

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select the OPERATION MODE of your choice as follows.

- COOLING OPERATION ..... " ❄ "
- HEATING OPERATION ..... " ☀ "
- AUTOMATIC OPERATION ..... " Ⓐ "
  - In this operation mode, COOL/HEAT changeover is automatically conducted.
- FAN OPERATION..... " 🌀 "
- DRY OPERATION ..... " 💧 "
  - The function of this program is to decrease the humidity in your room with the minimum temperature decrease.
  - Micro computer automatically determines TEMPERATURE and FAN SPEED.
  - This system does not go into operation if the room temperature is below 16°C.

2 ON/OFF ON/OFF

Press ON/OFF button
OPERATION lamp lights up or goes off and the system starts or stops OPERATION.

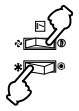
NOTE
- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes.
  Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITH COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH⟩⟩

Refer to figure 1-1,3 on (Note 2)

1 OPERATION MODE SELECTOR

(1) Select OPERATION MODE with the COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH as follows.

- COOLING OPERATION ..... "  "
- HEATING OPERATION ..... "  "
- FAN OPERATION..... "  "
- DRY OPERATION ..... "  "

- See "FOR SYSTEM WITHOUT COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH" for details on dry operation.

(2) Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select " 💧 "
(This operation is only available during dry operation.)

2 ON/OFF ON/OFF

Press ON/OFF button
OPERATION lamp lights up or goes off and the system starts or stops OPERATION.

NOTE
- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes.
  Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

C: 3P107422-8S

Note 1 : page 111, Note 2 : page 111

[EXPLANATION OF HEATING OPERATION]
DEFROST OPERATION

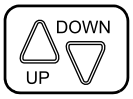
- As the frost on the coil of an outdoor unit increase, heating effect decreases and the system goes into DEFROST OPERATION.
- The fan operation stops and the DEFROST lamp of the indoor unit goes on. After 6 to 8 minutes (maximum 10 minutes) of DEFROST OPERATION, the system returns to HEATING OPERATION.

Heating capacity & Outdoor air temperature

- Heating capacity drops as outdoor air temperature lowers. If feeling cold, use another heater at the same time as this air conditioner.
- Hot air is circulated to warm the room. It will take some time from when the air conditioner is first started until the entire room becomes warm. The internal fan automatically turns at low speed until the air conditioner reaches a certain temperature on the inside. In this situation, all you can do is wait.
- If hot air accumulates on the ceiling and feet are left feeling cold, it is recommended to use a circulator. For details, contact the place of purchase.

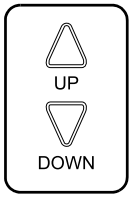
ADJUSTMENT

For programming TEMPERATURE, FAN SPEED and AIR FLOW DIRECTION, follow the procedure shown below.



TEMPERATURE SETTING

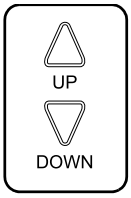
Press TEMPERATURE SETTING button and program the setting temperature.



Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature rises 1°C.

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature lowers 1°C.

In case of automatic operation



Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to “H” side.

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to “L” side.

[°C]

	H	▪	M	▪	L
Setting temperature	25	23	22	21	19

- The setting is impossible for fan operation.

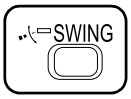
NOTE

- The setting temperature range of the remote controller is 16°C to 32°C.

FAN SPEED CONTROL

Press FAN SPEED CONTROL button.

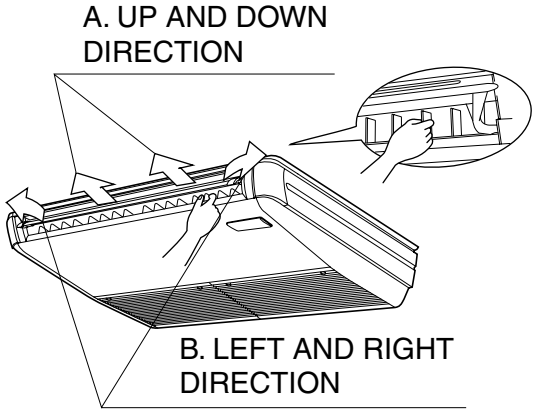
High or Low fan speed can be selected. The microchip may sometimes control the fan speed in order to protect the unit.



AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST

- There are 2 ways of adjusting the air discharge angle.
  1. A. Up and down adjustment
  2. B. Left and right direction

Fig. 1

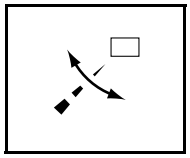


C: 3P107422-8S

A. UP AND DOWN DIRECTION

- The movable limit of the flap is changeable. Contact your Daikin dealer for details.

Press the AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction as shown below.



DISPLAY appears and the air flow direction continuously varies. (Automatic swing setting)

Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction of your choice.

DISPLAY vanishes the air flow direction is fixed (Fixed air flow direction setting).

MOVEMENT OF THE AIR FLOW FLAP

For the following conditions, micro computer controls the air flow direction so it may be different from the display.

Operation mode	Cooling	Heating
Operation condition	• When room temperature is lower than the set temperature	• When room temperature is higher than the set temperature • At defrost operation
	• When operating continuously at horizontal air flow direction	

NOTE

- If you try cooling or programmed drying, while the flaps are facing downward, air flow direction may change unexpectedly. There is nothing wrong with the equipment. This serves to prevent dew formed on parts in the air discharge outlet from dripping.

- Operation mode includes automatic operation.

B. LEFT AND RIGHT DIRECTION

- Adjusting air flow direction in the left and right direction. **(Refer to Fig. 1)**

NOTE

- Only make adjustments after you have stopped the air flow direction swing in a position.
- Stop flaps from swinging before trying to angle them. Working while the flaps are moving may get your fingers pinched.

PROGRAM TIMER OPERATION

Operate in the following order.

- The timer is operated in the following two ways.
  Programming the stop time (◷ ▸ ○)
  .... The system stops operating after the set time has elapsed.
  Programming the start time (◷ ▸ |)
  .... The system starts operating after the set time has elapsed.
- The timer can be programmed a maximum of 72 hours.
- The start and the stop time can be simultaneously programmed.

TIMER MODE START/ STOP

Press the TIMER MODE START/STOP button several times and select the mode on the display.

The display flashes.
For setting the timer stop .... "◷ ▸ ○"
For setting the timer start .... "◷ ▸ |"

C: 3P107422-8S

2 UP DOWN PROGRAMMING TIME

Press the PROGRAMMING TIME button and set the time for stopping or starting the system.

UP
When this button is pressed, the time advances by 1 hour.

DOWN
When this button is pressed, the time goes backward by 1 hour.

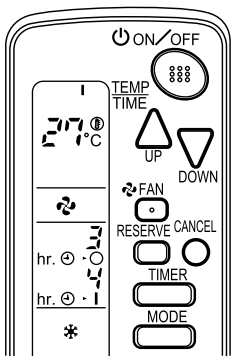
3 RESERVE TIMER RESERVE

Press the TIMER RESERVE button.
The timer setting procedure ends.
The display or changes from flashing light to a constant light.

4 CANCEL TIMER CANCEL

Press the TIMER OFF button to cancel programming. The display vanishes.

For example.



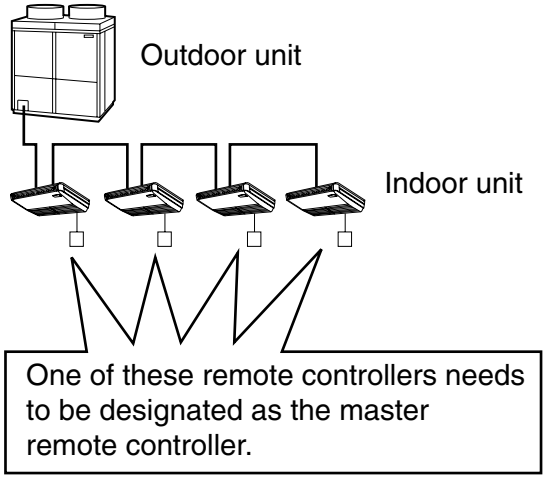
When the timer is programmed to stop the system after 3 hours and start the system after 4 hours, the system will stop after 3 hours and then 1 hour later the system will start.

NOTE
- When the timer is programmed to stop the system after 3 hours and start the system after 4 hours, the system will stop after 3 hours and then 1 hour later the system will start.
- After the timer is programmed, the display shows the remaining time.

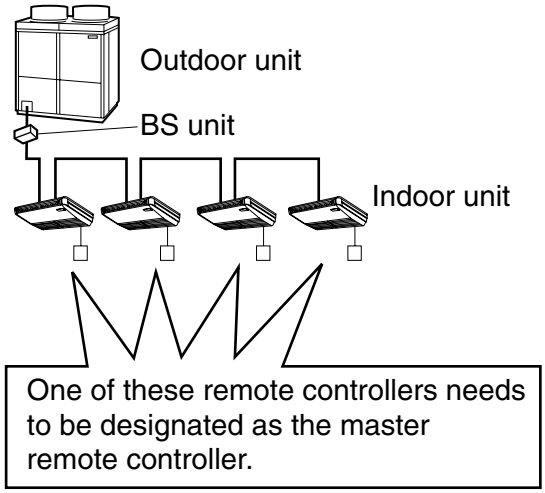
HOW TO SET MASTER REMOTE CONTROLLER (For VRV system)

- When the system is installed as shown below, it is necessary to designate the master remote controller.

■ For Heat pump system
When one outdoor unit is connected with several indoor units.



■ For Heat recovery system
When one BS unit is connected with several indoor units.

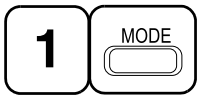


- Only the master remote controller can select HEATING, COOLING or AUTOMATIC (only Heat recovery system) OPERATION.

C: 3P107422-8S

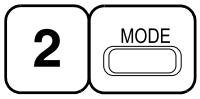
When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “COOL”, you can switch over operation mode between “FAN”, “DRY” and “COOL”.
When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “HEAT”, you can switch over operation mode between “FAN” and “HEAT”.
When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “FAN”, you cannot switch operation mode.
When attempting settings than that consented above, a “peep” is emitted as a warning.
Only with Heat recovery system, you can set the indoor unit to AUTOMATIC. Attempting to do so, a “peep” will be emitted as a warning.

How to designate the master remote controller
Operate in the following order.



Continuously press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button for 4 seconds.

The displays showing “ ◴ ” of all slave indoor unit connected to the same outdoor unit or BS unit flash.



Press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button to the indoor unit that you wish to designate as the master remote controller. Then designation is completed. This indoor unit is designated as the master remote controller and the display showing “ ◴ ” vanishes.

- To change settings, repeat steps [1] and [2].

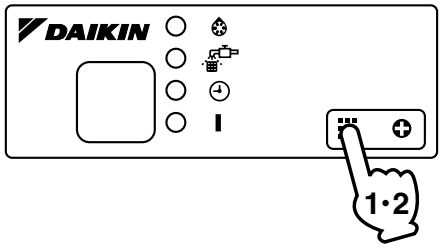
EMERGENCY OPERATION

When the remote controller does not work due to battery failure or the absence thereof, use this switch which is located beside the discharge grille on the main unit. When the remote controller does not work, but the battery low indicator on it is not lit, contact your dealer.

[START]

1 **To press the emergency operation switch.**

The machine runs in the previous mode. The system operates with the previously set air flow direction.



[STOP]

2 **Press the EMERGENCY OPERATION switch again.**

PRECAUTIONS FOR GROUP CONTROL SYSTEM OR TWO REMOTE CONTROLLER CONTROL SYSTEM

This system provides two other control systems beside individual control (one remote controller controls one indoor unit) system. Confirm the following if your unit is of the following control system type.

■ **Group control system**
One remote controller controls up to 16 indoor units.
All indoor units are equally set.

C: 3P107422-8S

■ **Two remote controller control system**
Two remote controllers control one indoor unit. (In case of group control system, one group of indoor units)
The unit follows individual operation.

NOTES
- Cannot have two remote controller control system with only wireless remote controllers. (It will be a two remote controller control system having one wired and one wireless remote controllers.)
- Under two remote controller control system, wireless remote controller cannot control timer operation.
- Only the operating indicator lamp out of 3 other lamps on the indoor unit display functions.

NOTE
- Contact your Daikin dealer in case of changing the combination or setting of group control and two remote controller control systems.

5. NOT MALFUNCTION OF THE AIR CONDITIONER

The following symptoms do not indicate air conditioner malfunction

I. THE SYSTEM DOES NOT OPERATE
- **The system does not restart immediately after the ON/OFF button is pressed.**
  If the OPERATION lamp lights, the system is in normal condition. It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **The system does not restart immediately when TEMPERATURE SETTING button is returned to the former position after pushing the button.**
  It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **If the reception beep is rapidly repeated 3 times (It sounds only twice when operating normally.)**
  Control is set to the optional controller for centralized control.
- **If the defrost lamp on the indoor unit's display is lit when heating is started.**
  This indication is to warn against cold air being blown from the unit. There is nothing wrong with the equipment.

6. HOW TO DIAGNOSE TROUBLE SPOTS

I. EMERGENCY STOP
When the air conditioner stops in emergency, the run lamp on the indoor unit starts blinking. Take the following steps yourself to read the malfunction code that appears on the display. Contact your dealer with this code. It will help pinpoint the cause of the trouble, speeding up the repair.

Press the INSPECTION/TEST button to select the inspection mode " 0 ".

" 0 " appears on display and blinks. "UNIT" lights up.

C: 3P107422-8S

2 UP DOWN

Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the unit number.

Press to change the unit number until the indoor unit beeps and perform the following operation according to the number of beeps.

Number of beeps

3 short beeps .... Perform all steps from [3] to [6].

1 short beep ..... Perform [3] and [6] steps
1 long beep..... Normal state

3 MODE

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON

" 0 " on the left-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

4 UP DOWN

Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit beeps twice.

5 MODE

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON

" 0 " on the right-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

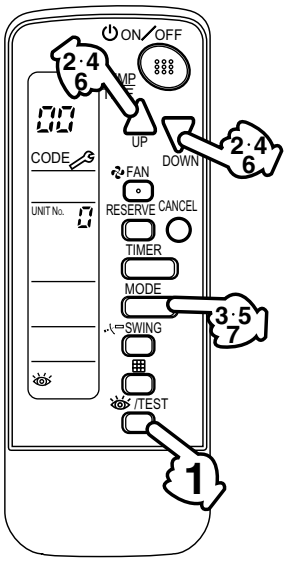
6 UP DOWN

Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit makes a long beep.
The malfunction code is fixed when the indoor unit makes a long beep.

7 MODE **Reset of the display**

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON to get the display back to the normal state.

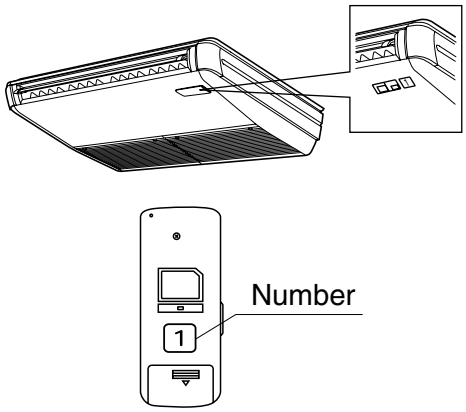


II. IN CASE BESIDES EMERGENCY STOP

1. The unit does not operate at all.

- Check if the receiver is exposed of sunlight or strong light. Keep receiver away from light.
- Check if there are batteries in the remote controller. Place the batteries.
- Check if the indoor unit number and wireless remote controller number are equal.

C: 3P107422-8S



Operate the indoor unit with the remote controller of the same number.
Signal transmitted from a remote controller of a different number cannot be accepted. (If the number is not mentioned, it is considered as “1”)

2. **The system operates but it does not sufficiently cool or heat.**
   - If the set temperature is not proper.
   - If the FAN SPEED is set to LOW SPEED.
   - If the air flow angle is not proper.

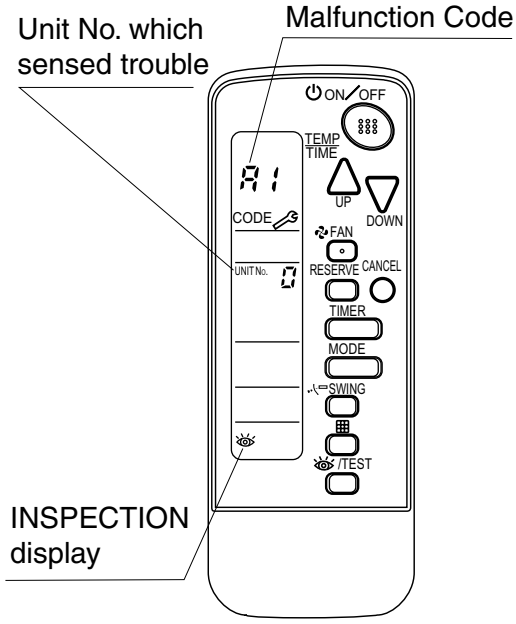
Contact the place of purchase in the following case.

⚠ WARNING

When you detect a burning odor, shut OFF power immediately and contact the place of purchase. Using the equipment in anything but proper working condition can result in equipment damage, electric shock and/or fire.

[Trouble]

The RUN lamp of the indoor unit is flashing and the unit does not work at all.



[Remedial action]

Check the malfunction code (A1 - UF) on the remote control and contact the place of purchase. (See Note)

Disposal requirements
Batteries supplied with the remote controller are marked with this symbol.
This means that the batteries shall not be mixed with unsorted household waste.
If a chemical symbol is printed beneath the symbol, this chemical symbol means that the battery contains a heavy metal above a certain concentration. Possible chemical symbols are:
■ Pb: lead (>0.004%)
Waste batteries must be treated at a specialized treatment facility for re-use.
By ensuring waste batteries are disposed of correctly, you will help to prevent potential negative consequences for the environment and human health.

C: 3P107422-8S

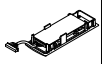
Note : page 120

1.6.2 Installation

To the installer of the unit:
Instruct the user how to operate the unit following the operation manual.

Caution
- Carefully read the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.
- Confirm that the place where the unit will be installed satisfies the following conditions:
  - Where the wireless remote controller is operable.
    (No strong light source or inverter fluorescent lamp must be near the signal receiver.
    The signal receiver must not be directly exposed to the sun light.)
  - Where the operation display lamp is easily visible.

ACCESSORIES
Check if the following accessories are included with your unit.

Name	Shape	Quantity	Name	Shape	Quantity	Name	Shape	Quantity	Name	Shape	Quantity
Receiver assembly		1 set	Remote controller holder		1 pc.	Dry cell battery LR 03 (AM4)		2 pcs.	Wire harness		1 pc.
									Screw for installing remote controller holder		2 pcs.
Transmission PC board assembly		1 set	Wireless remote controller		1 pc.	Unit No. label	1 2 3 1 2 3 1 2 3	1 pc.	Operation manual		1 pc.
									Clamp		2 pcs.

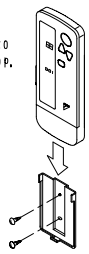
❶ INSTALLATION OF WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER

<Installation of wireless remote controller>
- Do not throw the wireless remote controller or give strong shock.
  Do not store it where it may get wet or directly exposed to the sun light.
- Direct the wireless remote controller transmitting part toward the receiving part of the unit.
- The distance operable by the wireless remote controller from the unit is approximately 7 meters.
- If an obstacle such as curtains blocks the signal between the receiver and the wireless remote controller, the system does not operate.

- Installing to a wall or a pillar

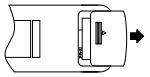
Slide the wireless remote controller into the remote controller holder from the top.

Fix the remote controller holder with the screws.

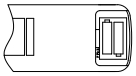


- How to set the batteries

① Slide and open the back cover in the direction shown by the arrow.



② Set the attached dry cell batteries to the place.
Make sure to match the polarity (+) (-) of the batteries to the marks indicated where the batteries are to be placed when setting the batteries.

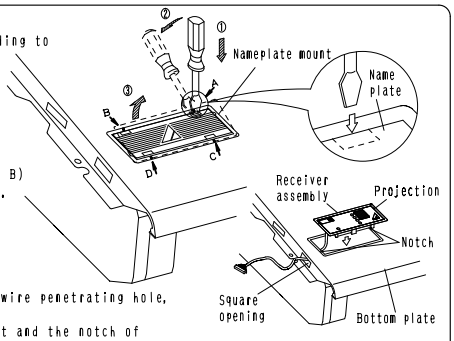


❷ INSTALLATION OF RECEIVER ASSEMBLY

(1) Preparation before installation
Remove the suction grille and the piping side decorative panel according to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.

(2) Installation of receiver assembly
- Remove the decorative name plate mount of the indoor unit.

① Insert the tip of the flat blade (-) screwdriver into the place shown by black circle ● (both A and B) of the name plate.
② Tilt the screwdriver in the direction shown by the arrow. (both A and B)
③ Pull the entire name plate mount toward yourself and remove one side.
④ Do the same to the remaining two places. (C and D)
⑤ Remove the entire name plate.
(the name plate mount is no longer required.)

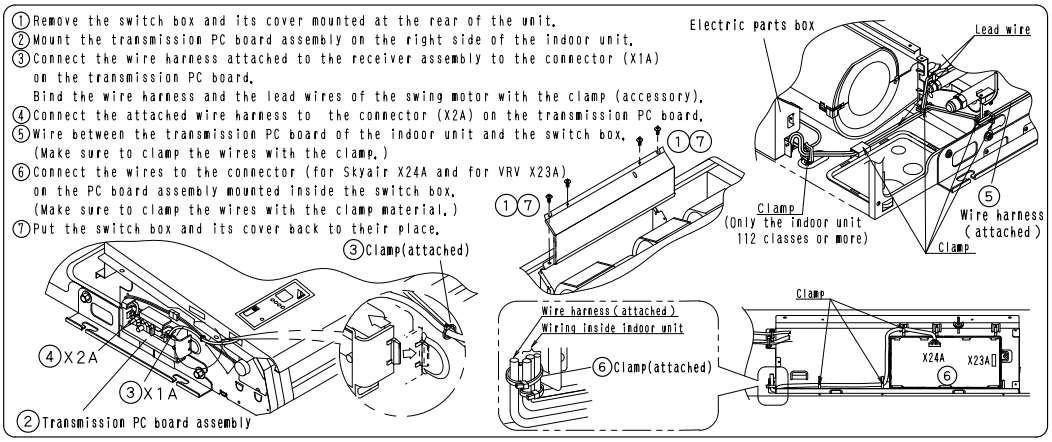


- Installation of receiver assembly
After passing the wire harness of the receiver through the electric wire penetrating hole, set the receiving part in the direction shown by the arrow.
(Fix the receiver after matching the projection of the receiving part and the notch of the bottom frame.)

1P067740-1B

❸ INSTALLATION OF TRANSMISSION PC BOARD ASSEMBLY

①Remove the switch box and its cover mounted at the rear of the unit.
②Mount the transmission PC board assembly on the right side of the indoor unit.
③Connect the wire harness attached to the receiver assembly to the connector (X1A) on the transmission PC board.
Bind the wire harness and the lead wires of the swing motor with the clamp (accessory).
④Connect the attached wire harness to the connector (X2A) on the transmission PC board.
⑤Wire between the transmission PC board of the indoor unit and the switch box. (Make sure to clamp the wires with the clamp.)
⑥Connect the wires to the connector (for Skyair X24A and for VRV X23A) on the PC board assembly mounted inside the switch box. (Make sure to clamp the wires with the clamp material.)
⑦Put the switch box and its cover back to their place.



❹ SETTING OF ADDRESS

<Setting the address and the MAIN/SUB stations>

When multiple units are installed in a room and controlled by one wireless remote controller, (including individual remote control in group control) make sure to set the address to both the receiving part and the wireless remote controller.

SETTING PROCEDURE (For setting the remote controllers for other units, see the installation manual attached to the air conditioners.)

(1)Setting the receiver
Set the wireless address switch (SS2) on the transmission PC board according to the table 1.
When using both wired and wireless remote controllers together, change the MAIN/SUB setting switch on the receiving part (SS1) to the SUB side since the wired remote controller will be used as MAIN. (Refer to table 2)

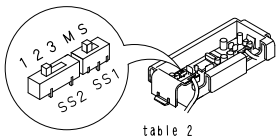


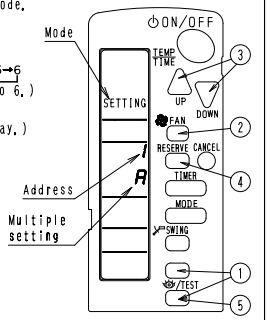
table 1

Unit No.	NO. 1	NO. 2	NO. 3
Wireless address switch (SS2)	1 2 3	1 2 3	1 2 3

table 2

	MAIN	SUB
MAIN/SUB switch (SS1)	M S	M S

(2)Setting the address of wireless remote controller
①Press the [▦] and [TEST] buttons at the same time for 4 seconds or more to go into the FIELD SETTING mode. (The liquid crystal display on the remote controller is shown in the above drawing.)
②Press the [FAN] button and select the multiple setting. (A/b setting) (Each time the button is pressed, the display changes from "A" to "b".)
③Press the "UP" and "DOWN" buttons for set the address. The address can be set from 1 to 6, but set it from 1 to 3 to correspond with the receiving part. (It does not work when it is set to 4 to 6.) →1→2→3→4→5→6
④Press the [RESERVE] button and "define" the setting.
⑤Press the [TEST] button for 1 second or more and the setting is completed. (It returns to normal display.)

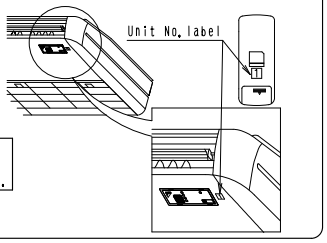


< Miltiple setting (A/b setting) >

When the indoor unit operated by this remote controller is controlled from the outside such as centralized control, sometimes the command of operation changeover and temperature setting is not accepted.
After confirming the customer's request, set the remote controller according to the following table.

Remote controller		Indoor unit	
Multiple setting	Remote controller display	When the operation of the indoor unit is controlled by other air conditioners and equipment	For cases other than those shown left
A: Standard	All items displayed.	Commands other than operation changeover and temperature setting are accepted. Receiving sound is: 1 LONG BEEP or 3 SHORT BEEP	
b: Multi System	Only the items operated remain displayed for a short time	All commands are accepted. Receiving sound is: 2 SHORT BEEPS	

PRECAUTIONS
Set the unit No. of the receiving part and the wireless remote controller the same.
If the numbers are not set the same, the signal from the remote controller cannot be received.



(3)Stick the Unit No. label at the indoor unit as well as on the back of the wireless remote controller.

❺ MOUNTING SUCTION GRILLE AND DECORATIVE PANEL

●Put the piping side decorative panel and the suction grille back to the place in the reverse order according to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.

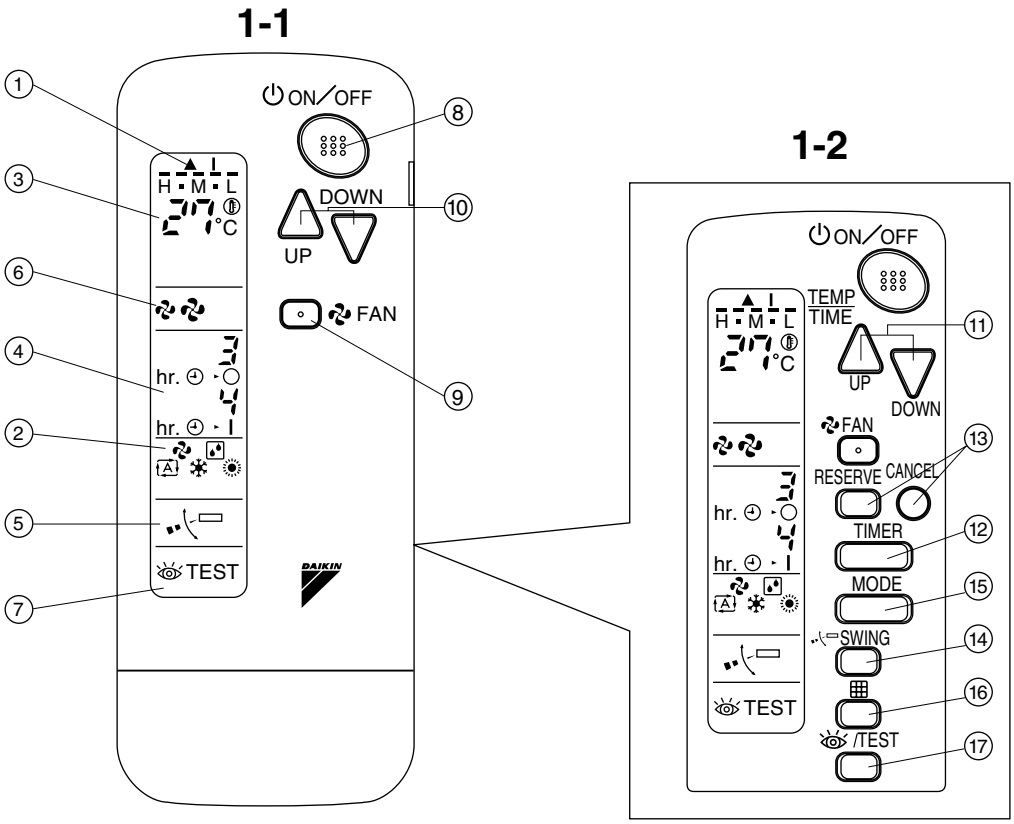
❻ TEST RUN

●Perform test run according to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.

1P067740-1B

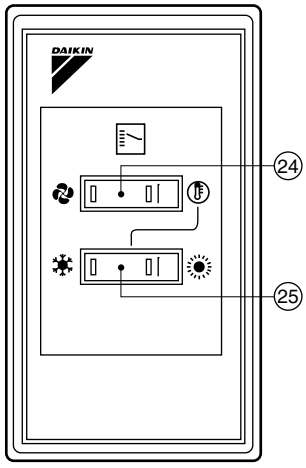
1.7 BRC7EA618 / BRC7EA619 (for FXA(Q))

1.7.1 Operation

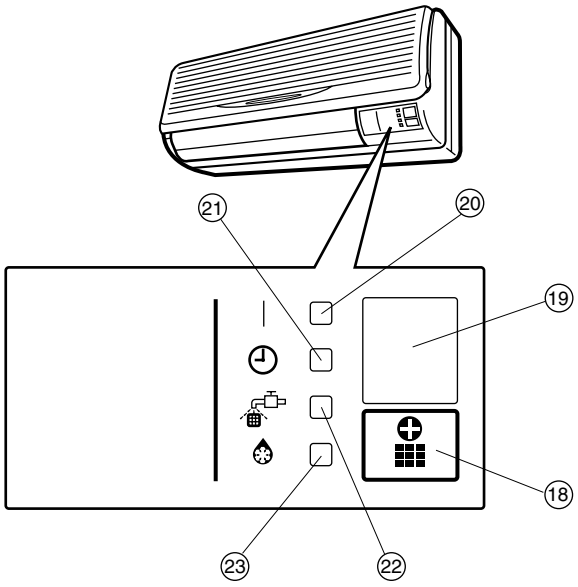


1

COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH



1-3



2

3P107422-10S

1. SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

To gain full advantage of the air conditioner's functions and to avoid malfunction due to mishandling, we recommend that you read this instruction manual carefully before use. This air conditioner is classified under "appliances not accessible to the general public".

The precautions described herein are classified as WARNING and CAUTION. They both contain important information regarding safety. Be sure to observe all precautions without fail.

⚠ **WARNING**..... Failure to follow these instructions properly may result in personal injury or loss of life.

⚠ **CAUTION**..... Failure to observe these instructions properly may result in property damage or personal injury, which may be serious depending on the circumstances.

After reading, keep this manual in a convenient place so that you can refer to it whenever necessary. If the equipment is transferred to a new user, be sure also to hand over the manual.

⚠ **WARNING**

Be aware that prolonged, direct exposure to cool or warm air from the air conditioner, or to air that is too cool or too warm can be harmful to your physical condition and health.

When the air conditioner is malfunctioning (giving off a burning odor, etc.) turn off power to the unit and contact your local dealer.
Continued operation under such circumstances may result in a failure, electric shocks or fire hazards.

Consult your local dealer to install your equipment.
Doing the work yourself may result in water leakage, electric shocks or fire hazards.

Consult your local dealer regarding modification, repair and maintenance of the air conditioner or the remote controller.
Improper workmanship may result in water leakage, electric shocks or fire hazards.

Do not place objects, including rods, your fingers, etc., in the air inlet or outlet.
Injury may result due to contact with the air conditioner's high-speed fan blades.

Beware of fire in case of refrigerant leakage.
If the air conditioner is not operating correctly, i.e. not generating cool or warm air, refrigerant leakage could be the cause. Consult your dealer for assistance.
The refrigerant within the air conditioner is safe and normally does not leak. However, in the event of a leakage, contact with a naked burner, heater or cooker may result in generation of noxious gas. Do not longer use the air conditioner until a qualified service person confirms that the leakage has been repaired.

Consult your local dealer regarding what to do in case of refrigerant leakage.
When the air conditioner is to be installed in a small room, it is necessary to take proper measures so that the amount of any leaked refrigerant does not exceed the concentration limit in the event of a leakage. Otherwise, this may lead to an accident due to oxygen depletion.

Contact professional personnel about attachment of accessories and be sure to use only accessories specified by the manufacturer.
If a defect results from your own workmanship, it may result in water leaks, electric shock or fire.

Consult your local dealer regarding relocation and reinstallation of the air conditioner.
Improper installation work may result in leakage, electric shocks or fire hazards.

Be sure to use fuses with the correct ampere reading.
Do not use improper fuses, copper or other wires as a substitute, as this may result in electric shock, fire, injury or damage to the unit.

Be sure to install an earth leakage breaker.
Failure to install an earth leakage breaker may result in electric shocks or fire.

Be sure to earth the unit.
Do not earth the unit to a utility pipe, lightning conductor or telephone earth lead. Imperfect earthing may result in electric shocks or fire.
A high surge current from lightning or other sources may cause damage to the air conditioner.

Consult the dealer if the air conditioner submerges owing to a natural disaster, such as a flood or typhoon.
Do not operate the air conditioner in that case, or otherwise a malfunction, electric shock, or fire may result.

Do not start or stop operating the air conditioner with the power supply breaker turned ON or OFF.
Otherwise, fire or water leakage may result. Furthermore, the fan will rotate abruptly if power failure compensation is enabled, which may result in injury.

Do not use the product in the atmosphere contaminated with oil vapor, such as cooking oil or machine oil vapor.
Oil vapor may cause crack damage, electric shocks, or fire.

Do not use the product in places with excessive oily smoke, such as cooking rooms, or in places with flammable gas, corrosive gas, or metal dust.
Using the product in such places may cause fire or product failures.

Do not use flammable materials (e.g., hairspray or insecticide) near the product.
Do not clean the product with organic solvents such as paint thinner.
The use of organic solvents may cause crack damage to the product, electric shocks, or fire.

Be sure to use a dedicated power supply for the air conditioner.
The use of any other power supply may cause heat generation, fire, or product failures.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use the air conditioner for purposes other than those for which it is intended.
Do not use the air conditioner for cooling precision instruments, food, plants, animals or works of art as this may adversely affect the performance, quality and/or longevity of the object concerned.

Do not remove the outdoor unit's fan guard.
The guard protects against the unit's high speed fan, which may cause injury.

Do not place objects that are susceptible to moisture directly beneath the indoor or outdoor units.
Under certain conditions, condensation on the main unit or refrigerant pipes, air filter dirt or drain blockage may cause dripping, resulting in fouling or failure of the object concerned.

To avoid oxygen depletion, ensure that the room is adequately ventilated if equipment such as a burner is used together with the air conditioner.

After prolonged use, check the unit stand and its mounts for damage.
If left in a damaged condition, the unit may fall and cause injury.

Do not place flammable sprays or operate spray containers near the unit as this may result in fire.

Before cleaning, be sure to stop unit operation, turn the breaker off or remove the power cord.
Otherwise, an electric shock and injury may result.

To avoid electric shocks, do not operate with wet hands.

Do not place appliances that produce naked flames in places exposed to the air flow from the unit as this may impair combustion of the burner.

Do not place heaters directly below the unit, as resulting heat can cause deformation.

Do not allow a child to mount on the outdoor unit or avoid placing any object on it.
Falling or tumbling may result in injury.

Do not block air inlets nor outlets.
Impaired air flow may result in insufficient performance or trouble.

Be sure that children, plants or animals are not exposed directly to airflow from the unit, as adverse effects may ensue.

Do not wash the air conditioner or the remote controller with water, as this may result in electric shocks or fire.

Do not place water containers (flower vases, etc.) on the unit, as this may result in electric shocks or fire.

Do not install the air conditioner at any place where there is a danger of flammable gas leakage.
In the event of a gas leakage, build-up of gas near the air conditioner may result in fire hazards.

Do not put flammable containers, such as spray cans, within 1 m from the blow-off mouth.
The containers may explode because the warm air output of the indoor or outdoor unit will affect them.

The batteries must be removed from the appliance before it is scrapped and they are disposed of safely.

Arrange the drain to ensure complete drainage.
If proper drainage from the outdoor drain pipe does not occur during air conditioner operation, there could be a blockage due to dirt and debris build-up in the pipe. This may result in a water leakage from the indoor unit. Under these circumstances, stop air conditioner operation and consult your dealer for assistance.

The appliance is not intended for use by unattended young children or infirm persons.
Impairment of bodily functions and harm to health may result.

Children should be supervised to ensure that they do not play with the unit or its remote controller.
Accidental operation by a child may result in impairment of bodily functions and harm health.

Do not let children play on or around the outdoor unit.
If they touch the unit carelessly, injury may be caused.

Consult your dealer regarding cleaning the inside of the air conditioner.
Improper cleaning may cause breakage of plastic parts, water leakage and other damage as well as electric shocks.

To avoid injury, do not touch the air inlet or aluminum fins of the unit.

Do not place objects in direct proximity of the outdoor unit and do not let leaves and other debris accumulate around the unit.
Leaves are a hotbed for small animals which can enter the unit. Once in the unit, such animals can cause malfunctions, smoke or fire when making contact with electrical parts.

Never touch the internal parts of the controller.
Do not remove the front panel. Touching certain internal parts will cause electric shocks and damage to the unit. Please consult your dealer about checking and adjustment of internal parts.

3P107422-10S

Do not leave the remote controller wherever there is a risk of wetting.
If water gets into the remote controller there is a risk of electrical leakage and damage to electronic components.

When using the wireless remote controller, do not put a strong light beam or install an inverter fluorescent lamp near the receiving section on the main unit.
A malfunction may occur.

Watch your steps at the time of air filter cleaning or inspection.
High-place work is required, to which utmost attention must be paid.
If the scaffold is unstable, you may fall or topple down, thus causing injury.

2. NAMES AND FUNCTIONS OF THE OPERATING SECTION (Fig. 1, 2)

1	**DISPLAY " ▲ " (SIGNAL TRANSMISSION)**
	This lights up when a signal is being transmitted.
2	**DISPLAY " " " " " " " " " " " " (OPERATION MODE)**
	This display shows the current OPERATION MODE. For cooling only type, " " (Auto) and " " (Heating) are not installed.
3	**DISPLAY " " (SET TEMPERATURE)**
	This display shows the set temperature.
4	**DISPLAY " " (PROGRAMMED TIME)**
	This display shows PROGRAMMED TIME of the system start or stop.
5	**DISPLAY " " (AIR FLOW FLAP)**
	Refer to Note 1.
6	**DISPLAY " " " " (FAN SPEED)**
	The display shows the set fan speed.
7	**DISPLAY " TEST " (INSPECTION/ TEST OPERATION)**
	When the INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON is pressed, the display shows the system mode is in.
8	**ON/OFF BUTTON**
	Press the button and the system will start. Press the button again and the system will stop.
9	**FAN SPEED CONTROL BUTTON**
	Press this button to select the fan speed, HIGH or LOW, of your choice.
10	**TEMPERATURE SETTING BUTTON**
	Use this button for SETTING TEMPERATURE (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller closed.)
11	**PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON**
	Use this button for programming "START and/or STOP" time. (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller opened.)
12	**TIMER MODE START/STOP BUTTON**
	Refer to Note 2.
13	**TIMER RESERVE/CANCEL BUTTON**
	Refer to Note 3.
14	**AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST BUTTON**
	Refer to Note 4.
15	**OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON**
	Press this button to select OPERATION MODE.
16	**FILTER SIGN RESET BUTTON**
	Refer to the section of MAINTENANCE in the operation manual attached to the indoor unit.
17	**INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON**
	This button is used only by qualified service persons for maintenance purposes.
18	**EMERGENCY OPERATION SWITCH**
	This switch is readily used if the remote controller does not work.

3P107422-10S

Note 1 : page 134, Note 2 : page 134, Note 3 : page 135, Note 4 : page 133

19	**RECEIVER**
	This receives the signals from the remote controller.
20	**OPERATING INDICATOR LAMP (Red)**
	This lamp stays lit while the air conditioner runs. It flashes when the unit is in trouble.
21	**TIMER INDICATOR LAMP (Green)**
	This lamp stays lit while the timer is set.
22	**AIR FILTER CLEANING TIME INDICATOR LAMP (Red)**
	Lights up when it is time to clean the air filter.
23	**DEFROST LAMP (Orange)**
	Lights up when the defrosting operation has started. (For cooling only type this lamp does not turn on.)
24	**FAN/AIR CONDITIONING SELECTOR SWITCH**
	Set the switch to " " (FAN) for FAN and " " (A/C) for HEAT or COOL.
25	**COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER SWITCH**
	Set the switch to " " (COOL) for COOL and " " (HEAT) for HEAT.

NOTES

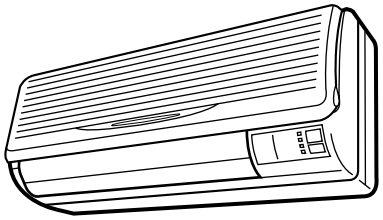
- For the sake of explanation, all indications are shown on the display in Figure 1 contrary to actual running situations.
- Fig. 1-2 shows the remote controller with the front cover opened.
- Fig. 1-3 shows this remote controller can be used in conjunction with the one provided with the VRV system.
- If the air filter cleaning time indicator lamp lights up, clean the air filter as explained in the operation manual provided with the indoor unit.
  After cleaning and reinstalling the air filter, press the filter sign reset button on the remote controller. The air filter cleaning time indicator lamp on the receiver will go out.
- The Defrost Lamp will flash when the power is turned on. This is not a malfunction.

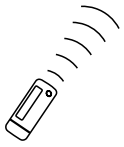
3. HANDLING FOR WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER

Precautions in handling remote controller

Direct the transmitting part of the remote controller to the receiving part of the air conditioner.

If something blocks the transmitting and receiving path of the indoor unit and the remote controller as curtains, it will not operate.





2 short beeps from the receiver indicates that the transmission is properly done.

Transmitting distance is approximately 7 m.

Do not drop or get it wet.

It may be damaged.

Never press the button of the remote controller with a hard, pointed object.

The remote controller may be damaged.

Installation site

- It is possible that signals will not be received in rooms that have electronic fluorescent lighting. Please consult with the salesman before buying new fluorescent lights.
- If the remote controller operated some other electrical apparatus, move that machine away or consult your dealer.

Placing the remote controller in the remote controller holder

Install the remote controller holder to a wall or a pillar with the attached screw. (Make sure it transmits)

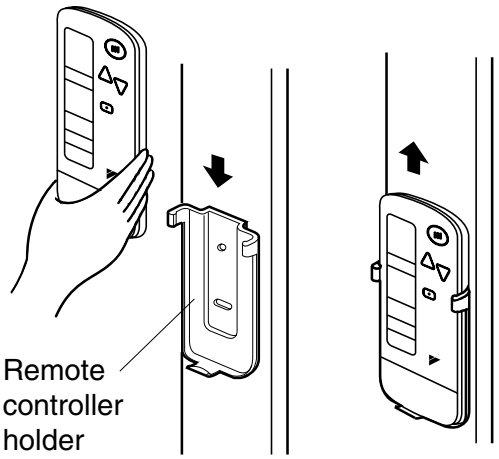
3P107422-10S

Placing the remote controller

Slide from above

Removing the remote controller

Pull it upward

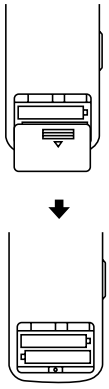


How to put the dry batteries

(1) Remove the back cover of the remote controller to the direction pointed by the arrow mark.

(2) Put the batteries
Use two dry cell batteries (AAA.LR03 (alkaline)). Put dry batteries correctly to fit their (+) and (–).

(3) Close the cover



— When to change batteries —

Under normal use, batteries last about a year. However, change them whenever the indoor unit doesn't respond or responds slowly to commands, or if the display becomes dark.

[CAUTIONS]

- Replace all batteries at the same time, do not use new and old batteries intermixed.
- In case the remote controller is not used for a long time take out all batteries in order to prevent liquid leak of the battery.

IN THE CASE OF CENTRALIZED CONTROL SYSTEM

If the indoor unit is under centralized control, it is necessary to switch the remote controller's setting. In this case, contact your DAIKIN dealer.

4. OPERATION RANGE

VRV System

See the operation manual provided with the air conditioner.

Split System

If the temperature or the humidity is beyond the following conditions, safety devices may work and the air conditioner may not operate, or sometimes, water may drop from the indoor unit.

COOLING [°C]

	OUT-DOOR UNIT	INDOOR			OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE	
		TEMPERATURE		HUMIDITY		
COOLING ONLY TYPE	R71 RP71	DB	20 to 35	80% or below	DB	21 to 46
		WB	14 to 25			
HEAT PUMP TYPE	RY71 RYP71	DB	18 to 35	80% or below	DB	– 5 to 46
		WB	12 to 25			

HEATING [°C]

	OUT-DOOR UNIT	INDOOR TEMPERATURE		OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE	
HEAT PUMP TYPE	RY71 RYP71	DB	15 to 27	DB	– 9 to 21
				WB	– 10 to 15

DB: Dry bulb temperature
WB: Wet bulb temperature

The setting temperature range of the remote controller is 16°C to 32°C.

5. OPERATION PROCEDURE

Refer to figure 1 (Note 1)

- Operating procedure varies with heat pump type and cooling only type. Contact your Daikin dealer to confirm your system type.
- To protect the unit, turn on the main power switch 6 hours before operation.
- If the main power supply is turned off during operation, operation will restart automatically after the power turns back on again.

COOLING, HEATING, AUTOMATIC, FAN, AND PROGRAM DRY OPERATION

Operate in the following order.

- AUTOMATIC OPERATION can be selected only by Heat pump split system or Heat recovery VRV system.
- For cooling only type, “COOLING”, and “FAN” and “DRY”operation are able to select.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITHOUT COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH⟩⟩

Refer to figure 1-1, 2 (Note 2)

1 MODE — OPERATION MODE SELECTOR

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select the OPERATION MODE of your choice as follows.

- ■ COOLING OPERATION ..... “ ❄ ”
- ■ HEATING OPERATION ..... “ ☀ ”
- ■ AUTOMATIC OPERATION ..... “ A ”
  - In this operation mode, COOL/HEAT changeover is automatically conducted.
- ■ FAN OPERATION ..... “ ”
- ■ DRY OPERATION ..... “ ”
  - The function of this program is to decrease the humidity in your room with the minimum temperature decrease.
  - Micro computer automatically determines TEMPERATURE and FAN SPEED.
  - This system does not go into operation if the room temperature is below 16°C.

2 ON/OFF — ON/OFF

Press ON/OFF button

OPERATION lamp lights up or goes off and the system starts or stops OPERATION.

NOTE

- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes.
  Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITH COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH⟩⟩

Refer to figure 1-1,3 (Note 3)

1 — OPERATION MODE SELECTOR

(1) Select OPERATION MODE with the COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH as follows.

- ■ COOLING OPERATION ..... “ ”
- ■ HEATING OPERATION ..... “ ”
- ■ FAN OPERATION ..... “ ”
- ■ DRY OPERATION ..... “ ”
  - See “FOR SYSTEM WITHOUT COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH” for details on dry operation.

3P107422-10S

Note 1 : page 125, Note 2 : page 125, Note 3 : page 125

(2) Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select " ◉ " (This operation is only available during dry operation.)

ON/OFF

Press ON/OFF button
OPERATION lamp lights up or goes off and the system starts or stops OPERATION.

NOTE
- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes.
  Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

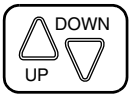
[EXPLANATION OF HEATING OPERATION]
DEFROST OPERATION

- As the frost on the coil of an outdoor unit increase, heating effect decreases and the system goes into DEFROST OPERATION.
- The fan operation stops and the DEFROST lamp of the indoor unit goes on. After 6 to 8 minutes (maximum 10 minutes) of DEFROST OPERATION, the system returns to HEATING OPERATION.

Heating capacity & Outdoor air temperature
- Heating capacity drops as outdoor air temperature lowers. If feeling cold, use another heater at the same time as this air conditioner.
- Hot air is circulated to warm the room. It will take some time from when the air conditioner is first started until the entire room becomes warm. The internal fan automatically turns at low speed until the air conditioner reaches a certain temperature on the inside. In this situation, all you can do is wait.
- If hot air accumulates on the ceiling and feet are left feeling cold, it is recommended to use a circulator. For details, contact the place of purchase.

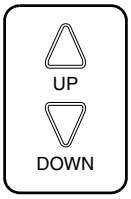
ADJUSTMENT

For programming TEMPERATURE, FAN SPEED and AIR FLOW DIRECTION, follow the procedure shown below.



TEMPERATURE SETTING

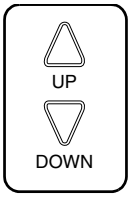
Press TEMPERATURE SETTING button and program the setting temperature.



Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature rises 1°C.

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature lowers 1°C.

In case of automatic operation



Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to "H" side.

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to "L" side.

[°C]

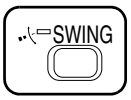
	H	▪	M	▪	L
Setting temperature	25	23	22	21	19

- The setting is impossible for fan operation.

NOTE
- The setting temperature range of the remote controller is 16°C to 32°C.

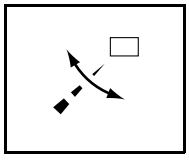
FAN SPEED CONTROL

Press FAN SPEED CONTROL button.
High or Low fan speed can be selected.
The microchip may sometimes control the fan speed in order to protect the unit.



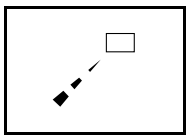
AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST

Press the AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction as shown below.



DISPLAY appears and the air flow direction continuously varies. (Automatic swing setting)

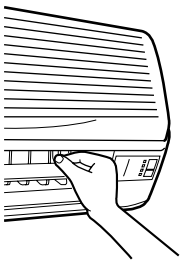
Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction of your choice.



DISPLAY vanishes the air flow direction is fixed (Fixed air flow direction setting).

Adjusting left/right air flow direction

Angle the flaps to the left/right from the knob, as wanted or as needed to air condition the room.



NOTE

- Stop flaps from swinging before trying to angle them. Working while the flaps are moving may get your fingers pinched.

MOVEMENT OF THE AIR FLOW FLAP

For the following conditions, micro computer controls the air flow direction so it may be different from the display.

Operation mode	Cooling	Heating
Operation conditions	• When operating continuously at downward air flow direction	• When room temperature is higher than the set temperature • At defrost operation (The flaps blow horizontally to avoid blowing cold air directly on the occupants of the room.)

NOTE

- If you try cooling or programmed drying, while the flaps are facing downward, air flow direction may change unexpectedly. There is nothing wrong with the equipment. This serves to prevent dew formed on parts in the air discharge outlet from dripping.
- Operation mode includes automatic operation.

PROGRAM TIMER OPERATION

Operate in the following order.

- The timer is operated in the following two ways.
  Programming the stop time (◷ ▸ ○)
  .... The system stops
  operating after the set time has elapsed.
  Programming the start time (◷ ▸ |)
  .... The system starts
  operating after the set time has elapsed.
- The timer can be programmed a maximum of 72 hours.
- The start and the stop time can be simultaneously programmed.

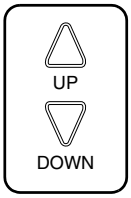
TIMER MODE START/STOP

Press the TIMER MODE START/STOP button several times and select the mode on the display.

The display flashes.
For setting the timer stop .... "◷ ▸ ○"
For setting the timer start .... "◷ ▸ |"

PROGRAMMING TIME

Press the PROGRAMMING TIME button and set the time for stopping or starting the system.



When this button is pressed, the time advances by 1 hour.

When this button is pressed, the time goes backward by 1 hour.

3P107422-10S

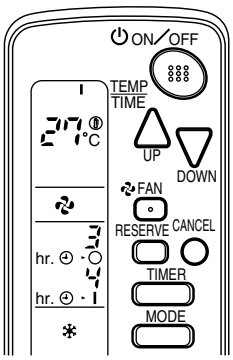
3 RESERVE TIMER RESERVE

Press the TIMER RESERVE button.
The timer setting procedure ends.
The display changes from flashing light to a constant light.

4 CANCEL TIMER CANCEL

Press the TIMER OFF button to cancel programming. The display vanishes.

For example.



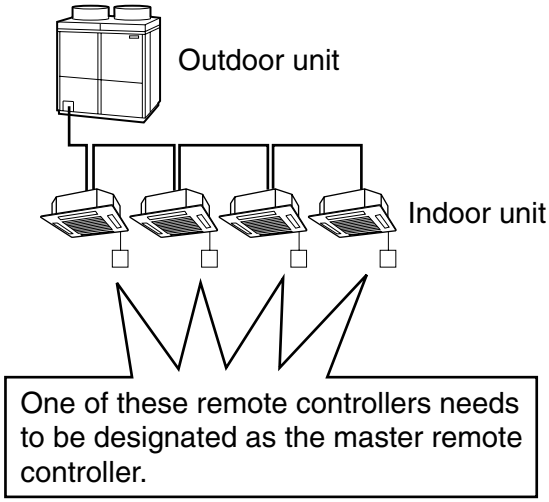
When the timer is programmed to stop the system after 3 hours and start the system after 4 hours, the system will stop after 3 hours and then 1 hour later the system will start.

NOTE
- After the timer is programmed, the display shows the remaining time.

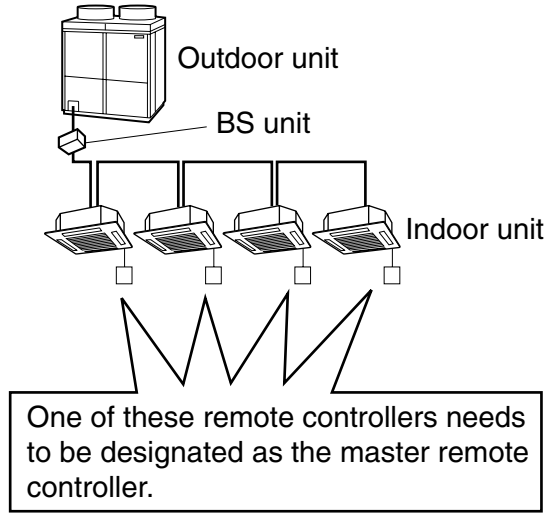
HOW TO SET MASTER REMOTE CONTROLLER (For VRV system)

- When the system is installed as shown below, it is necessary to designate the master remote controller.

■ **For Heat pump system**
When one outdoor unit is connected with several indoor units.



■ **For Heat recovery system**
When one BS unit is connected with several indoor units.



- Only the master remote controller can select HEATING, COOLING or AUTOMATIC (only Heat recovery system) OPERATION.

When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “COOL”, you can switch over operation mode between “FAN”, “DRY” and “COOL”.
When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “HEAT”, you can switch over operation mode between “FAN” and “HEAT”.
When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “FAN”, you cannot switch operation mode.

3P107422-10S

When attempting settings than that consented above, a “peep” is emitted as a warning.
Only with Heat recovery system, you can set the indoor unit to AUTOMATIC. Attempting to do so, a “peep” will be emitted as a warning.

How to designate the master remote controller

Operate in the following order.

1 MODE

Continuously press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button for 4 seconds.

The displays showing “ ⏲ ” of all slave indoor unit connected to the same outdoor unit or BS unit flash.

2 MODE

Press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button to the indoor unit that you wish to designate as the master remote controller. Then designation is completed. This indoor unit is designated as the master remote controller and the display showing “ ⏲ ” vanishes.

- To change settings, repeat steps 1 and 2.

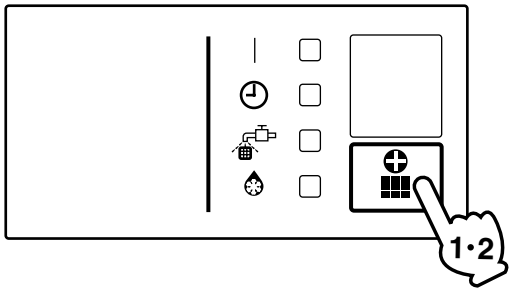
EMERGENCY OPERATION

When the remote controller does not work due to battery failure or the absence thereof, use this switch which is located beside the discharge grille on the main unit. When the remote controller does not work, but the battery low indicator on it is not lit, contact your dealer.

[START]

1 To press the emergency operation switch.

The machine runs in the previous mode. The system operates with the previously set air flow direction.



[STOP]

2 Press the EMERGENCY OPERATION switch again.

PRECAUTIONS FOR GROUP CONTROL SYSTEM OR TWO REMOTE CONTROLLER CONTROL SYSTEM

This system provides two other control systems beside individual control (one remote controller controls one indoor unit) system. Confirm the following if your unit is of the following control system type.

■ **Group control system**
One remote controller controls up to 16 indoor units.
All indoor units are equally set.

■ **Two remote controller control system**
Two remote controllers control one indoor unit. (In case of group control system, one group of indoor units)
The unit follows individual operation.

NOTES

- Cannot have two remote controller control system with only wireless remote controllers. (It will be a two remote controller control system having one wired and one wireless remote controllers.)
- Under two remote controller control system, wireless remote controller cannot control timer operation.
- Only the operating indicator lamp out of 3 other lamps on the indoor unit display functions.

NOTE

- Contact your Daikin dealer in case of changing the combination or setting of group control and two remote controller control systems.

3P107422-10S

6. NOT MALFUNCTION OF THE AIR CONDITIONER

The following symptoms do not indicate air conditioner malfunction

I. THE SYSTEM DOES NOT OPERATE

- **The system does not restart immediately after the ON/OFF button is pressed.**
  If the OPERATION lamp lights, the system is in normal condition. It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **The system does not restart immediately when TEMPERATURE SETTING button is returned to the former position after pushing the button.**
  It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **If the reception beep is rapidly repeated 3 times (It sounds only twice when operating normally.)**
  Control is set to the optional controller for centralized control.
- **If the defrost lamp on the indoor unit's display is lit when heating is started.**
  This indication is to warn against cold air being blown from the unit. There is nothing wrong with the equipment.

7. HOW TO DIAGNOSE TROUBLE SPOTS

I. EMERGENCY STOP

When the air conditioner stops in emergency, the run lamp on the indoor unit starts blinking. Take the following steps yourself to read the malfunction code that appears on the display. Contact your dealer with this code. It will help pinpoint the cause of the trouble, speeding up the repair.

1 TEST

Press the INSPECTION/TEST button to select the inspection mode " 0 ".

" 0 " appears on display and blinks. "UNIT" lights up.

2 UP DOWN

Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the unit number.

Press to change the unit number until the indoor unit beeps and perform the following operation according to the number of beeps.

Number of beeps

3 short beeps .... Perform all steps from 3 to 6.

1 short beep ..... Perform 3 and 6 steps
1 long beep..... Normal state

3 MODE

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON

" 0 " on the left-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

4 UP DOWN

Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit beeps twice.

5 MODE

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON

" 0 " on the right-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

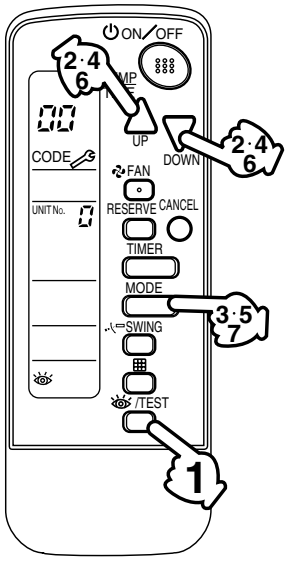
6 UP DOWN

Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit makes a long beep.
The malfunction code is fixed when the indoor unit makes a long beep.

7 MODE **Reset of the display**

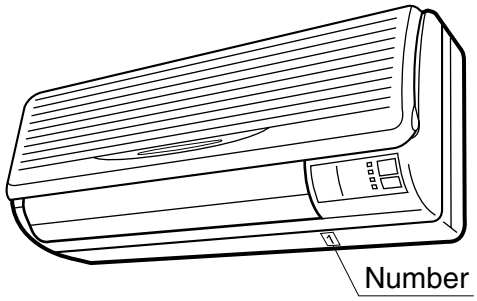
Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON to get the display back to the normal state.

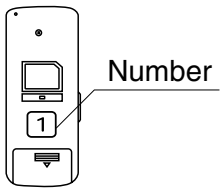


II. IN CASE BESIDES EMERGENCY STOP

1. The unit does not operate at all.

- Check if the receiver is exposed of sunlight or strong light. Keep receiver away from light.
- Check if there are batteries in the remote controller. Place the batteries.
- Check if the indoor unit number and wireless remote controller number are equal.





Operate the indoor unit with the remote controller of the same number.
Signal transmitted from a remote controller of a different number cannot be accepted. (If the number is not mentioned, it is considered as "1")

2. The system operates but it does not sufficiently cool or heat.

- If the set temperature is not proper.
- If the FAN SPEED is set to LOW SPEED.
- If the air flow angle is not proper.

Contact the place of purchase in the following case.

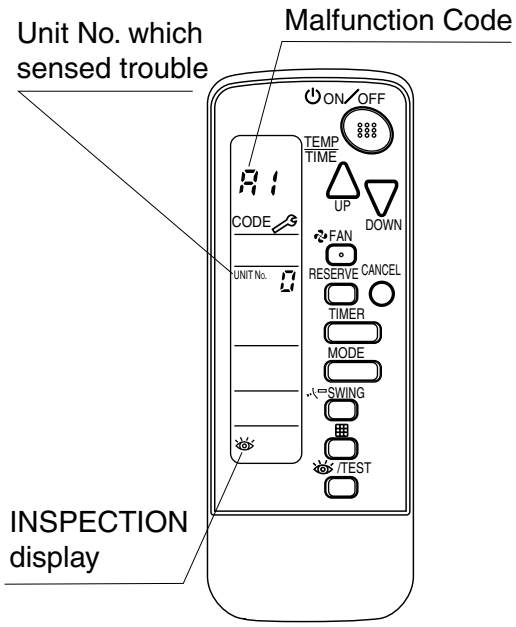
⚠ WARNING

When you detect a burning odor, shut OFF power immediately and contact the place of purchase. Using the equipment in anything but proper working condition can result in equipment damage, electric shock and/or fire.

3P107422-10S

[Trouble]

The RUN lamp of the indoor unit is flashing and the unit does not work at all.



[Remedial action]

Check the malfunction code (A1 - UF) on the remote controller and contact the place of purchase. (See Note)

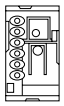
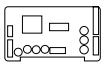
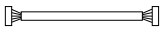
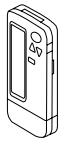
Note : page 137

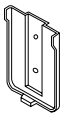
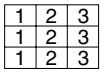
1.7.2 Installation

1. BEFORE INSTALLATION

1-1 ACCESSORIES

Check if the following accessories are included with your unit.

Name	Receiver		(3) Relay harness - long	(4) Relay harness - short	Wireless remote controller	Screw
	(1) Light receiver assembly	(2) Transmission PC-board				
Quantity	1 pc.	1 pc.	1 pc.	1 pc.	1 pc.	2 pcs.
Shape						

Name	Remote controller holder	(5) Unit No. nameplate	(6) Receiver label	Dry cell battery LR03 (AM4)	(7) Clamp
Quantity	1 pc.	1 pc.	1 pc.	2 pcs.	1 pc.
Shape					

Name	Operation manual	Installation manual
Quantity	1 pc.	1 pc.

1-2 NOTE TO THE INSTALLER

- Be sure to instruct the customer how to properly operate the system showing him/her the attached operation manual.

2. REMOTE CONTROLLER INSTALLATION

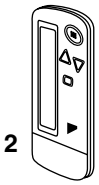
⟨Installing wireless remote controller⟩

- Do not throw the remote controller or impose large shocks. Also, do not store where it may be exposed to moisture or direct sunlight.
- When operating, point the transmitting part of the remote controller in the direction of the receiver.
- The direct transmitting distance of the remote controller is approximately 7 meters.
- The signal cannot be transmitted if something such as curtains blocks the receiver and the remote controller.

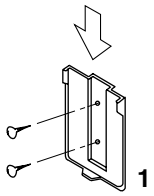
C: 3P091240-1-2

Installing to a wall or a pillar

1. Fix the remote controller holder with the screws.

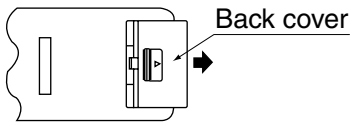


2. Slide the remote controller into the remote controller holder from the top.

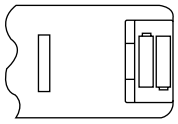


How to insert the batteries

1. Open the back cover of the remote controller by sliding it in the direction of the arrow.



2. Insert the attached dry cell batteries. Properly insert, set the batteries by matching the (+) and (–) polarity marks as indicated. Then close the back cover as before.



3. RECEIVER INSTALLATION

(1) Preparations before installation

Remove the service lid and the front grill. See the installation manual that came with the main indoor unit for details on removal.

(2) Determination of address and MAIN/SUB remote controller.

If setting multiple wireless remote controllers to operate in one room, perform address setting for the receiver and the wireless remote controller.

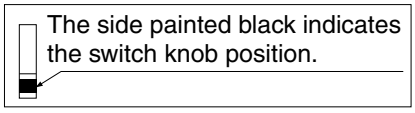
If setting multiple wired remote controllers in one room, change the MAIN/SUB switch of the receiver.

SETTING PROCEDURE

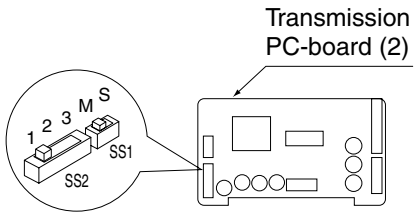
1. Setting the receiver

Set the wireless address switch (SS2) on the transmission PC-board (2) according to the table below.

Unit No.	No. 1	No. 2	No. 3
Wireless address switch (SS2)	1 2 3	1 2 3	1 2 3



When using both a wired and a wireless remote controller for 1 indoor unit, the wired controller should be set to MAIN. Therefore, set the MAIN/SUB switch (SS1) of the receiver to SUB.
(The wired remote controller will be “MAIN”.)



	MAIN	SUB
MAIN/SUB switch (SS1)	M S	M S

C: 3P091240-1-3

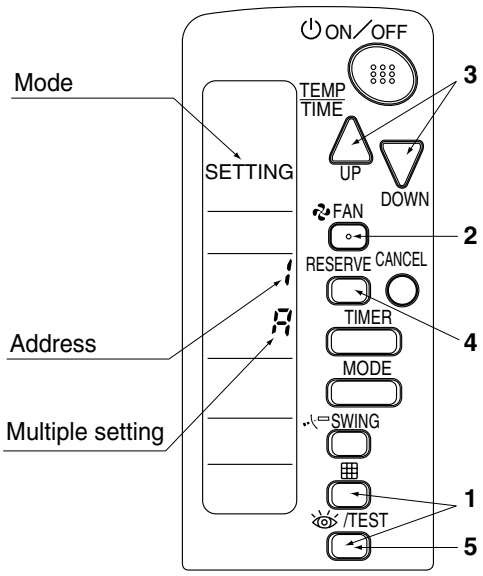
2. Setting the address of wireless remote controller (It is factory set to "1")

〈Setting from the remote controller〉

1. Hold down the [▦] button and the [/TEST] button for at least 4 seconds to get the Field Set mode. (Indicated in the display area in the figure at right.)
2. Press the [FAN] button and select a multiple setting (A/b). Each time the button is pressed the display switches between "A" and "b".
3. Press the " △ UP " button and " ▽ DOWN " button to set the address.

   →1→2→3→4→5→6

   Address can be set from 1 to 6, but set it to 1 ~ 3 and to same address as the receiver. (The receiver does not work with address 4 ~ 6.)
4. Press the [RESERVE] button to enter the setting.
5. Hold down the [/TEST] button for at least 1 second to quit the Field Set mode and return to the normal display.



Multiple settings A/b

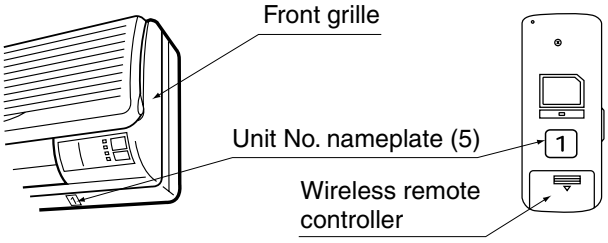
When the indoor unit is being operating by outside control (central remote controller, etc.), it sometimes does not respond to ON/OFF and temperature setting commands from this remote controller. Check what setting the customer wants and make the multiple setting as shown below.

Remote controller		Movement when the operation is controlled by the other air conditioners and equipment
Multiple setting	Remote controller display	
A: Standard	All items displayed.	When operation changeover, temperature setting or the like is carried out from the remote controller, the indoor unit rejects the instruction. (Signal receiving sound "peeh" or "pick-pick-pick") As a result, a discrepancy between the operation state of the indoor unit and the indication of the remote controller display occurs.
b: Multi System	Operations remain displayed shortly after execution.	All commands accepted. (Signal receiving sound "pick-pick") Since the indication of the remote controller is turned off, no discrepancy such as mentioned above occurs.

3. Attach the included unit No. nameplate (5) to the front grill on the indoor unit and the back of the wireless remote controller.

[PRECAUTIONS]

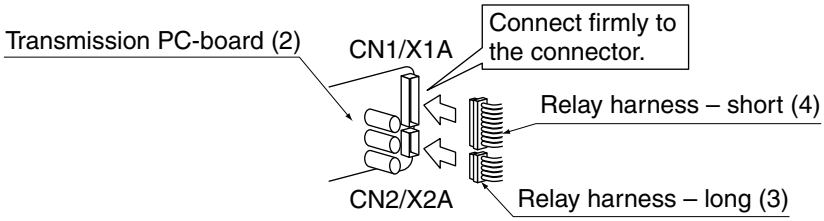
Set the Unit No. of the receiver and the wireless remote controller to be equal. If the settings differs, the signal from the remote controller cannot be transmitted.



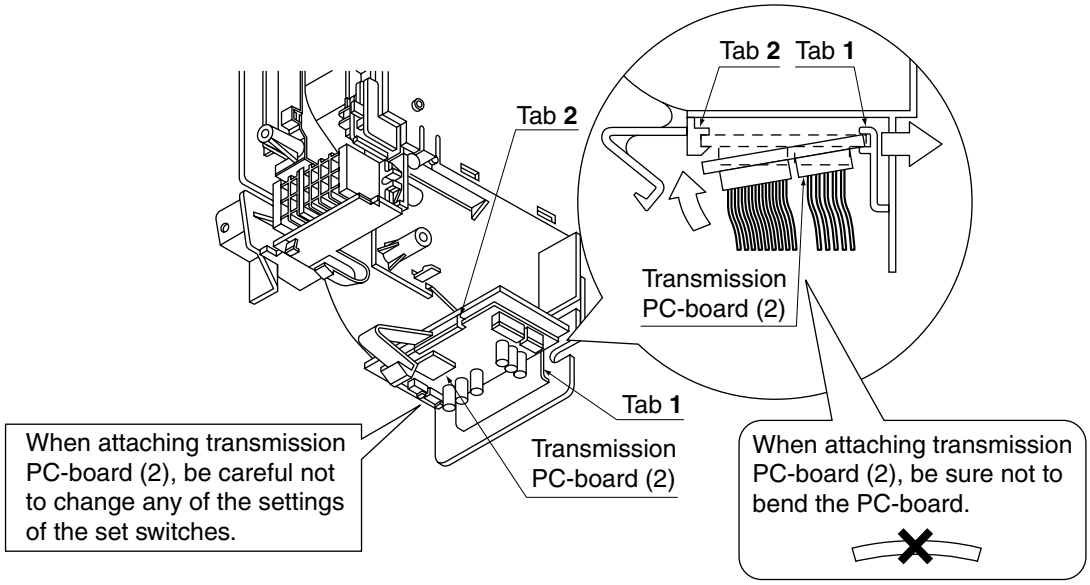
C: 3P091240-1-4

(3) Attaching the receiver

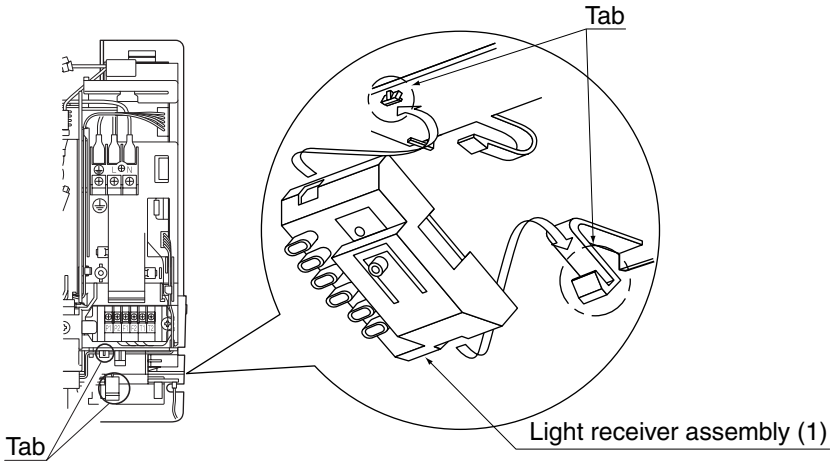
1. Connect the included relay harness – long (3) and relay harness – short (4) relay harnesses to the connector on the transmission PC-board (2).



2. Following the figure, insert transmission PC-board (2) into tab **1**, then insert into tab **2** while pushing tab **1** in the direction of the arrow.

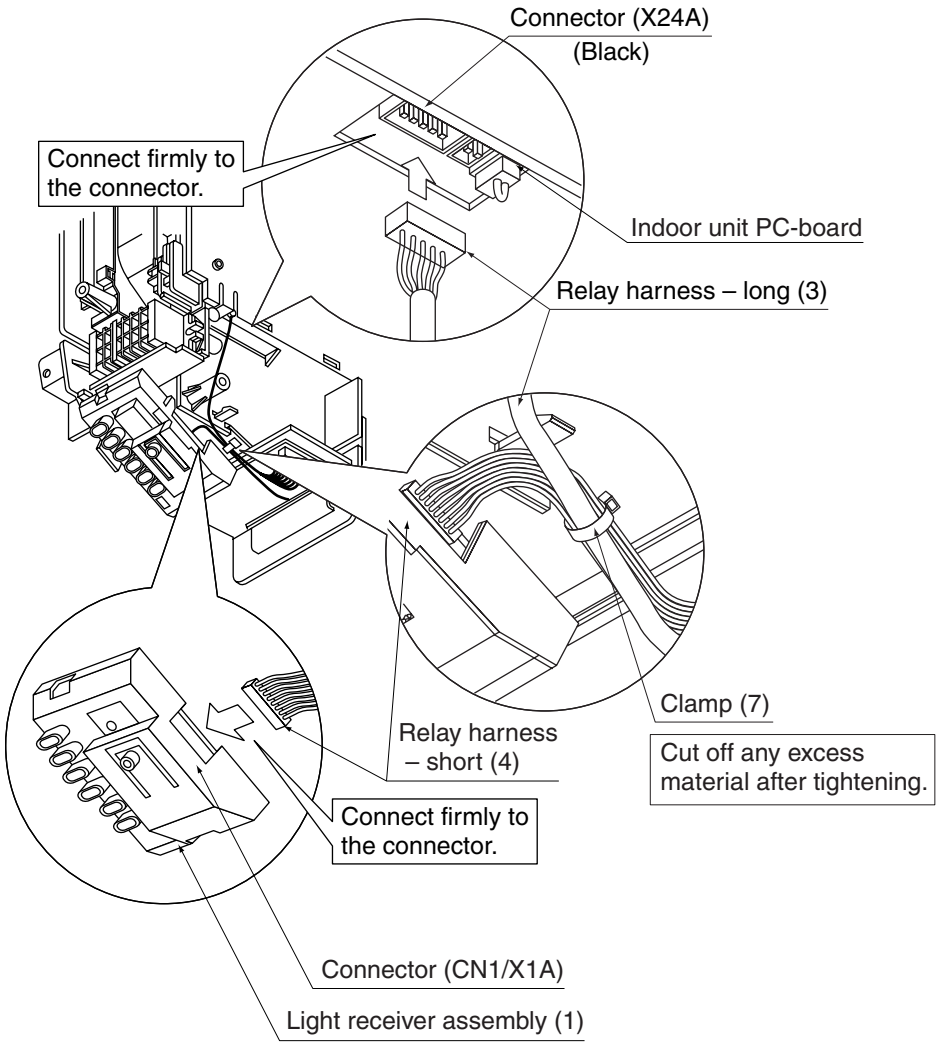


3. Attach the included light receiver assembly (1) to the 2 tabs on the indoor unit, as per the figure.

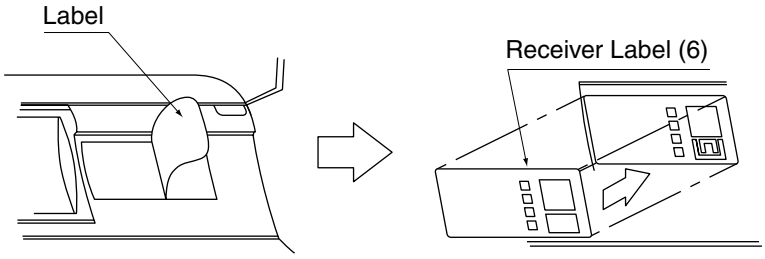


C: 3P091240-1-5

4. Connect the relay harnesses which were connected to the transmission PC-board (2) in step **1.** as follows.
Relay harness – long (3) to connector X24A on the indoor unit PC-board
Relay harness – short (4) to connector CN1/X1A on the light receiver assembly (1)
After making these connection, clamp down relay harness – long (3) and relay harness – short (4) relay harnesses using the included clamp (7).



(4) Attaching the receiver label
Remove label on the front grill. Detach the adhesive.
Attach the receiver label (6) as the main indoor unit.

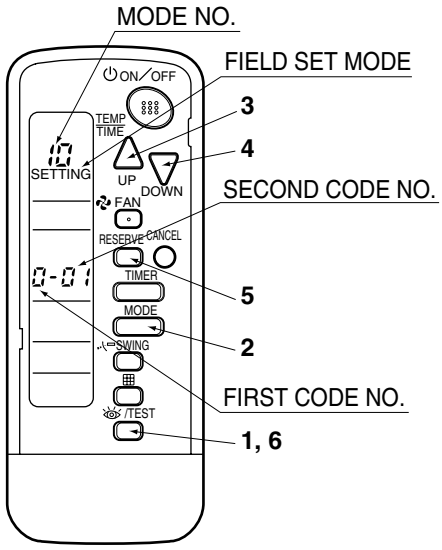


Following the installation manual that came with the main indoor unit, attach the front grill.

C: 3P091240-1-6

4. FIELD SETTING

If optional accessories are mounted on the indoor unit, the indoor unit setting may have to be changed. Refer to the instruction manual (optional hand book) for each optional accessory.



Procedure

1. When in the normal mode, press the [/TEST] button for a minimum of four seconds, and the FIELD SET MODE is entered.
2. Select the desired MODE NO. with the [MODE] button.
3. Push the " △ UP " button and select the FIRST CODE NO.
4. Push the " ▽ DOWN " button and select the SECOND CODE NO.
5. Push the [RESERVE] button and the present settings are SET.
6. Push the [/TEST] button to return to the NORMAL MODE.

(Example)
If the time to clean air filter is set to "Filter Contamination-Heavy", set Mode No. to "10", FIRST CODE NO. to "0", and SECOND CODE NO. to "02".

MODE NO.	FIRST CODE NO.	DESCRIPTION OF SETTING	SECOND CODE NO. NOTE)				
			01		02		03
10	0	Filter Contamination-Heavy/Light (Setting for spacing time of display time to clean air filter) (Setting for when filter contamination is heavy, and spacing time of display time to clean air filter is to be halved)	Light	Approx. 200 hrs.	Heavy	Approx. 100 hrs.	–
	3	Spacing time of display time to clean air filter count (Setting for when the filter sign is not to be displayed)	Display		Do not display		–
12 (VRV system)	1	ON/OFF input from outside (Set to enable starting/stopping from remote.)	Forced OFF input		ON/OFF		–
	2	Thermostat differential changeover (Set when using remote controller thermostat sensor.)	1˚C		0.5˚C		–
13	0	Airflow rate increase mode (to be set upon user's request)	Standard		A little increase		Increase

NOTE
The SECOND CODE NO. is factory set to "01".
Do not use any settings not listed in the table.
For group control with a wireless remote controller, initial settings for all the indoor units of the group are equal. (For group control, refer to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit for group control.)

5. TEST OPERATION

Perform test operation according to the instructions in the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit.

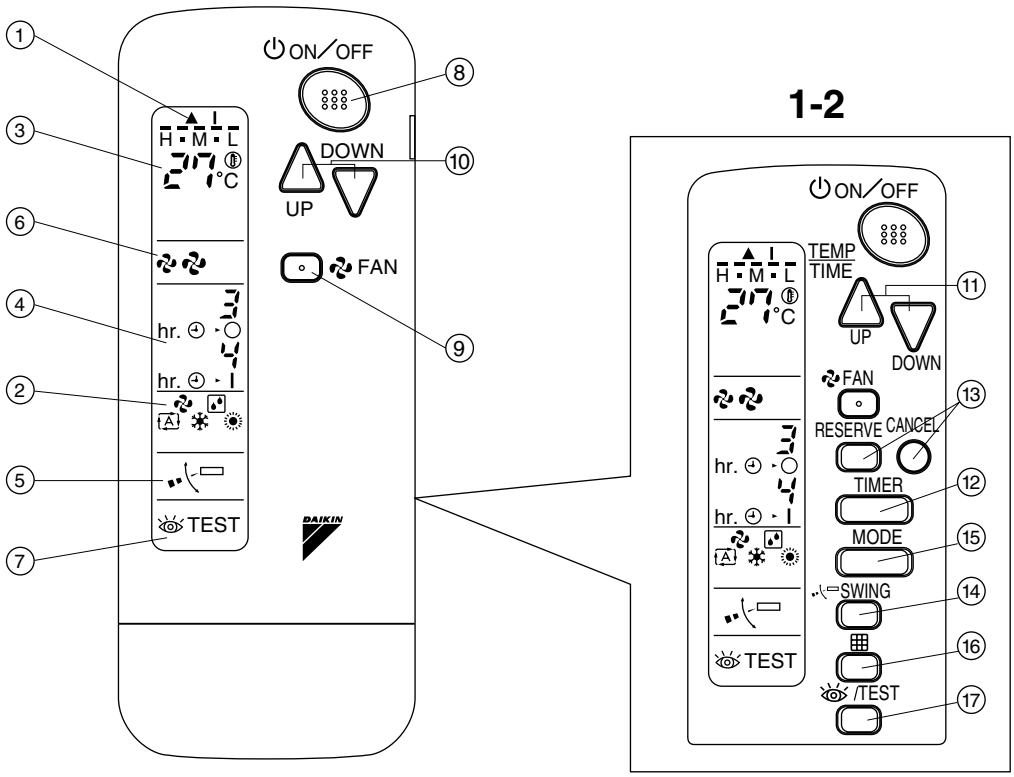
[PRECAUTIONS]
1. Refer to malfunction diagnosis label attached to the unit if it does not operate.
2. Refer to the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit for individual operation system types.

C: 3P091240-1-7

1.8 BRC7E530W / BRC7E531W (for FXZQ)

1.8.1 Operation

1-1

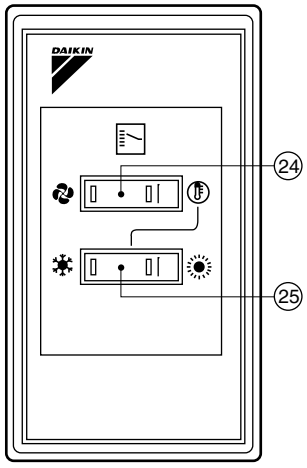


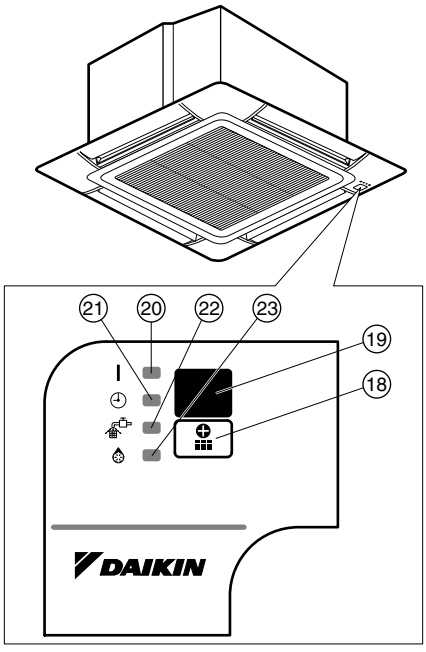
1-2

1

1-3

COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH





1

2

3P107422-1S

1. SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

To gain full advantage of the air conditioner's functions and to avoid malfunction due to mishandling, we recommend that you read this instruction manual carefully before use. This air conditioner is classified under "appliances not accessible to the general public".

The precautions described herein are classified as WARNING and CAUTION. They both contain important information regarding safety. Be sure to observe all precautions without fail.

⚠ **WARNING** ..... Failure to follow these instructions properly may result in personal injury or loss of life.

⚠ **CAUTION** ..... Failure to observe these instructions properly may result in property damage or personal injury, which may be serious depending on the circumstances.

After reading, keep this manual in a convenient place so that you can refer to it whenever necessary. If the equipment is transferred to a new user, be sure also to hand over the manual.

⚠ WARNING

Be aware that prolonged, direct exposure to cool or warm air from the air conditioner, or to air that is too cool or too warm can be harmful to your physical condition and health.

When the air conditioner is malfunctioning (giving off a burning odor, etc.) turn off power to the unit and contact your local dealer.
Continued operation under such circumstances may result in a failure, electric shocks or fire hazards.

Consult your local dealer to install your equipment.
Doing the work yourself may result in water leakage, electric shocks or fire hazards.

Consult your local dealer regarding modification, repair and maintenance of the air conditioner or the remote controller.
Improper workmanship may result in water leakage, electric shocks or fire hazards.

Do not place objects, including rods, your fingers, etc., in the air inlet or outlet.
Injury may result due to contact with the air conditioner's high-speed fan blades.

Beware of fire in case of refrigerant leakage.
If the air conditioner is not operating correctly, i.e. not generating cool or warm air, refrigerant leakage could be the cause. Consult your dealer for assistance.
The refrigerant within the air conditioner is safe and normally does not leak. However, in the event of a leakage, contact with a naked burner, heater or cooker may result in generation of noxious gas. Do not longer use the air conditioner until a qualified service person confirms that the leakage has been repaired.

Consult your local dealer regarding what to do in case of refrigerant leakage.
When the air conditioner is to be installed in a small room, it is necessary to take proper measures so that the amount of any leaked refrigerant does not exceed the concentration limit in the event of a leakage. Otherwise, this may lead to an accident due to oxygen depletion.

Contact professional personnel about attachment of accessories and be sure to use only accessories specified by the manufacturer.
If a defect results from your own workmanship, it may result in water leaks, electric shock or fire.

Consult your local dealer regarding relocation and reinstallation of the air conditioner.
Improper installation work may result in leakage, electric shocks or fire hazards.

Be sure to use fuses with the correct ampere reading.
Do not use improper fuses, copper or other wires as a substitute, as this may result in electric shock, fire, injury or damage to the unit.

Be sure to install an earth leakage breaker.
Failure to install an earth leakage breaker may result in electric shocks or fire.

Be sure to earth the unit.
Do not earth the unit to a utility pipe, lightning conductor or telephone earth lead. Imperfect earthing may result in electric shocks or fire.
A high surge current from lightning or other sources may cause damage to the air conditioner.

Consult the dealer if the air conditioner submerges owing to a natural disaster, such as a flood or typhoon.
Do not operate the air conditioner in that case, or otherwise a malfunction, electric shock, or fire may result.

Do not start or stop operating the air conditioner with the power supply breaker turned ON or OFF.
Otherwise, fire or water leakage may result. Furthermore, the fan will rotate abruptly if power failure compensation is enabled, which may result in injury.

Do not use the product in the atmosphere contaminated with oil vapor, such as cooking oil or machine oil vapor.
Oil vapor may cause crack damage, electric shocks, or fire.

Do not use the product in places with excessive oily smoke, such as cooking rooms, or in places with flammable gas, corrosive gas, or metal dust.
Using the product in such places may cause fire or product failures.

Do not use flammable materials (e.g., hairspray or insecticide) near the product.
Do not clean the product with organic solvents such as paint thinner.
The use of organic solvents may cause crack damage to the product, electric shocks, or fire.

Be sure to use a dedicated power supply for the air conditioner.
The use of any other power supply may cause heat generation, fire, or product failures.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use the air conditioner for purposes other than those for which it is intended.
Do not use the air conditioner for cooling precision instruments, food, plants, animals or works of art as this may adversely affect the performance, quality and/or longevity of the object concerned.

Do not remove the outdoor unit's fan guard.
The guard protects against the unit's high speed fan, which may cause injury.

Do not place objects that are susceptible to moisture directly beneath the indoor or outdoor units.
Under certain conditions, condensation on the main unit or refrigerant pipes, air filter dirt or drain blockage may cause dripping, resulting in fouling or failure of the object concerned.

To avoid oxygen depletion, ensure that the room is adequately ventilated if equipment such as a burner is used together with the air conditioner.

3P107422-1S

After prolonged use, check the unit stand and its mounts for damage.
If left in a damaged condition, the unit may fall and cause injury.

Do not place flammable sprays or operate spray containers near the unit as this may result in fire.

Before cleaning, be sure to stop unit operation, turn the breaker off or remove the power cord.
Otherwise, an electric shock and injury may result.

To avoid electric shocks, do not operate with wet hands.

Do not place appliances that produce naked flames in places exposed to the air flow from the unit as this may impair combustion of the burner.

Do not place heaters directly below the unit, as resulting heat can cause deformation.

Do not allow a child to mount on the outdoor unit or avoid placing any object on it.
Falling or tumbling may result in injury.

Do not block air inlets nor outlets.
Impaired air flow may result in insufficient performance or trouble.

Be sure that children, plants or animals are not exposed directly to airflow from the unit, as adverse effects may ensue.

Do not wash the air conditioner or the remote controller with water, as this may result in electric shocks or fire.

Do not place water containers (flower vases, etc.) on the unit, as this may result in electric shocks or fire.

Do not install the air conditioner at any place where there is a danger of flammable gas leakage.
In the event of a gas leakage, build-up of gas near the air conditioner may result in fire hazards.

Do not put flammable containers, such as spray cans, within 1 m from the blow-off mouth.
The containers may explode because the warm air output of the indoor or outdoor unit will affect them.

The batteries must be removed from the appliance before it is scrapped and they are disposed of safely.

Arrange the drain to ensure complete drainage.
If proper drainage from the outdoor drain pipe does not occur during air conditioner operation, there could be a blockage due to dirt and debris build-up in the pipe. This may result in a water leakage from the indoor unit. Under these circumstances, stop air conditioner operation and consult your dealer for assistance.

The appliance is not intended for use by unattended young children or infirm persons.
Impairment of bodily functions and harm to health may result.

Children should be supervised to ensure that they do not play with the unit or its remote controller.
Accidental operation by a child may result in impairment of bodily functions and harm health.

Do not let children play on or around the outdoor unit.
If they touch the unit carelessly, injury may be caused.

Consult your dealer regarding cleaning the inside of the air conditioner.
Improper cleaning may cause breakage of plastic parts, water leakage and other damage as well as electric shocks.

To avoid injury, do not touch the air inlet or aluminum fins of the unit.

Do not place objects in direct proximity of the outdoor unit and do not let leaves and other debris accumulate around the unit.
Leaves are a hotbed for small animals which can enter the unit. Once in the unit, such animals can cause malfunctions, smoke or fire when making contact with electrical parts.

Never touch the internal parts of the controller.
Do not remove the front panel. Touching certain internal parts will cause electric shocks and damage to the unit. Please consult your dealer about checking and adjustment of internal parts.

Do not leave the remote controller wherever there is a risk of wetting.
If water gets into the remote controller there is a risk of electrical leakage and damage to electronic components.

When using the wireless remote controller, do not put a strong light beam or install an inverter fluorescent lamp near the receiving section on the main unit.
A malfunction may occur.

Watch your steps at the time of air filter cleaning or inspection.
High-place work is required, to which utmost attention must be paid.
If the scaffold is unstable, you may fall or topple down, thus causing injury.

2. NAMES AND FUNCTIONS OF THE OPERATING SECTION (Fig. 1, 2)

1	**DISPLAY " ▲ " (SIGNAL TRANSMISSION)**
	This lights up when a signal is being transmitted.
2	**DISPLAY " " " " " " " " " " " " (OPERATION MODE)**
	This display shows the current OPERATION MODE. For cooling only type, " " (Auto) and " " (Heating) are not installed.
3	**DISPLAY " " (SET TEMPERATURE)**
	This display shows the set temperature.
4	**DISPLAY " " (PROGRAMMED TIME)**
	This display shows PROGRAMMED TIME of the system start or stop.
5	**DISPLAY " " (AIR FLOW FLAP)**
	Refer to Note 1.
6	**DISPLAY " " " " (FAN SPEED)**
	The display shows the set fan speed.
7	**DISPLAY " TEST " (INSPECTION/ TEST OPERATION)**
	When the INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON is pressed, the display shows the system mode is in.
8	**ON/OFF BUTTON**
	Press the button and the system will start. Press the button again and the system will stop.
9	**FAN SPEED CONTROL BUTTON**
	Press this button to select the fan speed, HIGH or LOW, of your choice.
10	**TEMPERATURE SETTING BUTTON**
	Use this button for SETTING TEMPERATURE (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller closed.)
11	**PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON**
	Use this button for programming "START and/or STOP" time. (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller opened.)
12	**TIMER MODE START/STOP BUTTON**
	Refer to Note 2.
13	**TIMER RESERVE/CANCEL BUTTON**
	Refer to Note 3.
14	**AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST BUTTON**
	Refer to Note 4.
15	**OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON**
	Press this button to select OPERATION MODE.
16	**FILTER SIGN RESET BUTTON**
	Refer to the section of MAINTENANCE in the operation manual attached to the indoor unit.
17	**INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON**
	This button is used only by qualified service persons for maintenance purposes.
18	**EMERGENCY OPERATION SWITCH**
	This switch is readily used if the remote controller does not work.

3P107422-1S

Note 1 : page 155, Note 2 : page 156, Note 3 : page 156, Note 4 : page 155

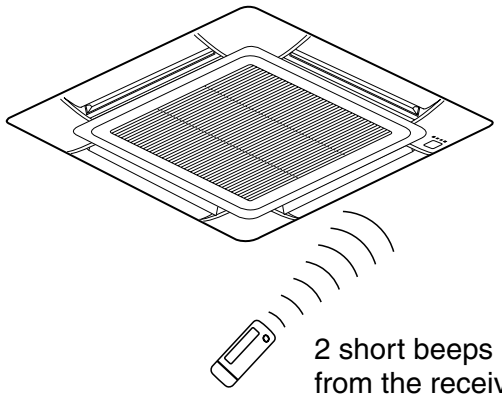
19	**RECEIVER**
	This receives the signals from the remote controller.
20	**OPERATING INDICATOR LAMP (Red)**
	This lamp stays lit while the air conditioner runs. It flashes when the unit is in trouble.
21	**TIMER INDICATOR LAMP (Green)**
	This lamp stays lit while the timer is set.
22	**AIR FILTER CLEANING TIME INDICATOR LAMP (Red)**
	Lights up when it is time to clean the air filter.
23	**DEFROST LAMP (Orange)**
	Lights up when the defrosting operation has started. (For cooling only type this lamp does not turn on.)
24	**FAN/AIR CONDITIONING SELECTOR SWITCH**
	Set the switch to " " (FAN) for FAN and " " (A/C) for HEAT or COOL.
25	**COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER SWITCH**
	Set the switch to " " (COOL) for COOL and " " (HEAT) for HEAT.

NOTES

- For the sake of explanation, all indications are shown on the display in Figure 1 contrary to actual running situations.
- Fig. 1-2 shows the remote controller with the front cover opened.
- If the air filter cleaning time indicator lamp lights up, clean the air filter as explained in the operation manual provided with the indoor unit.
  After cleaning and reinstalling the air filter, press the filter sign reset button on the remote controller. The air filter cleaning time indicator lamp on the receiver will go out.
- The Defrost Lamp will flash when the power is turned on. This is not a malfunction.

3. HANDLING FOR WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER

Precautions in handling remote controller
Direct the transmitting part of the remote controller to the receiving part of the air conditioner.
If something blocks the transmitting and receiving path of the indoor unit and the remote controller as curtains, it will not operate.



2 short beeps from the receiver indicates that the transmission is properly done.

Transmitting distance is approximately 7 m.

Do not drop or get it wet.
It may be damaged.

Never press the button of the remote controller with a hard, pointed object.
The remote controller may be damaged.

Installation site

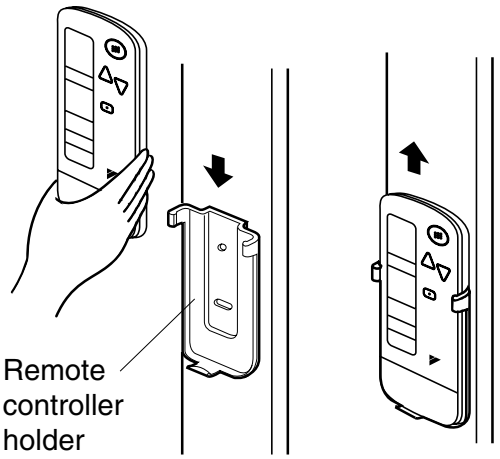
- It is possible that signals will not be received in rooms that have electronic fluorescent lighting. Please consult with the salesman before buying new fluorescent lights.
- If the remote controller operated some other electrical apparatus, move that machine away or consult your dealer.

3P107422-1S

Placing the remote controller in the remote controller holder

Install the remote controller holder to a wall or a pillar with the attached screw. (Make sure it transmits)

Placing the remote controller	Removing the remote controller
Slide from above	Pull it upward

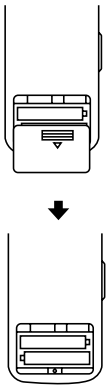


How to put the dry batteries

(1) Remove the back cover of the remote controller to the direction pointed by the arrow mark.

(2) Put the batteries
Use two dry cell batteries (AAA.LR03 (alkaline)). Put dry batteries correctly to fit their (+) and (–).

(3) Close the cover



— When to change batteries —

Under normal use, batteries last about a year. However, change them whenever the indoor unit doesn't respond or responds slowly to commands, or if the display becomes dark.

[CAUTIONS]

- Replace all batteries at the same time, do not use new and old batteries intermixed.
- In case the remote controller is not used for a long time take out all batteries in order to prevent liquid leak of the battery.

IN THE CASE OF CENTRALIZED CONTROL SYSTEM

If the indoor unit is under centralized control, it is necessary to switch the remote controller's setting.
In this case, contact your DAIKIN dealer.

4. OPERATION RANGE

SKYAIR System

If the temperature or the humidity is beyond the following conditions, safety devices may work and the air conditioner may not operate, or sometimes, water may drop from the indoor unit.

COOLING [°C]

OUTDOOR UNIT	INDOOR			OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE	
	TEMPERATURE		HUMIDITY		
RS50 · 60 RKS25 · 35 · 50 · 60 RXS25 · 35 · 50 · 60	DB	21 to 32	80% or below	DB	– 10 to 46
	WB	14 to 23			
3MKS50 4MKS58 · 75 · 90 3MXS52 4MXS68 · 80	DB	21 to 32	80% or below	DB	– 10 to 46
	WB	14 to 23			

HEATING [°C]

OUTDOOR UNIT	INDOOR TEMPERATURE		OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE	
RXS25 · 35 · 50 · 60	DB	10 to 30	DB	– 14 to 24
			WB	– 15 to 18
3MXS52 4MXS68 · 80	DB	10 to 30	DB	– 14 to 21
			WB	– 15 to 15.5

DB: Dry bulb temperature
WB: Wet bulb temperature

3P107422-1S

The setting temperature range of the remote controller is 16°C to 32°C.

VRV System
See the operation manual provided with the air conditioner.

5. OPERATION PROCEDURE

Refer to figure 1 (Note 1)

- Operating procedure varies with heat pump type and cooling only type. Contact your Daikin dealer to confirm your system type.
- To protect the unit, turn on the main power switch 6 hours before operation.
- If the main power supply is turned off during operation, operation will restart automatically after the power turns back on again.

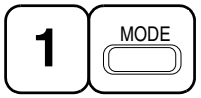
COOLING, HEATING, AUTOMATIC, FAN, AND PROGRAM DRY OPERATION

Operate in the following order.

- AUTOMATIC OPERATION can be selected only by Heat pump split system.
- For cooling only type, “COOLING”, and “FAN” and “DRY”operation are able to select.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITHOUT COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH⟩⟩

Refer to figure 1-1, 2 (Note 2)



OPERATION MODE SELECTOR

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select the OPERATION MODE of your choice as follows.

- COOLING OPERATION ..... “ ❄ ”
- HEATING OPERATION ..... “ ☀ ”
- AUTOMATIC OPERATION..... “ A ”
  - In this operation mode, COOL/HEAT changeover is automatically conducted.
- FAN OPERATION ..... “ ”
- DRY OPERATION..... “ ”
  - The function of this program is to decrease the humidity in your room with the minimum temperature decrease.
  - Micro computer automatically determines TEMPERATURE and FAN SPEED.
  - This system does not go into operation if the room temperature is below 16°C.

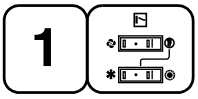
ON/OFF

Press ON/OFF button
OPERATION lamp lights up or goes off and the system starts or stops OPERATION.

NOTE
- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes.
  Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITH COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH⟩⟩

Refer to figure 1-1,3 (Note 3)

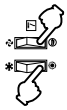


OPERATION MODE SELECTOR

(1) Select OPERATION MODE with the COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH as follows.

- COOLING OPERATION ..... “ ”

- HEATING OPERATION ..... “ ”



3P107422-1S

Note 1 : page 146, Note 2 : page 146, Note 3 : page 146

■ FAN OPERATION..... “  ”

■ DRY OPERATION ..... “  ”

- See “FOR SYSTEMS WITHOUT COOL/ HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH” for details on dry operation.

(2) Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select “ ”
(This operation is only available during dry operation.)

ON/OFF

Press ON/OFF button

OPERATION lamp lights up or goes off and the system starts or stops OPERATION.

NOTE

- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes.
  Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

[EXPLANATION OF HEATING OPERATION]
DEFROST OPERATION

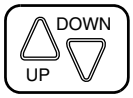
- As the frost on the coil of an outdoor unit increase, heating effect decreases and the system goes into DEFROST OPERATION.
- The fan operation stops and the DEFROST lamp of the indoor unit goes on. After 6 to 8 minutes (maximum 10 minutes) of DEFROST OPERATION, the system returns to HEATING OPERATION.

Heating capacity & Outdoor air temperature

- Heating capacity drops as outdoor air temperature lowers. If feeling cold, use another heater at the same time as this air conditioner.
- Hot air is circulated to warm the room. It will take some time from when the air conditioner is first started until the entire room becomes warm. The internal fan automatically turns at low speed until the air conditioner reaches a certain temperature on the inside. In this situation, all you can do is wait.
- If hot air accumulates on the ceiling and feet are left feeling cold, it is recommended to use a circulator. For details, contact the place of purchase.

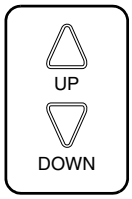
ADJUSTMENT

For programming TEMPERATURE, FAN SPEED and AIR FLOW DIRECTION, follow the procedure shown below.



TEMPERATURE SETTING

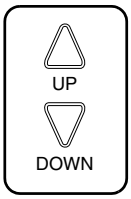
Press TEMPERATURE SETTING button and program the setting temperature.



Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature rises 1°C.

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature lowers 1°C.

In case of automatic operation



Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to “H” side.

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to “L” side.

[°C]

	H	•	M	•	L
Setting temperature	25	23	22	21	19

- The setting is impossible for fan operation.

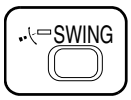
NOTE

- The setting temperature range of the remote controller is 16°C to 32°C.

3P107422-1S

FAN SPEED CONTROL

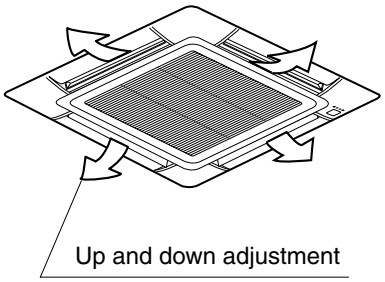
Press FAN SPEED CONTROL button.
High or Low fan speed can be selected.
The micro computer may sometimes control the fan speed in order to protect the unit.



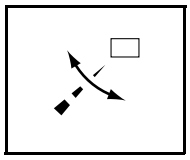
AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST

UP AND DOWN DIRECTION

- The movable limit of the flap is changeable. Contact your Daikin dealer for details.



Press the AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction as shown below.



DISPLAY appears and the air flow direction continuously varies. (Automatic swing setting)

Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction of your choice.

DISPLAY vanishes the air flow direction is fixed (Fixed air flow direction setting).

MOVEMENT OF THE AIR FLOW FLAP

For the following conditions, micro computer controls the air flow direction so it may be different from the display.

Operation mode	Heating
Operation conditions	• When starting operation • When room temperature is higher than the set temperature • At defrost operation (The flaps blow horizontally to avoid blowing cold air directly on the occupants of the room.)

NOTES

- If you try cooling or programmed drying, while the flaps are facing downward, air flow direction may change unexpectedly. There is nothing wrong with the equipment. This serves to prevent dew formed on parts in the air discharge outlet from dripping.
- Operation mode includes automatic operation.

PROGRAM TIMER OPERATION

Operate in the following order.

- The timer is operated in the following two ways.
  Programming the stop time (◷ ▸ ○)
  .... The system stops
  operating after the set time has elapsed.
  Programming the start time (◷ ▸ |)
  .... The system starts
  operating after the set time has elapsed.
- The timer can be programmed a maximum of 72 hours.
- The start and the stop time can be simultaneously programmed.

3P107422-1S

1 TIMER MODE START/ STOP

Press the TIMER MODE START/STOP button several times and select the mode on the display.

The display flashes.

For setting the timer stop .... "◷ ▸ ◯"

For setting the timer start .... "◷ ▸ |"

2 PROGRAMMING TIME

Press the PROGRAMMING TIME button and set the time for stopping or starting the system.

UP

When this button is pressed, the time advances by 1 hour.

DOWN

When this button is pressed, the time goes backward by 1 hour.

3 TIMER RESERVE

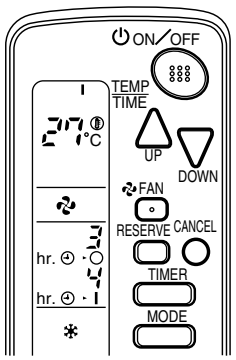
Press the TIMER RESERVE button.

The timer setting procedure ends.
The display or changes from flashing light to a constant light.

4 TIMER CANCEL

Press the TIMER OFF button to cancel programming. The display vanishes.

For example.



When the timer is programmed to stop the system after 3 hours and start the system after 4 hours, the system will stop after 3 hours and then 1 hour later the system will start.

NOTES

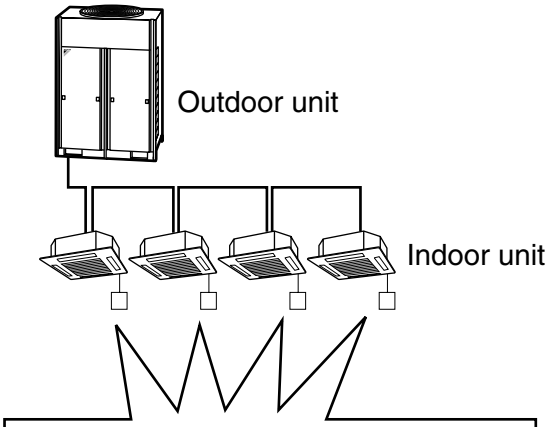
- When the timer is programmed to stop the system after 3 hours and start the system after 4 hours, the system will stop after 3 hours and then 1 hour later the system will start.
- After the timer is programmed, the display shows the remaining time.

HOW TO SET MASTER REMOTE CONTROLLER (For VRV system)

- When the system is installed as shown below, it is necessary to designate the master remote controller.

■ For Heat pump system

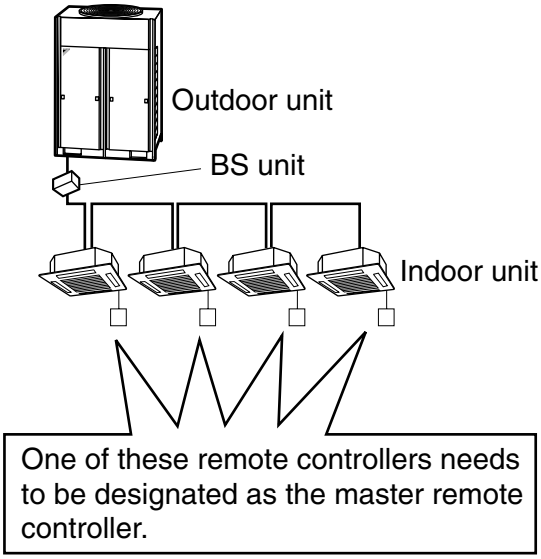
When one outdoor unit is connected with several indoor units.



3P107422-1S

■ **For Heat recovery system**

When one BS unit is connected with several indoor units.



- Only the master remote controller can select HEATING, COOLING or AUTOMATIC (only Heat recovery system) OPERATION.

When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “COOL”, you can switch over operation mode between “FAN”, “DRY” and “COOL”.

When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “HEAT”, you can switch over operation mode between “FAN” and “HEAT”.

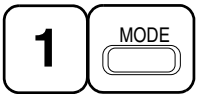
When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “FAN”, you cannot switch operation mode.

When attempting settings than that consented above, a “peep” is emitted as a warning.

Only with Heat recovery system, you can set the indoor unit to AUTOMATIC. Attempting to do so, a “peep” will be emitted as a warning.

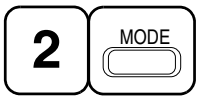
How to designate the master remote controller

Operate in the following order.



Continuously press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button for 4 seconds.

The displays showing “ ⏲ ” of all slave indoor unit connected to the same outdoor unit or BS unit flash.



Press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button to the indoor unit that you wish to designate as the master remote controller. Then designation is completed. This indoor unit is designated as the master remote controller and the display showing “ ⏲ ” vanishes.

- To change settings, repeat steps 1 and 2.

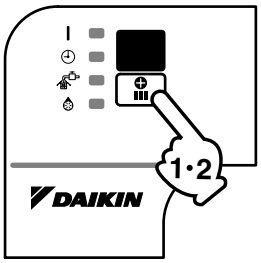
EMERGENCY OPERATION

When the remote controller does not work due to battery failure or the absence thereof, use this switch which is located beside the discharge grille on the main unit. When the remote controller does not work, but the battery low indicator on it is not lit, contact your dealer.

[START]

To press the emergency operation switch.

The machine runs in the previous mode. The system operates with the previously set air flow direction.



3P107422-1S

[STOP]

2 **Press the EMERGENCY OPERATION switch again.**

PRECAUTIONS FOR GROUP CONTROL SYSTEM OR TWO REMOTE CONTROLLER CONTROL SYSTEM

This system provides two other control systems beside individual control (one remote controller controls one indoor unit) system. Confirm the following if your unit is of the following control system type.

■ **Group control system**
One remote controller controls up to 16 indoor units.
All indoor units are equally set.

■ **Two remote controller control system**
Two remote controllers control one indoor unit. (In case of group control system, one group of indoor units)
The unit follows individual operation.

NOTES

- Cannot have two remote controller control system with only wireless remote controllers. (It will be a two remote controller control system having one wired and one wireless remote controllers.)
- Under two remote controller control system, wireless remote controller cannot control timer operation.
- Only the operating indicator lamp out of 3 other lamps on the indoor unit display functions.

NOTE

- Contact your Daikin dealer in case of changing the combination or setting of group control and two remote controller control systems.

6. NOT MALFUNCTION OF THE AIR CONDITIONER

The following symptoms do not indicate air conditioner malfunction

I. THE SYSTEM DOES NOT OPERATE

- **The system does not restart immediately after the ON/OFF button is pressed.**
  If the OPERATION lamp lights, the system is in normal condition. It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **The system does not restart immediately when TEMPERATURE SETTING button is returned to the former position after pushing the button.**
  It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **If the reception beep is rapidly repeated 3 times (It sounds only twice when operating normally.)**
  Control is set to the optional controller for centralized control.
- **If the defrost lamp on the indoor unit's display is lit when heating is started.**
  This indication is to warn against cold air being blown from the unit. There is nothing wrong with the equipment.

7. HOW TO DIAGNOSE TROUBLE SPOTS

I. EMERGENCY STOP

When the air conditioner stops in emergency, the run lamp on the indoor unit starts blinking. Take the following steps yourself to read the malfunction code that appears on the display. Contact your dealer with this code. It will help pinpoint the cause of the trouble, speeding up the repair.

3P107422-1S

1 TEST

Press the INSPECTION/TEST button to select the inspection mode " 0 ".

" 0 " appears on display and blinks. "UNIT" lights up.

2 UP DOWN

Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the unit number.

Press to change the unit number until the indoor unit beeps and perform the following operation according to the number of beeps.

Number of beeps

3 short beeps .... Perform all steps from 3 to 6.

1 short beep ..... Perform 3 and 6 steps.

1 long beep..... Normal state

3 MODE

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON

" 0 " on the left-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

4 UP DOWN

Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit beeps twice.

5 MODE

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON

" 0 " on the right-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

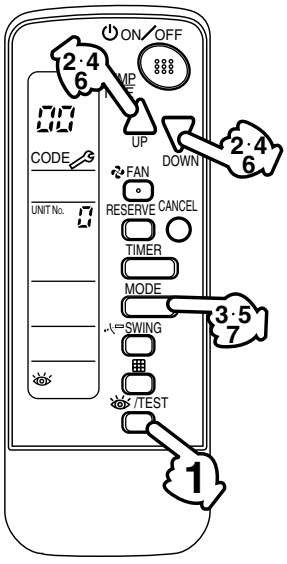
6 UP DOWN

Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit makes a long beep.
The malfunction code is fixed when the indoor unit makes a long beep.

7 MODE **Reset of the display**

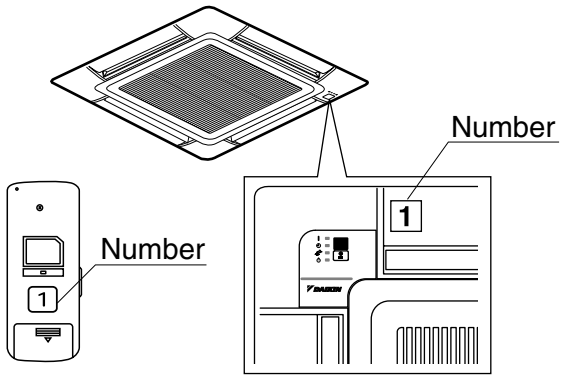
Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON to get the display back to the normal state.



3P107422-1S

II. IN CASE BESIDES EMERGENCY STOP

1. **The unit does not operate at all.**
   - Check if the receiver is exposed of sunlight or strong light. Keep receiver away from light.
   - Check if there are batteries in the remote controller. Place the batteries.
   - Check if the indoor unit number and wireless remote controller number are equal.



Operate the indoor unit with the remote controller of the same number.
Signal transmitted from a remote controller of a different number cannot be accepted. (If the number is not mentioned, it is considered as “1”)

2. **The system operates but it does not sufficiently cool or heat.**
   - If the set temperature is not proper.
   - If the FAN SPEED is set to LOW SPEED.
   - If the air flow angle is not proper.

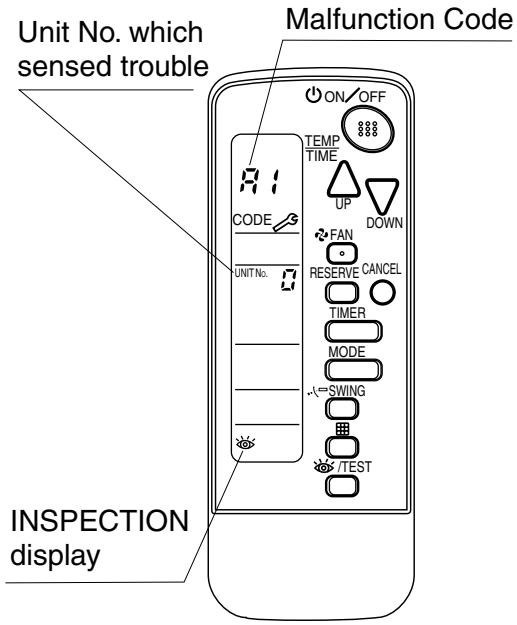
Contact the place of purchase in the following case.

⚠ WARNING

When you detect a burning odor, shut OFF power immediately and contact the place of purchase. Using the equipment in anything but proper working condition can result in equipment damage, electric shock and/or fire.

[Trouble]

The RUN lamp of the indoor unit is flashing and the unit does not work at all.



[Remedial action]

Check the malfunction code (A1 - UF) on the remote controller.
Notify and inform the model name and what the malfunction code indicates to your Daikin dealer.

3P107422-1S

1.8.2 Installation

1. SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS

Please read this "SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS" carefully before installing air conditioning equipment and be sure to install it correctly. After completing the installation, make sure at start up operation that the unit operates properly. Please instruct the customer how to operate the unit and keep maintenance.

Meaning of caution symbols

CAUTION ..... If the caution is not observed, it may cause injury or damage to equipment.

NOTE ..... These instructions will ensure proper use of the equipment.

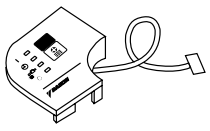
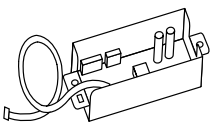
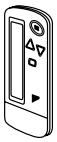
CAUTION

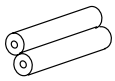
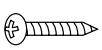
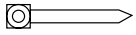
- Refer also to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit and the installation manual attached to the decoration panel.
- Confirm that following conditions are satisfied prior to installation.
  - Ensure that nothing interrupts the operation of the wireless remote controller. (Ensure that there is neither a source of light nor fluorescent lamp near the receiver. Also, ensure that the receiver is not exposed of direct sunlight.)
  - Ensure that the operation display lamp and other indicators are easy to see.
- The installation position of this kit is 1 position of the decoration panel. Therefore, confirm that its position is set so that the single form the wireless remote controller can be easily transmitted and its display can be easily seen.

2. BEFORE INSTALLATION

2-1 ACCESSORIES

Check if the following accessories are included with your unit.

Name	Receiver	Transmitter board	Tapping screw for transmitter board	Wireless remote controller	Remote controller holder
Quantity	1 set.	1 pc.	2 pcs.	1 pc.	1 pc.
Shape					

Name	Dry cell battery LR03 (AM4)	Unit No. label	Screw for installing remote controller holder	Operation manual	Clamp
Quantity	2 pcs.	1 pc.	2 pcs.	1 pc.	1 pc.
Shape					

2-2 NOTE TO THE INSTALLER

- Be sure to instruct the customer how to properly operate the system showing him/her the attached operation manual.

3P107423-1B

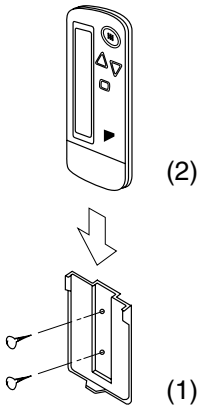
3. REMOTE CONTROLLER INSTALLATION

<Installing wireless remote controller>

- Do not throw the remote controller or impose large shocks. Also, do not store where it may be exposed to moisture or direct sunlight.
- When operating, point the transmitting part of the remote controller in the direction of the receiver.
- The direct transmitting distance of the remote controller is approximately 7 meters.
- The signal cannot be transmitted if something such as curtains blocks the receiver and the remote controller.

Installing to a wall or a pillar

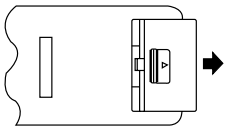
(1) Fix the remote controller holder with the screws.



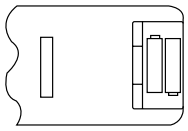
(2) Slide the remote controller into the remote controller holder from the top.

- **How to insert the batteries**

1. Open the back cover of the remote controller by sliding it in the direction of the arrow.



2. Insert the attached dry cell batteries. Properly insert, set the batteries by matching the (+) and (–) polarity marks as indicated. Then close the cover as before.

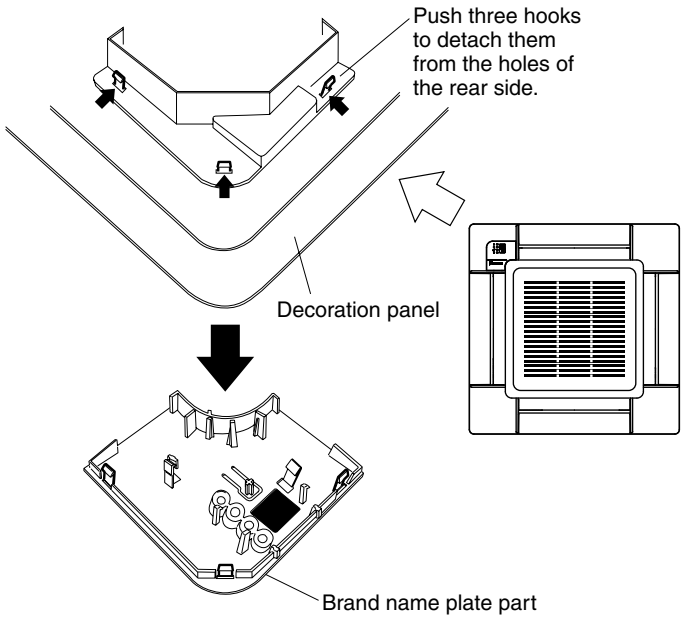


3P107423-1B

4. RECEIVER INSTALLATION

(1) Preparations before installation

1. Detach the brand name plate part of the decoration corner panel piece, before attaching the decoration panel. This part is not needed hereafter.
2. Next, remove the suction grille and the air filter according to the instructions in the installation manual attached to the decoration panel.
3. Remove the control box lid according to the instructions in the installation manual attached to the indoor unit. (Be sure to turn off power, before removing the control box lid.)



(2) Determination of address and MAIN/ SUB remote controller.

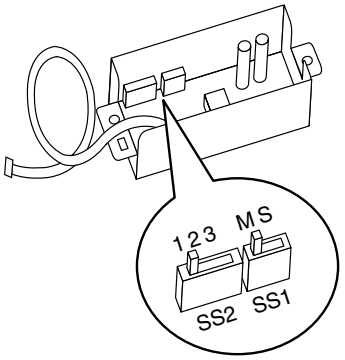
If setting multiple wireless remote controllers to operate in one room, perform address setting for the receiver and the wireless remote controller.
If setting multiple wired remote controllers in one room, change the MAIN/SUB switch of the receiver.

SETTING PROCEDURE

1. Setting the receiver

Set the wireless address switch (SS2) on the transmitter board according to the table below.

Unit No.	No. 1	No. 2	No. 3
Wireless address switch (SS2)			



When using both a wired and a wireless remote controller for 1 indoor unit, the wired controller should be set to MAIN. Therefore, set the MAIN/ SUB switch (SS1) of the transmitter board to SUB.

	MAIN	SUB
MAIN/SUB switch (SS1)		

3P107423-1B

2. Setting the address of wireless remote controller (It is factory set to " 1 ")

Setting from the remote controller

1. Hold down the [⊞] button and the [/TEST] button for at least 4 seconds to get the Field Set mode. (Indicated in the display area in the figure at right.)

2. Press the [FAN] button and select a multiple setting (A/b). Each time the button is pressed the display switches between "A" and "b".

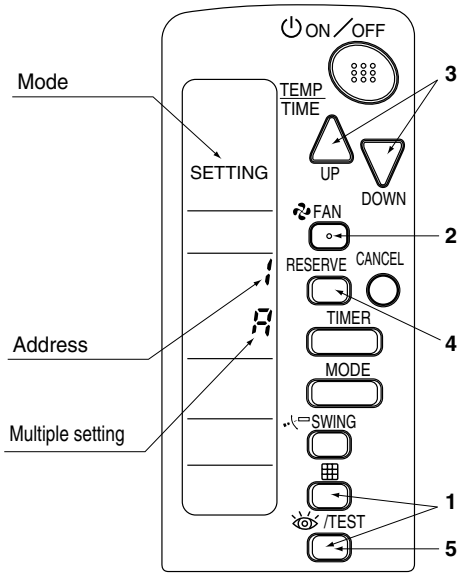
3. Press the " △ UP " button and " ▽ DOWN " button to set the address.

1 → 2 → 3 → 4 → 5 → 6

Address can be set from 1 to 6, but set it to 1 ~ 3 and to same address as the receiver. (The receiver does not work with address 4 ~ 6.)

4. Press the [RESERVE] button to enter the setting.

5. Hold down the [/TEST] button for at least 1 second to quit the Field Set mode and return to the normal display.



Multiple settings A/b

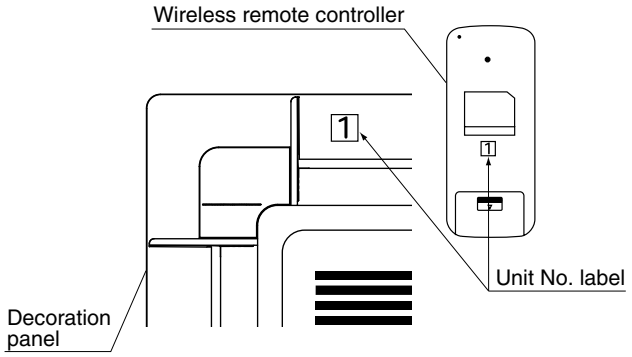
When the indoor unit is being operating by outside control (central remote controller, etc.), it sometimes does not respond to ON/OFF and temperature setting commands from this remote controller. Check what setting the customer wants and make the multiple setting as shown below.

Remote controller		Movement when the operation is controlled by the other air conditioners and equipment
Multiple setting	Remote controller display	
A: Standard	All items displayed.	When operation changeover, temperature setting or the like is carried out from the remote controller, the indoor unit rejects the instruction. (Signal receiving sound "peeh" or "pick-pick-pick") As a result, a discrepancy between the operation state of the indoor unit and the indication of the remote controller display occurs.
b: Multi System	Operations remain displayed shortly after execution.	Since the indication of the remote controller is turned off, no discrepancy such as mentioned above occurs.

3. Stick the Unit No. label on the air outlet of the decoration panel and the back of the wireless remote controller.

[PRECAUTIONS]

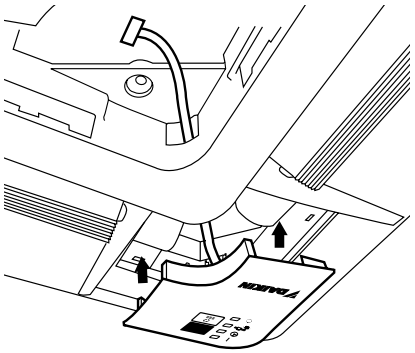
Set the Unit No. of the receiver and the wireless remote controller to be equal. If the settings differ, the signal from the remote controller cannot be transmitted.



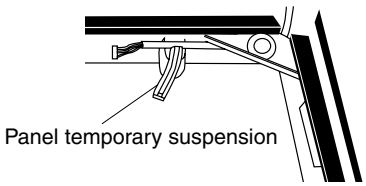
3P107423-1B

(3) Receiver installation

1. As shown at right, pass the harness from the receiver through the wiring hole of the decoration panel. Then, attach the receiver to the decoration panel.

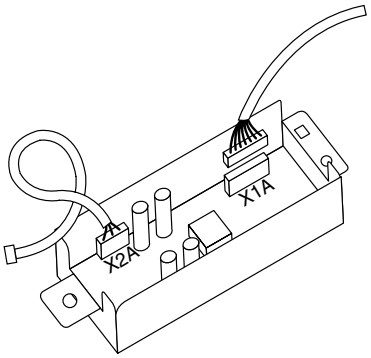


2. Hook the harness from the receiver on the upper part of the panel temporary suspension of the decoration panel.
Be sure to push the harness to the groove.

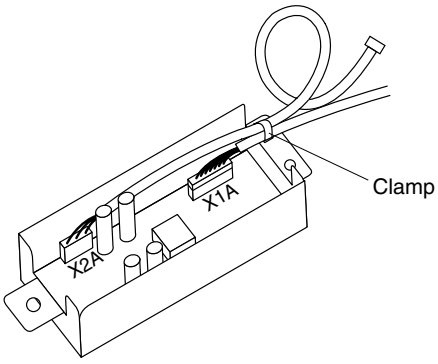


3. Attach the decoration panel to the indoor unit.
(Refer to the installation manual attached to the decoration panel.)

4. Connect the harness from the receiver to the connector X1A on the transmitter board.

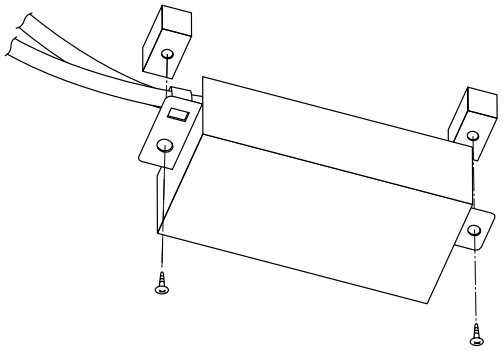


After connecting, use the attached clamp to fix the two harnesses to the transmitter board box.

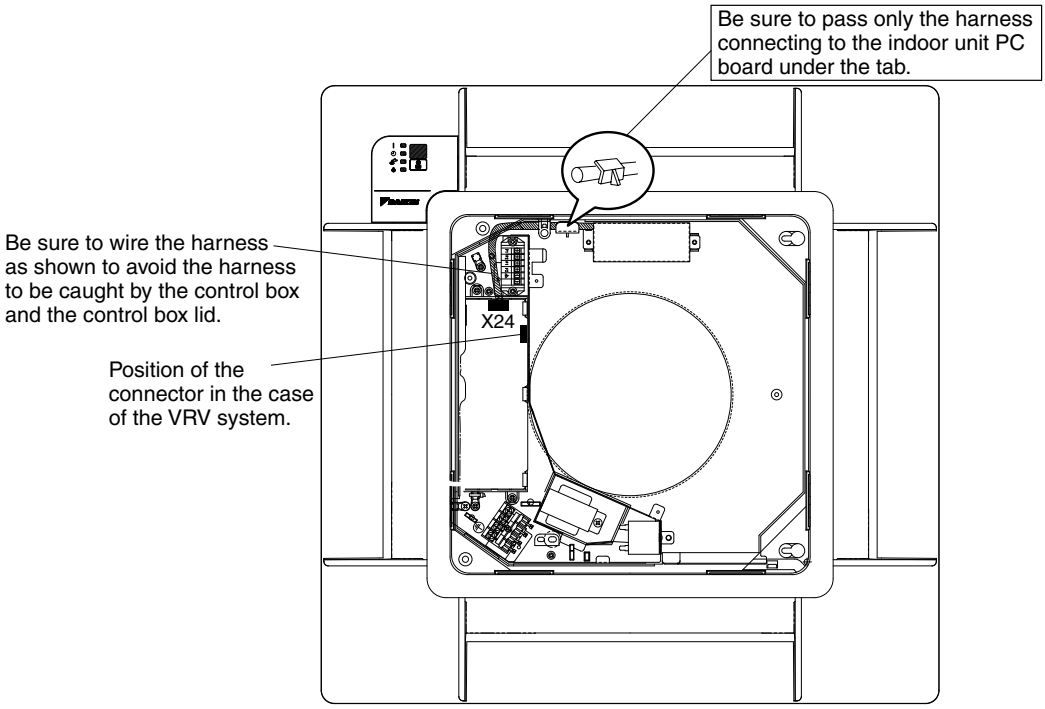


3P107423-1B

5. Use two tapping screws to attach the transmitter board to the indoor unit, as shown in the figure.



6. Connect the harness from the transmitter board to the connector X24 on the indoor unit PC board.

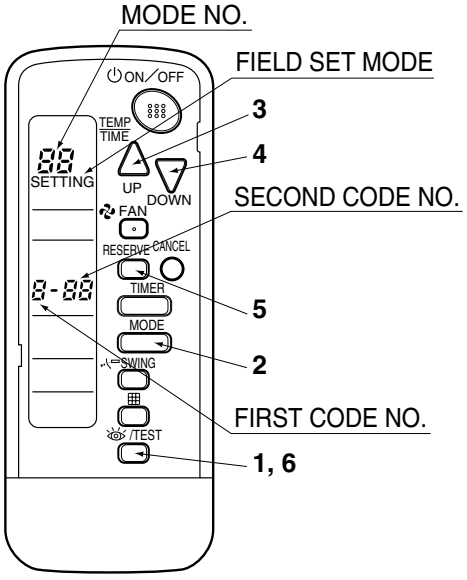


5. FIELD SETTING

If optional accessories are mounted on the indoor unit, the indoor unit setting may have to be changed. Refer to the instruction manual (optional hand book) for each optional accessory.

Procedure

1. When in the normal mode, press the [/TEST] button for a minimum of four seconds, and the FIELD SET MODE is entered.
2. Select the desired MODE NO. with the [MODE] button.
3. Push the " ▲ UP " button and select the FIRST CODE NO.
4. Push the " ▼ DOWN " button and select the SECOND CODE NO.
5. Push the [RESERVE] button and the present settings are SET.
6. Push the [/TEST] button to return to the NORMAL MODE.



3P107423-1B

(Example)
If the time to clean air filter is set to “Filter Contamination-Heavy”, set Mode No. to “10”, FIRST CODE NO. to “0”, and SECOND CODE NO. to “02”.

MODE NO.	FIRST CODE NO.	DESCRIPTION OF SETTING		SECOND CODE NO. NOTE)				
				01		02		03
10	0	Filter Contamination-Heavy/Light (Setting for spacing time of display time to clean air filter) (Setting for when filter contamination is heavy, and spacing time of display time to clean air filter is to be halved)	Long-life type	light	approx. 2,500 hours	heavy	approx. 1,250 hours	-
	3	Spacing time of display time to clean air filter count (Setting for when the filter sign is not to be displayed)		Display		Do not display		-
12 (VRV system)	1	ON/OFF input from outside (Set to enable starting/stopping from remote.)		Forced OFF input		ON/OFF		-
	2	Thermostat differential changeover (Set when using remote controller thermostat sensor.)		1˚C		0.5˚C		-
13	1	Selection of Air Flow Direction (Setting for when a sealing member of air discharge outlet kit has been installed)		F		T		W
	4	Air Flow Direction Range Setting		Upper		Normal		Lower

NOTE
- The SECOND CODE NO. is factory set to “01”. However, for the following cases it is set to “02”.
  - Air Flow Direction Range Setting

Do not use any settings not listed in the table.
For group control with a wireless remote controller, initial settings for all the indoor units of the group are equal. (For group control, refer to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit for group control.)

3P107423-1B

6. TEST OPERATION

- Perform test operation according to the instructions in the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.
- After refrigerant piping, drain piping, and electric wiring, operate according to the table to protect the unit.

[PRECAUTIONS]

1. Refer to malfunction code of installation manual attached to the indoor unit, if it does not operate.
2. Refer to the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit for individual operation system types.

Order	Operation
(1)	Open gas side stop valve.
(2)	Open liquid side stop valve.
(3)	Electrify for 6 hours.
(4)	Set to cooling with the remote controller and push [ON/OFF] button to start operation.
(5)	Push [/TEST] button twice and operate in TEST OPERATION mode for 3 minutes.
(6)	Push [SWING] button and confirm its operation.
(7)	Push [/TEST] button and operate normally.
(8)	Confirm its function according to the operation manual.

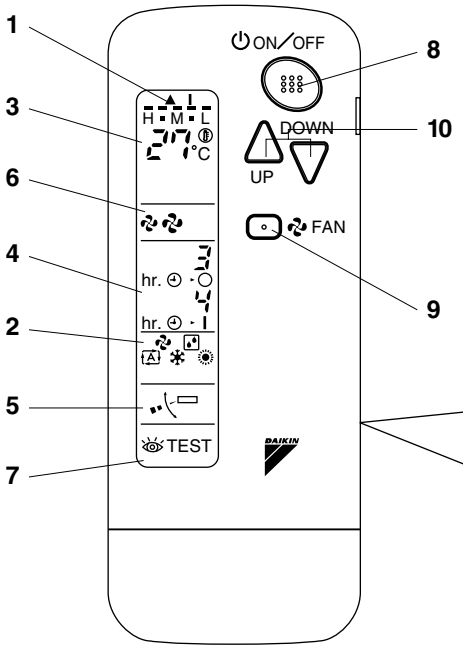
3P107423-1B

1.9 BRC7CA528W / BRC7CA529W (for FXUQ)

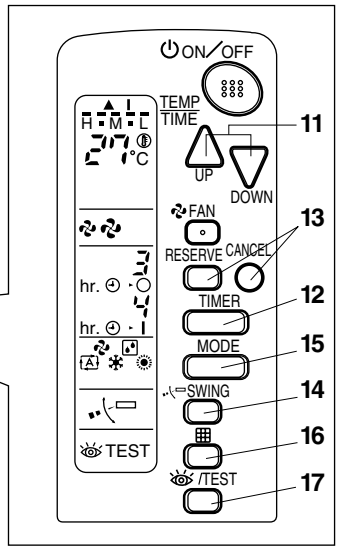
1.9.1 Operation

1

1-1

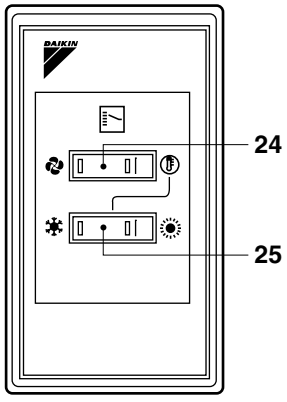


1-2

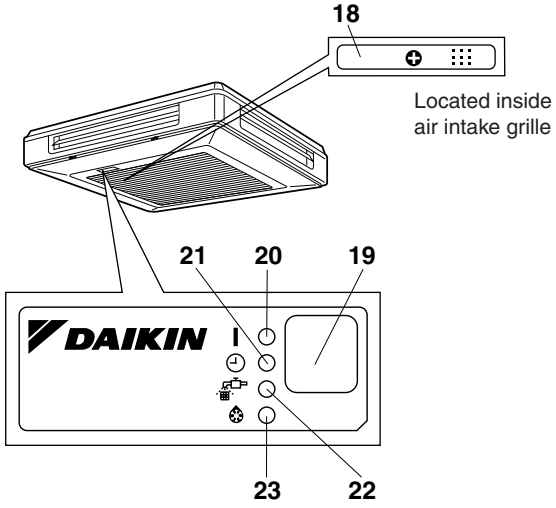


1-3

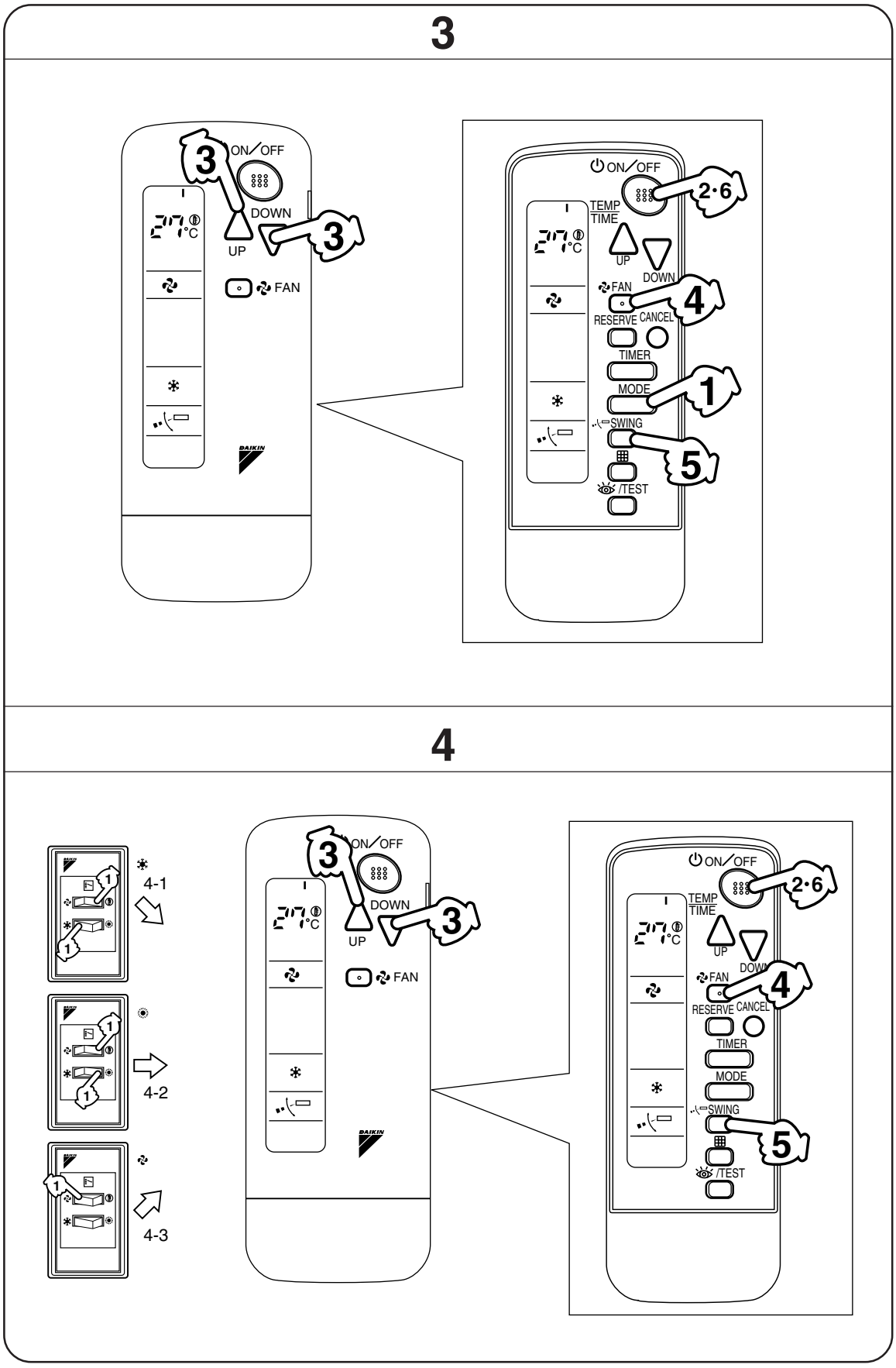
COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH



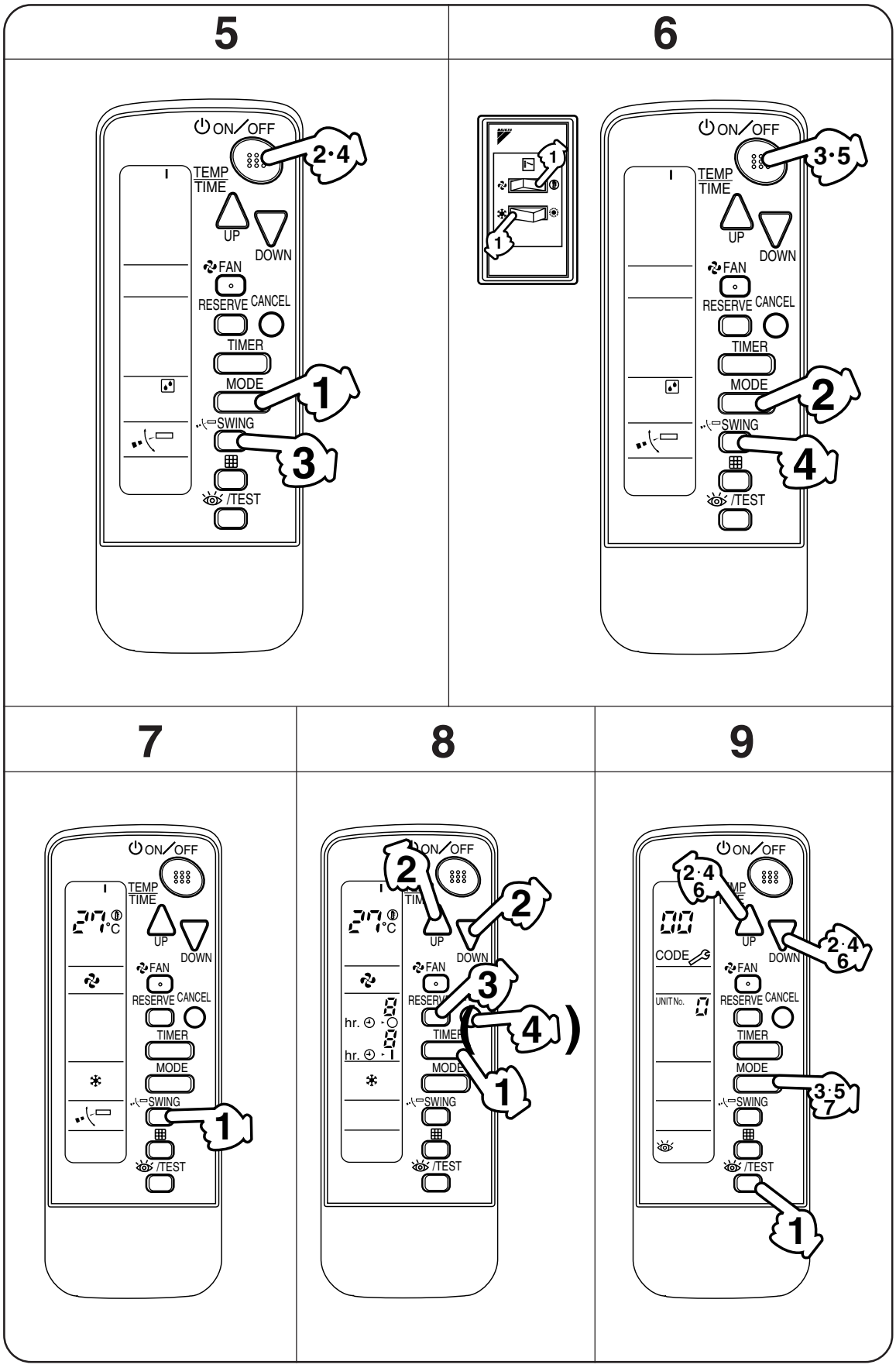
2



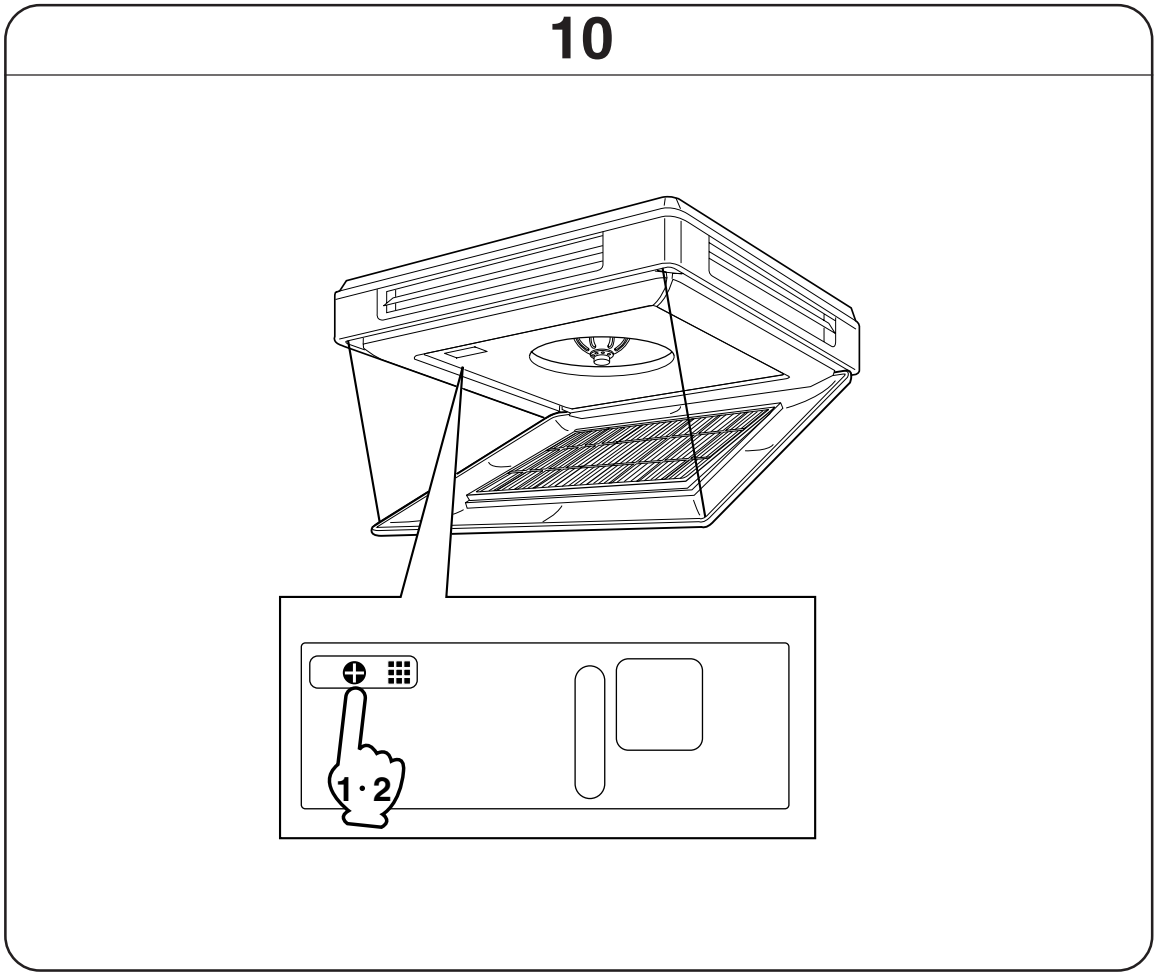
C: 3P107422-7S



C: 3P107422-7S



C: 3P107422-7S



C: 3P107422-7S

2. NAMES AND FUNCTIONS OF THE OPERATING SECTION (Fig. 1, 2)

1	**DISPLAY " ▲ " (SIGNAL TRANSMISSION)**
	This lights up when a signal is being transmitted.
2	**DISPLAY " " " " " " " " " " " " (OPERATION MODE)**
	This display shows the current OPERATION MODE. For straight cooling type, " " (Auto) and " " (Heating) are not installed.
3	**DISPLAY " " (SET TEMPERATURE)**
	This display shows the set temperature.
4	**DISPLAY " " (PROGRAMMED TIME)**
	This display shows PROGRAMMED TIME of the system start or stop.
5	**DISPLAY " " (AIR FLOW FLAP)**
	Refer to Note 1.
6	**DISPLAY " " " " (FAN SPEED)**
	The display shows the set fan speed.
7	**DISPLAY " TEST " (INSPECTION/ TEST OPERATION)**
	When the INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON is pressed, the display shows the system mode is in.
8	**ON/OFF BUTTON**
	Press the button and the system will start. Press the button again and the system will stop.
9	**FAN SPEED CONTROL BUTTON**
	Press this button to select the fan speed, HIGH or LOW, of your choice.
10	**TEMPERATURE SETTING BUTTON**
	Use this button for SETTING TEMPERATURE (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller closed.)
11	**PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON**
	Use this button for programming "START and/or STOP" time. (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller opened.)
12	**TIMER MODE START/STOP BUTTON**
	Refer to Note 2.
13	**TIMER RESERVE/CANCEL BUTTON**
	Refer to Note 3.
14	**AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST BUTTON**
	Refer to Note 4.
15	**OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON**
	Press this button to select OPERATION MODE.
16	**FILTER SIGN RESET BUTTON**
	Refer to the section of MAINTENANCE in the operation manual attached to the indoor unit.
17	**INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON**
	This button is used only by qualified service persons for maintenance purposes.
18	**EMERGENCY OPERATION SWITCH (Located inside air intake grille)**
	This button can be used to start the unit when the remote controller does not work.
19	**RECEIVER**
	This receives the signals from the remote controller.
20	**OPERATING INDICATOR LAMP (Red)**
	This lamp stays lit while the air conditioner runs. It flashes when the unit is in trouble.
21	**TIMER INDICATOR LAMP (Green)**
	This lamp stays lit while the timer is set.
22	**AIR FILTER CLEANING TIME INDICATOR LAMP (Red)**
	Lights up when it is time to clean the air filter.
23	**DEFROST LAMP (Orange)**
	Lights up when the defrosting operation has started.

C: 3P107422-7S

Note 1 : page 178, Note 2 : page 179, Note 3 : page 179, Note 4 : page 178

24	**FAN/AIR CONDITIONING SELECTOR SWITCH**
	Set the switch to " " (FAN) for FAN and " " (A/C) for HEAT or COOL.
25	**COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER SWITCH**
	Set the switch to " " (COOL) for COOL and " " (HEAT) for HEAT.

NOTES

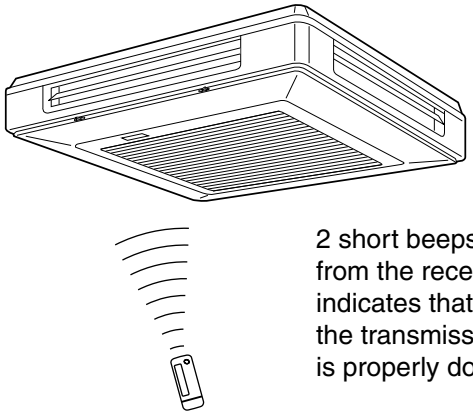
- For the sake of explanation, all indications are shown on the display in Figure 1 contrary to actual running situations.
- Fig. 1-2 shows the remote controller with the front cover opened.
- Fig. 1-3 shows this remote controller can be used in conjunction with the one provided with the VRV system.
- If the air filter cleaning time indicator lamp lights up, clean the air filter as explained in the operation manual provided with the indoor unit.
  After cleaning and reinstalling the air filter, press the filter sign reset button on the remote controller. The air filter cleaning time indicator lamp on the receiver will go out.

3. HANDLING FOR WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER

Precautions in handling remote controller

Direct the transmitting part of the remote controller to the receiving part of the air conditioner.

If something blocks the transmitting and receiving path of the indoor unit and the remote controller as curtains, it will not operate.



Transmitting distance is approximately 7 m.

Do not drop or get it wet.

It may be damaged.

Never press the button of the remote controller with a hard, pointed object.

The remote controller may be damaged.

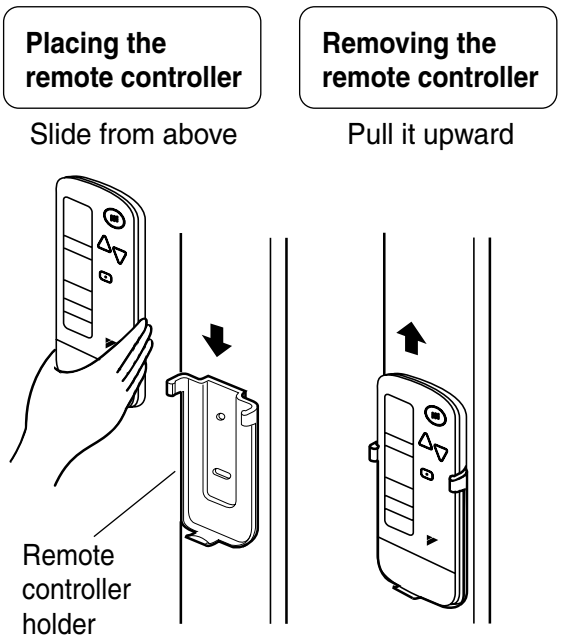
Installation site

- It is possible that signals will not be received in rooms that have electronic fluorescent lighting. Please consult with the salesman before buying new fluorescent lights.
- If the remote controller operated some other electrical apparatus, move that machine away or consult your dealer.

C: 3P107422-7S

Placing the remote controller in the remote controller holder

Install the remote controller holder to a wall or a pillar with the attached screw. (Make sure it transmits)

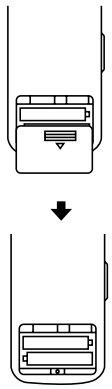


How to put the dry batteries

(1) Remove the back cover of the remote controller to the direction pointed by the arrow mark.

(2) Put the batteries
Use two dry cell batteries (AAA.LR03 (alkaline)). Put dry batteries correctly to fit their (+) and (–).

(3) Close the cover



— When to change batteries —

Under normal use, batteries last about a year. However, change them whenever the indoor unit doesn't respond or responds slowly to commands, or if the display becomes dark.

[CAUTIONS]

- Replace all batteries at the same time, do not use new and old batteries intermixed.
- In case the remote controller is not used for a long time take out all batteries in order to prevent liquid leak of the battery.

4. OPERATION RANGE

Split System

If the temperature or the humidity is beyond the following conditions, safety devices may work and the air conditioner may not operate, or sometimes, water may drop from the indoor unit.

COOLING [°C]

	OUT-DOOR UNIT	INDOOR			OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE	
		TEMPERATURE		HUMIDITY		
STRAIGHT COOLING TYPE	R71 • 100 • 125	DB	18 to 35	80% or below	DB	–15 to 46
		WB	12 to 25			
HEAT PUMP TYPE	RY71 • 100 • 125	DB	18 to 35	80% or below	DB	–5 to 46
		WB	12 to 25			

HEATING [°C]

	OUT-DOOR UNIT	INDOOR TEMPERATURE		OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE	
HEAT PUMP TYPE	RY71 • 100 • 125	DB	15 to 27	DB	– 9 to 21
				WB	– 10 to 15.5

DB: Dry bulb temperature
WB:Wet bulb temperature

The setting temperature range of the remote controller is 16°C ~ 32°C.

For VRV systems, see the instruction manual provided with the air conditioner.

C: 3P107422-7S

5. OPERATION PROCEDURE

- Operating procedure varies with heat pump type and straight cooling type. Contact your Daikin dealer to confirm your system types.
- To protect the unit, turn on the main power switch 6 hours before operation.
- If the main power supply is turned off during operation, operation will restart automatically after the power turns back on again.

COOLING, HEATING, AUTOMATIC AND FAN OPERATION (Fig. 3, 4)

- AUTOMATIC OPERATION can be selected only by RSEY series or sprit system.
- RSX series or sprit system cooling only type give selection of FAN or COOLING OPERATION only.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITHOUT COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 3)⟩⟩

1 Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select the OPERATION MODE of your choice as follows.

- COOLING OPERATION ..... " ❄ "
- HEATING OPERATION ..... " ☀ "
- AUTOMATIC OPERATION ..... " Ⓐ "
- FAN OPERATION ..... " 🌀 "

On AUTOMATIC OPERATION
In this operation mode, COOL/HEAT changeover is automatically conducted at a present indoor temperature.

2 Press ON/OFF button.

OPERATION lamp lights up and the system starts OPERATION.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITH COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 4)⟩⟩

1 Select OPERATION MODE with the COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH as follows.

- COOING OPERATION ..... Refer to fig. 4-1 (⏻ , ☀)
- HEATING OPERATION ..... Refer to fig. 4-2 (⏻ , ☀)
- FAN OPERATION ..... Refer to fig. 4-3 (🌀)

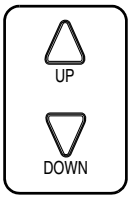
2 Press ON/OFF button.

OPERATION lamp lights up and the system starts OPERATION.

ADJUSTMENT

For programming TEMPERATURE and FAN SPEED and AIR FLOW DIRECTION, follow the procedure shown below.

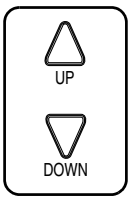
3 Press TEMPERATURE SETTING button and program the setting temperature.



Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature rises 1°C.

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature lowers 1°C.

In case of automatic operation



Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to "H" side.

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to "L" side.

[°C]

	H	•	M	•	L
Setting temperature	25	23	22	21	19

- The setting is impossible for fan operation.

C: 3P107422-7S

Press FAN SPEED CONTROL button.

High or Low fan speed can be selected.

Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION button.

Refer to "ADJUSTING THE AIR FLOW DIRECTION" (Note 1) for details.

STOPPING THE SYSTEM

Press ON/OFF button once again.

OPERATION lamp goes off, and the system stops OPERATION.

NOTE

- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes. Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

[EXPLANATION OF HEATING OPERATION]

DEFROST OPERATION

- As the frost on the coil of an outdoor unit increase, heating effect decreases and the system goes into DEFROST OPERATION.
- The fan operation stops and the DEFROST lamp of the indoor unit goes on. After 6 to 8 minutes (maximum 10 minutes) of DEFROST OPERATION, the system returns to HEATING OPERATION.

Heating capacity & Outdoor air temperature

- Heating capacity drops as outdoor air temperature lowers. If feeling cold, use another heater at the same time as this air conditioner.
- Hot air is circulated to warm the room. It will take some time from when the air conditioner is first started until the entire room becomes warm. The internal fan automatically turns at low speed until the air conditioner reaches a certain temperature on the inside. In this situation, all you can do is wait.
- If hot air accumulates on the ceiling and feet are left feeling cold, it is recommended to use a circulator. For details, contact the place of purchase.

PROGRAM DRY OPERATION (Fig. 5, 6)

- The function of this program is to decrease the humidity in your room with the minimum temperature decrease.
- Micro computer automatically determines TEMPERATURE and FAN SPEED.
- This system does not go into operation if the room temperature is below 16°C.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITHOUT COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 5)⟩⟩

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select "💧" (PROGRAM DRY OPERATION).

Press ON/OFF button.

OPERATION lamp lights up and system starts OPERATION.

ADJUSTMENT

Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button.

Refer to "ADJUSTING THE AIR FLOW DIRECTION" (Note 2) for details.

STOPPING THE SYSTEM

Press ON/OFF button again.

OPERATION lamp goes off and the system stops OPERATION.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITH COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 6)⟩⟩

Select COOLING OPERATION MODE with the COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH.

C: 3P107422-7S

Note 1 : page 178, Note 2 : page 178

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select PROGRAM DRY "".

Press ON/OFF button.

OPERATION lamp lights up and the system starts.

Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button.

Refer to "ADJUSTING THE AIR FLOW DIRECTION" (Note) for details.

STOPPING THE SYSTEM

Press ON/OFF button once again.

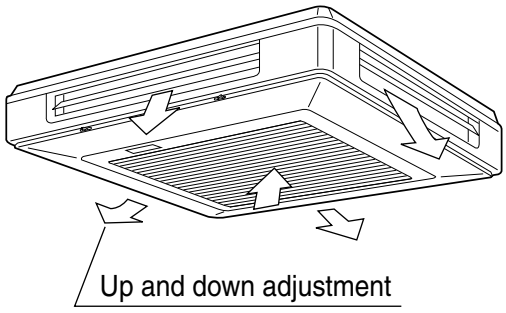
OPERATION lamp goes off, and the system stops OPERATION.

NOTE

- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes. Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

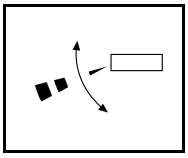
ADJUSTING THE AIR FLOW DIRECTION (Fig. 7)

Press the AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to adjust the air flow angle.



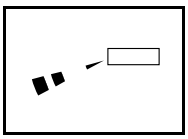
- The movable limit of the blade is changeable. Contact your Daikin dealer for details.

Press the AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction as shown below.



DISPLAY appears and the air flow direction continuously varies. (Automatic swing setting)

Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction of your choice.



DISPLAY vanishes and the desired air flow direction is fixed. (Fixed air flow setting)

MOVEMENT OF THE AIR FLOW FLAP

For the following conditions, micro computer controls the air flow direction so it may be different from the display.

Operation mode	Cooling	Heating
Operation conditions	• When room temperature is lower than the set temperature	• When room temperature is higher than the set temperature • At defrost operation
	• When operating continuously at horizontal air flow direction	

Operation mode includes automatic operation.

PROGRAM TIMER OPERATION (Fig. 8)

- The timer is operated in the following two ways.

  Programming the stop time (▸◯)
  ....The system stops operating after the set time has elapsed.

  Programming the start time (▸ |)
  .... The system starts operating after the set time has elapsed.

C: 3P107422-7S

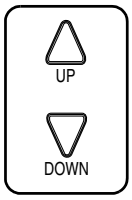
Note : page 178

- The timer can be programmed a maximum of 72 hours.
- The start and the stop time can be simultaneously programmed.

(1) Press the TIMER MODE START/STOP button several times and select the mode on the display.

The display flashes.
For setting the timer stop..... "🕘 ▸ ◯"
For setting the timer start ..... "🕘 ▸ |"

(2) Press the PROGRAMMING TIMER button and set the time for stopping or starting the system.



When this button is pressed, the time advances by 1 hour.

When this button is pressed, the time goes backward by 1 hour.

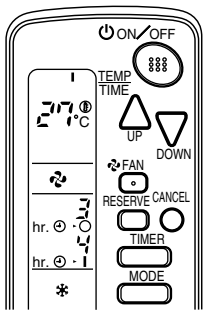
(3) Press RESERVE button.

The timer setting procedure ends.
The display changes from flashing light to a constant light.

NOTE

- When setting the timer Off and On at the same time, repeat the above procedure from (1) to (3) once again.

For example.



When the timer is programmed to stop the system after 3 hours and start the system after 4 hours, the system will stop after 3 hours and then 1 hour later the system will start.

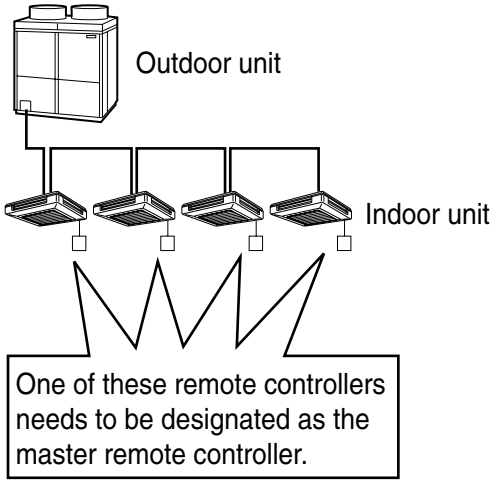
- After the timer is programmed, the display shows the remaining time.
- Press the TIMER OFF button to cancel programming. The display vanishes. ((4))

HOW TO SET MASTER REMOTE CONTROLLER (For RSXY and RSEY series)

- When the system is installed as shown below, it is necessary to designate the master remote controller.

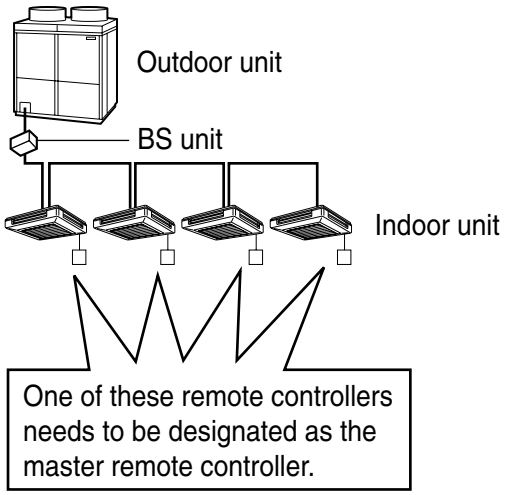
⟨⟨For RSXY series⟩⟩

When one outdoor unit is connected with several indoor units.



⟨⟨For RSEY series⟩⟩

When one BS unit is connected with several indoor units.



C: 3P107422-7S

- Only the master remote controller can select HEATING, COOLING or AUTOMATIC (only RSEY series) OPERATION.

When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “COOL”, you can switch over operation mode between “FAN”, “DRY” and “COOL”.
When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “HEAT”, you can switch over operation mode between “FAN” and “HEAT”.
When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “FAN”, you cannot switch operation mode.
When attempting settings than that consented above, a “peep” is emitted as a warning.
Only with RSEY series, you can set the indoor unit to AUTOMATIC. Attempting to do so, a “peep” will be emitted as a warning.

How to designate the master remote controller

(1) Continuously press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button for 4 seconds.

The displays showing “⏲” of all slave indoor unit connected to the same outdoor unit or BS unit flash.

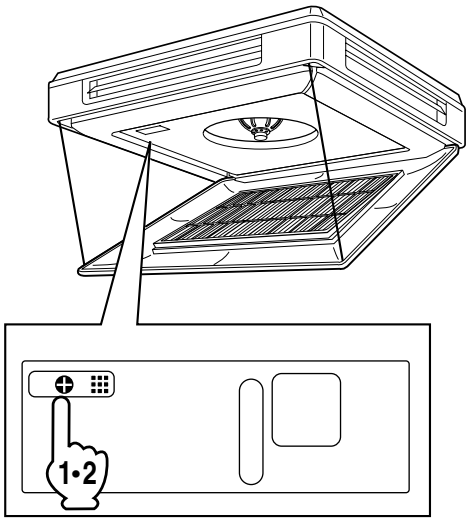
(2) Press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button to the indoor unit that you wish to designate as the master remote controller. Then designation is completed. This indoor unit is designated as the master remote controller and the display showing “⏲” vanishes.

- To change settings, repeat steps (1) and (2).

EMERGENCY OPERATION (Fig. 10)

When the remote controller does not work due to dead batteries or it is missing, use this switch which is located beside the discharge grille on the main unit. When the remote controller does not work, but the battery low indicator on it is not lit, contact your dealer.

Local start button (Located inside air intake grille)



The local start button can be seen in the upper left-hand corner when the air intake grille is open.

[START]

(1) Press the EMERGENCY OPERATION switch.

The machine runs in the previous mode. The system operates with the previously set air flow direction.

[STOP]

(2) Press the EMERGENCY OPERATION switch again.

C: 3P107422-7S

PRECAUTIONS FOR GROUP CONTROL SYSTEM OR TWO REMOTE CONTROLLER CONTROL SYSTEM

This system provides two other control systems beside individual control (one remote controller controls one indoor unit) system. Confirm the following if your unit is of the following control system type.

■ **Group control system**
One remote controller controls up to 16 indoor units.
All indoor units are equally set.

■ **Two remote controller control system**
Two remote controllers control one indoor unit. (In case of group control system, one group of indoor units)
The unit follows individual operation.

NOTES

- Cannot have two remote controller control system with only wireless remote controllers. (It will be a two remote controller control system having one wired and one wireless remote controllers.)
- Under two remote controller control system, wireless remote controller cannot control timer operation.
- Only the operating indicator lamp out of 3 other lamps on the indoor unit display functions.

NOTE

Contact your Daikin dealer in case of changing the combination or setting of group control and two remote controller control systems.

6. NOT MALFUNCTION OF THE AIR CONDITIONER

The following symptoms do not indicate air conditioner malfunction

I. THE SYSTEM DOES NOT OPERATE

- **The system does not restart immediately after the ON/OFF button is pressed.**
  If the OPERATION lamp lights, the system is in normal condition. It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **The system does not restart immediately when TEMPERATURE SETTING button is returned to the former position after pushing the button.**
  It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **If the reception beep is rapidly repeated 3 times (It sounds only twice when operating normally.)**
  Control is set to the optional controller for centralized control.
- **If the defrost lamp on the indoor unit's display is lit when heating is started.**
  This indication is to warn against cold air being blown from the unit. There is nothing wrong with the equipment.

C: 3P107422-7S

7. HOW TO DIAGNOSE TROUBLE SPOTS (Fig. 9)

I. EMERGENCY STOP

When the air conditioner stops in emergency, the run lamp on the indoor unit starts blinking. Take the following steps yourself to read the malfunction code that appears on the display. Contact your dealer with this code. It will help pinpoint the cause of the trouble, speeding up the repair.

(1) Press the INSPECTION/TEST button to select the inspection mode " 0 ".

" 0 " appears on display and blinks. "UNIT" lights up.

(2) Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the unit number.

Press to change the unit number until the indoor unit beeps and perform the following operation according to the number of beeps.

Number of beeps

3 short beeps .... Perform all steps from (3) to (6)
1 short beep ..... Perform (3) and (6) steps
1 long beep..... Normal state

(3) Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON.

" 0 " on the left-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

(4) Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit beeps twice.

(5) Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON.

" 0 " on the right-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

(6) Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit makes a long beep.

The malfunction code is fixed when the indoor unit makes a long beep.

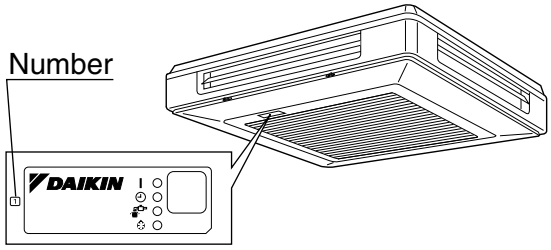
(7) Reset of the display.

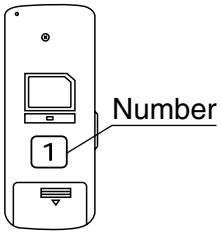
Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON to get the display back to the normal state.

II. IN CASE BESIDES EMERGENCY STOP

1. The unit does not operate at all.

- Check if the receiver is exposed of sunlight or strong light. Keep receiver away from light.
- Check if there are batteries in the remote controller. Place the batteries.
- Check if the indoor unit number and wireless remote controller number are equal.

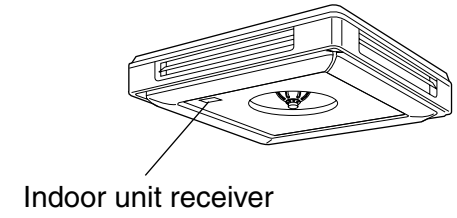


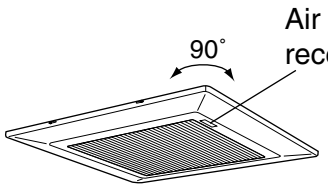


Operate the indoor unit with the remote controller of the same number.
Signal transmitted from a remote controller of a different number cannot be accepted. (If the number is not mentioned, it is considered as "1")

C: 3P107422-7S

The receiver on the air intake grille is not positioned under the receiver on the indoor unit itself.





Turn the air intake grille 90° and attach to the indoor unit.

2. **The system operates but it does not sufficiently cool or heat.**
   - If the set temperature is not proper.
   - If the FAN SPEED is set to LOW SPEED.
   - If the air flow angle is not proper.

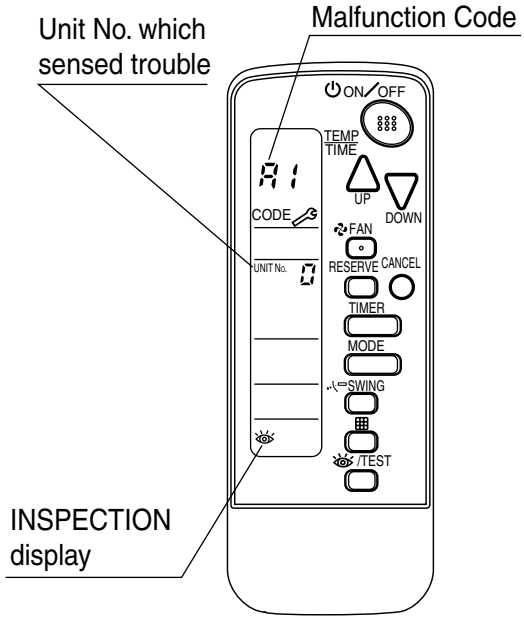
Contact the place of purchase in the following case.

⚠ WARNING

When you detect a burning odor, shut OFF power immediately and contact the place of purchase. Using the equipment in anything but proper working condition can result in equipment damage, electric shock and/or fire.

[Trouble]

The RUN lamp of the indoor unit is flashing and the unit does not work at all.



[Remedial action]

Check the malfunction code (A1 ~ UF) on the remote control and contact the place of purchase. (See Note)

Note : page 182

C: 3P107422-7S

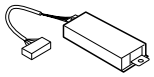
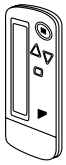
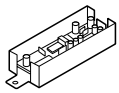
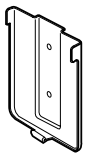
1.9.2 Installation

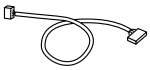
1. BEFORE INSTALLATION

- Install the wireless remote controller in the indoor unit before hanging the unit from the ceiling.
- When using the wireless remote controller, the air intake grille must be attached in a specific direction. Check which way the grille will open before selecting a location for the indoor unit.

1-1 ACCESSORIES

Check if the following accessories are included with your unit.

Name	Receiver	Wireless remote controller	Transmitter board	Remote controller holder	Faceplate for receiver
Quantity	1 set	1 pc.	1 pc.	1 pc.	1 pc.
Shape					

Name	Relay harness	Unit No. label	Drycell battery LR03 (AM4)	Screw for installing remote control holder	Tapping screw	Cable clamp	Operation manual
Quantity	1 pc.	1 pc.	2 pcs.	2 pcs.	4 pcs.	2 pcs.	1 pc.
Shape							

1-2 NOTE TO THE INSTALLER

- Be sure to instruct the customer how to properly operate the system showing him/her the attached operation manual.

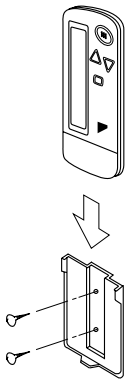
2. REMOTE CONTROLLER INSTALLATION

〈Installing wireless remote controller〉

- Do not throw the remote controller or impose large shocks. Also, do not store where it may be exposed to moisture or direct sunlight.
- When operating, point the transmitting part of the remote controller in the direction of the receiver.
- The direct transmitting distance of the remote controller is approximately 7 meters.
- The signal cannot be transmitted if something such as curtains blocks the receiver and the remote controller.

C: 3PA59585-21Z

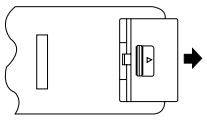
• Installing to a wall or a pillar
Slide the remote controller into the remote controller holder from the top.



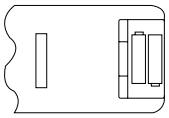
Fix the remote controller holder with the screws.

• How to insert the batteries

1. Open the back cover of the remote controller by sliding it in the direction of the arrow.



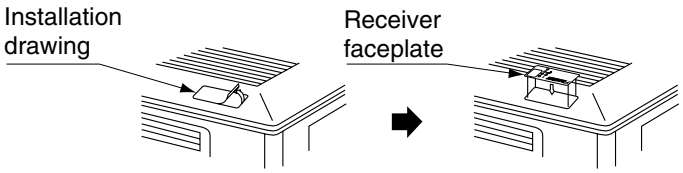
2. Insert the attached dry cell batteries. Properly insert, set the batteries by matching the (+) and (–) polarity marks as indicated. Then close the cover as before.



3. RECEIVER INSTALLATION

(1) Attaching the receiver faceplate.

- Remove the installation drawing from the indoor unit. The drawing is glued down and can be peeled off.
- Attach the included receiver faceplate so that it fits the receiver frame.



(2) Determination of address and MAIN/SUB remote controller.

If setting multiple wireless remote controllers to operate in one room, perform address setting for the receiver and the wireless remote controller.
If setting multiple wired remote controllers in one room, change the MAIN/SUB switch of the receiver.

C: 3PA59585-21Z

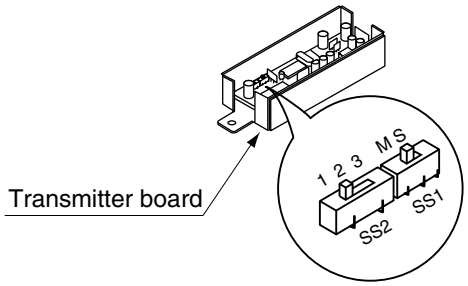
SETTING PROCEDURE

1. Setting the receiver

Through the small opening on the back of the receiver, set the wireless address switch (SS2) on the printed circuit board according to the table below.

Unit No.	No. 1	No. 2	No. 3
Wireless address switch (SS2)			

When using both a wired and a wireless remote controller for 1 indoor unit, the wired controller should be set to MAIN. Therefore, set the MAIN/SUB switch (SS1) of the receiver to SUB.



	MAIN	SUB
MAIN/SUB switch (SS1)		

2. Setting the address of wireless remote controller (It is factory set to "1")

〈Setting from the remote controller〉

1. Hold down the [⊞] button and the [/TEST] button for at least 4 seconds to get the Field Set mode. (Indicated in the display area in the figure at right.)

2. Press the [FAN] button and select a multiple setting (A/b). Each time the button is pressed the display switches between "A" and "b".

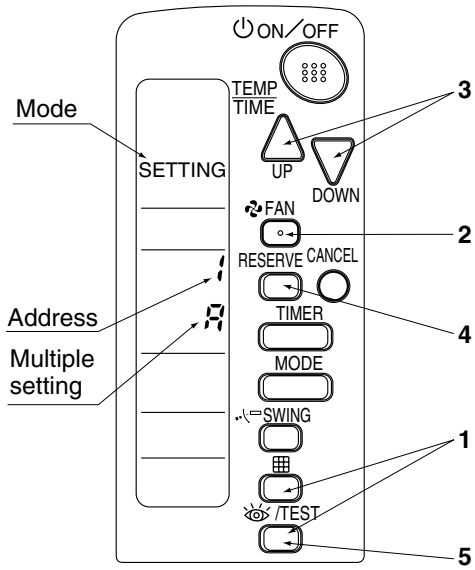
3. Press the " △ UP " button and " ▽ DOWN " button to set the address.

1 → 2 → 3 → 4 → 5 → 6

Address can be set from 1 to 6, but set it to 1 ~ 3 and to same address as the receiver. (The receiver does not work with address 4 ~ 6.)

4. Press the [RESERVE] button to enter the setting.

5. Hold down the [/TEST] button for at least 1 second to quit the Field Set mode and return to the normal display.



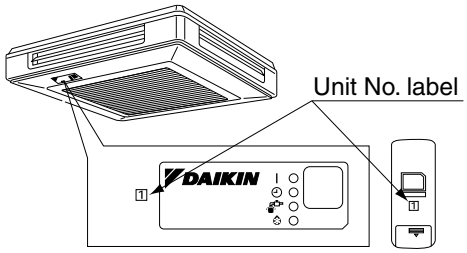
C: 3PA59585-21Z

Multiple settings A/b

When the indoor unit is being operating by outside control (central remote controller, etc.), it sometimes does not respond to ON/OFF and temperature setting commands from this remote controller. Check what setting the customer wants and make the multiple setting as shown below.

Remote controller		Indoor unit	
Multiple setting	Remote controller display	To control other air conditions and units	For other than on left
A: Standard	All items displayed.	Commands other than ON/OFF and temperature setting accepted. (1 LONG BEEP or 3 SHORT BEEPS emitted)	
b: Multi System	Operations remain displayed shortly after execution.	All commands accepted (2 SHORT BEEPS)	

3. Stick the Unit No. label to the indoor unit and the back of the wireless remote controller.

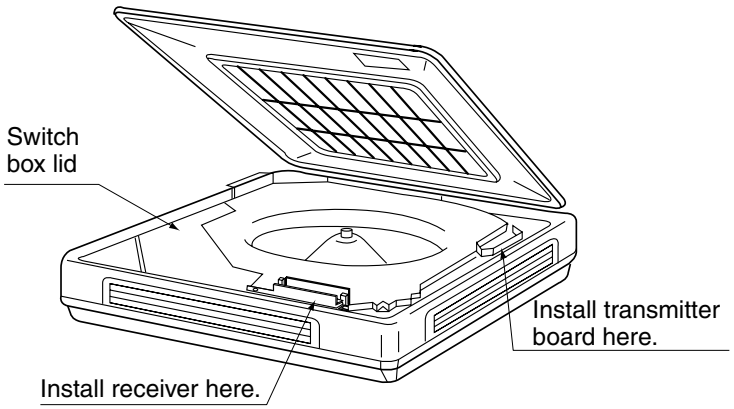


[PRECAUTIONS]
Set the Unit No. of the receiver and the wireless remote controller to be equal. If the settings differs, the signal from the remote controller cannot be transmitted.

(3) PC board installation.

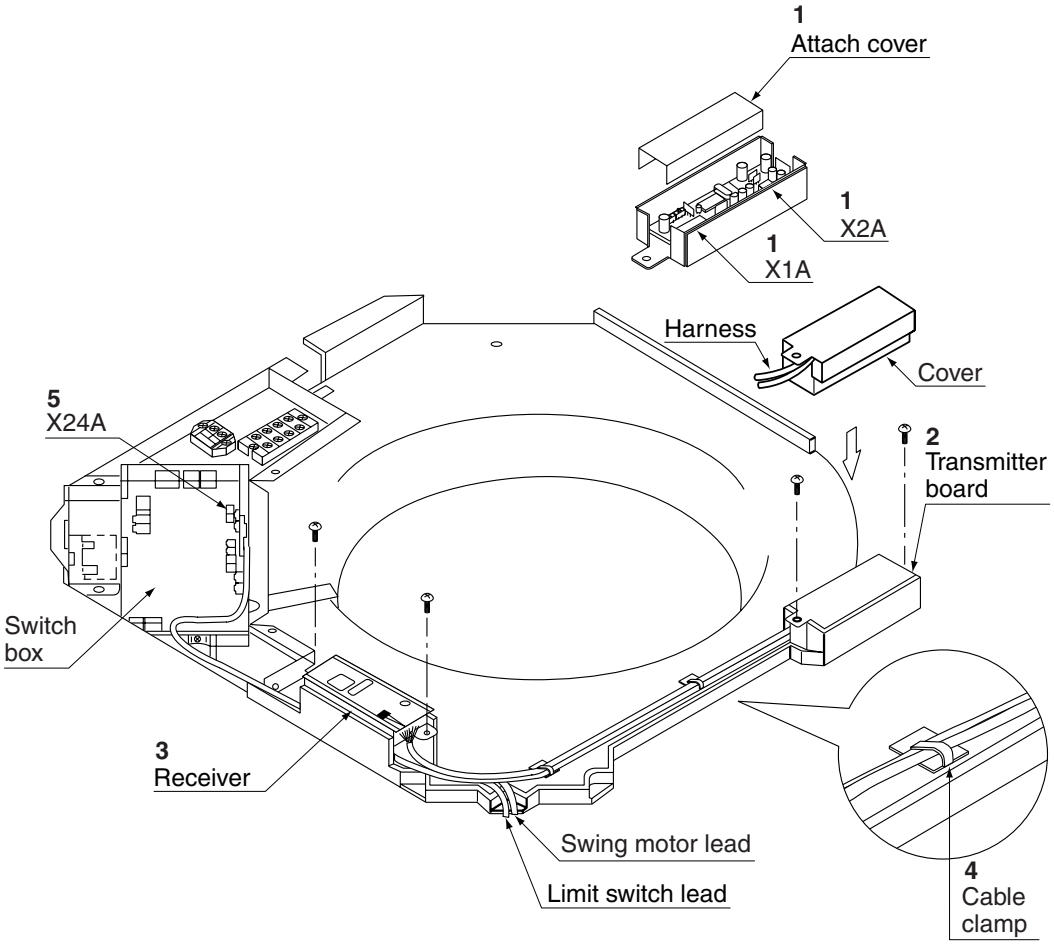
- Detach the air intake grille and switch box lid (screws × 2) as explained in the installation instructions of the indoor unit.
- Install the transmitter board and receiver in the locations indicated at right.

NOTE:
When using the wireless remote controller, the indoor unit must be opened/closed in the direction shown at right.



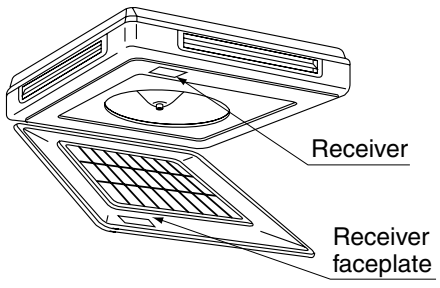
C: 3PA59585-21Z

1. Connect the relay harness from the receiver to connector X1A on the transmitter board and the relay harness included in this kit to connector X2A on the transmitter board. After making the connections, attach the cover as before.
2. Install the transmitter board in the indoor unit. (Screws × 2)
3. Install the receiver in the indoor unit. (Screws × 2)
   When doing so, feed the swing motor lead, limit switch lead and relay harness under the receiver.
4. Bundle the two harnesses together with the included cable clamps in the two locations shown at right.
5. Connect the relay harness from the transmitter board to connector X24A on the PC board in the switch box.
6. Attach the lid to the indoor unit's switch box.



(4) Attaching the air intake grille.

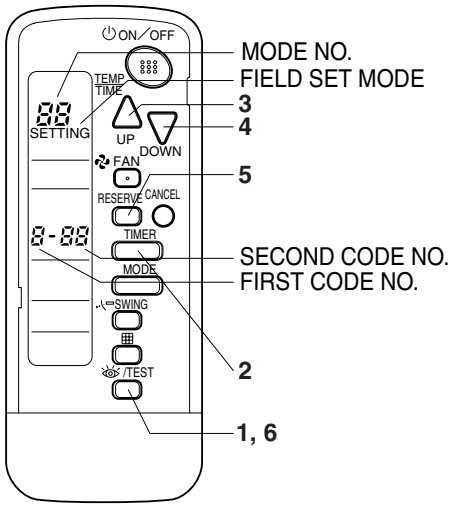
- Attach the air intake grille as explained in the installation instructions of the indoor unit. When doing so, make sure the receiver faceplate on the air intake grille lines up with the receiver on the indoor unit.



C: 3PA59585-21Z

4. FIELD SETTING

(If optional accessories are mounted on the indoor unit, the indoor unit setting may have to be changed. Refer to the instruction manual (optional hand book) for each optional accessory.)



Procedure

1. When in the normal mode, press the [/TEST] button for a minimum of four seconds, and the FIELD SET MODE is entered.
2. Select the desired MODE NO. with the [MODE] button.
3. Push the " △ UP " button and select the FIRST CODE NO.
4. Push the " ▽ DOWN " button and select the SECOND CODE NO.
5. Push the [RESERVE] button and the present settings are SET.
6. Push the [/TEST] button to return to the NORMAL MODE.

(Example)
If the time to clean air filter is set to "Filter Contamination-Heavy", set Mode No. to "10", FIRST CODE NO. to "0", and SECOND CODE NO. to "02".

MODE NO.	FIRST CODE NO.	DESCRIPTION OF SETTING	SECOND CODE NO. NOTE)				
			01		02		03
10	0	Filter Contamination-Heavy/Light (Setting for spacing time of display time to clean air filter) (Setting for when filter contamination is heavy, and spacing time of display time to clean air filter is to be halved) Long Life Filter	Light	Approx. 2,500 hrs.	Heavy	Approx. 1,250 hrs.	—
	3	Spacing time of display time to clean air filter count (Setting for when the filter sign is not to be displayed)	Display		Do not display		—
11 (Sprit system)	0	Setting the number of connected simultaneous operation system indoor units.	Pair		Twin		Triple
12 (VRV system)	1	ON/OFF input from outside (Set to enable starting/stopping from remote.)	Forced OFF input		ON/OFF		—
	2	Thermostat differential changeover (Set when using remote controller thermostat sensor.)	1˚C		0.5˚C		—
13	0	High ceiling setting (Setting for when installed in a ceiling higher than 2.7 m)	Normal		High Ceiling 1		High Ceiling 2
	1	Selection of Air Flow Direction (Setting for when a blocking pad kit has been installed)	F		T		W

Do not use any settings not listed in the table.
For group control with a wireless remote controller, initial settings for all the indoor units of the group are equal.
(For group control, refer to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit for group control.)

C: 3PA59585-21Z

5. TEST OPERATION

- Perform test operation according to the instructions in the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.
- After refrigerant piping, drain piping, and electric wiring, operate according to the table to protect the unit.

[PRECAUTIONS]

1. Refer to malfunction diagnosis label attached to the unit if it does not operate.
2. Refer to the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit for individual operation system types.

Order	Operation
(1)	Open gas side stop valve.
(2)	Open liquid side stop valve.
(3)	Electrify crank case heater for 6 hours. (Not necessary for cooling type units)
(4)	Set to cooling with the remote controller and push [ON/OFF] button to start operation.
(5)	Push [/TEST] button twice and operate in TEST OPERATION mode for 3 minutes.
(6)	Push [SWING] button and confirm its operation.
(7)	Push [/TEST] button and operate normally.
(8)	Confirm its function according to the operation manual.

C: 3PA59585-21Z

2. Remote Controller (Wired Type)

2.1 BRC1C62

2.1.1 Features

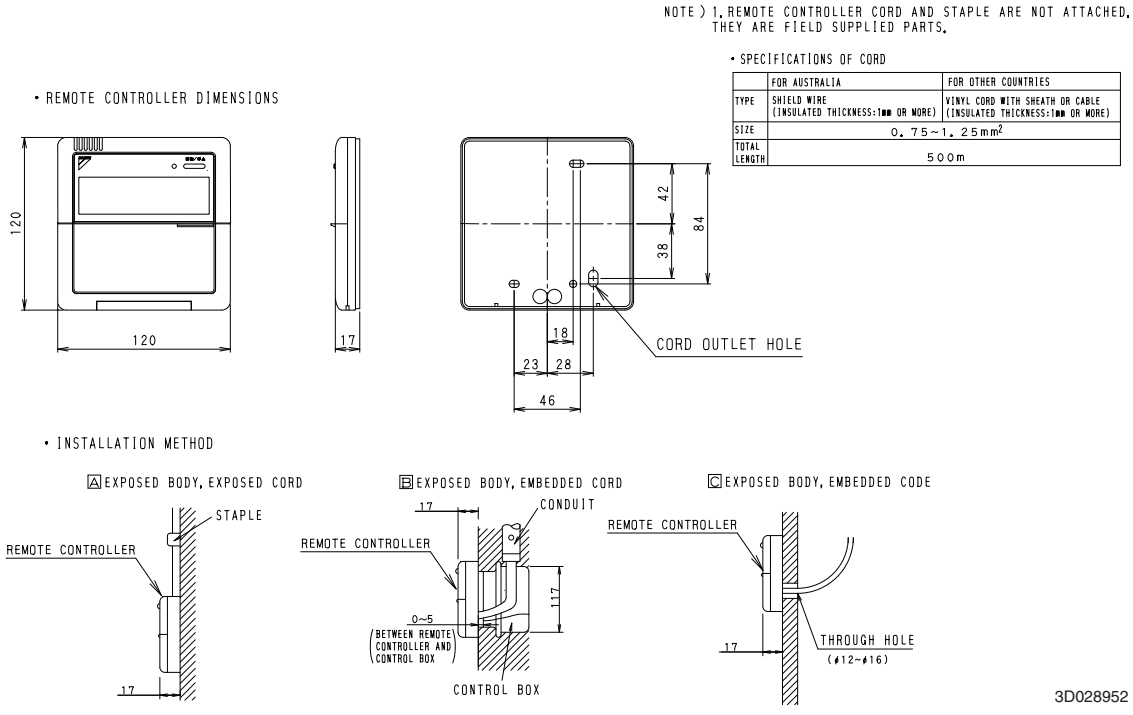
Operation Functions with HRV	BRC1C62
ON / OFF Operation with Air Conditioner	○
Independent operation in intermediate season	○
Ventilation mode change over (Auto / HRV / Normal)	○
Air flow change over (Auto / High / Low)	○
Setting of precooling / preheating	□
Setting of fresh-up operation	□
Filter sign display	○

□: Initial Setting Only (Field setting by well known service person)

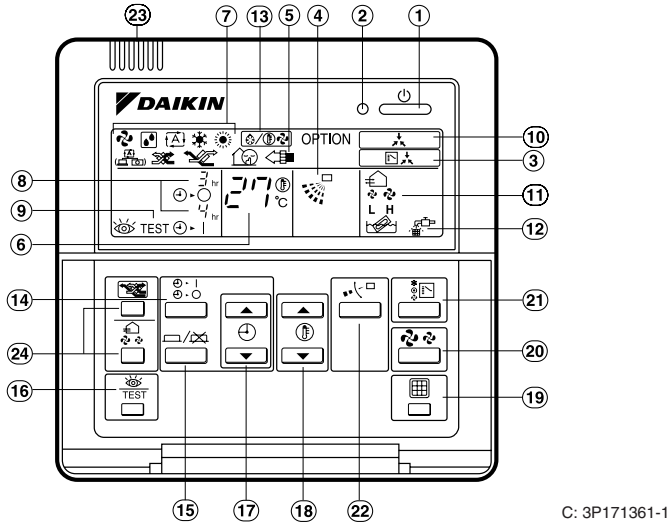
- Easier to read because LCD screen is larger.
- Digital display lets you set temperature in 1°C units.
- Lets you individually program by timer the respective times for operation start and stop within a maximum of 72 hours.
- Equipped with a thermostat sensor in the remote controller that makes possible more comfortable room temperature control.
- Enables you to select cool/heat/fan operation mode with the indoor remote controller of your choice without using the cool/heat selector.
- Constantly monitors malfunctions in the system for 80 items, and is equipped with a "self-diagnosis function" that lets you know by message immediately when a malfunction occurs.
- Lets you carry out various field settings by remote controller.
- Enables you to select the ventilation mode and the volume of the HRV.
- The rubber switch and the oil-resisting resin casing have been adopted for durability.

*When the auto-swing function is not available, the message, THIS FUNCTION IS NOT AVAILABLE is displayed when the wired direction adjustment button is pressed.

2.1.2 Dimensions



2.1.3 Name and Function



C: 3P171361-1

1. **On/off button**
   Press the button and the system will start. Press the button again and the system will stop.
2. **Operation lamp (red)**
   The lamp lights up during operation.
3. **Display " " (changeover under control)**
   It is impossible to changeover heat/cool with the remote controller which display this icon.
4. **Display " " (air flow flap)**
5. **Display " OPTION " (ventilation/air cleaning)**
   This display shows that the ventilation unit are in operation. (these are optional accessories)
6. **Display " " (set temperature)**
   This display shows the temperature you have set.
7. **Display " " " " " " " " " " (operation mode)**
   This display shows the current operation mode.
8. **Display " " (programmed time)**
   This display shows the programmed time of the system start or stop.
9. **Display " TEST " (inspection/test operation)**
   When the inspection/test operation button is pressed, the display shows the mode in which the system actually is.
10. **Display " " (under centralized control)**
    When this display shows, the system is under centralized control. (This is not a standard specification.)
11. **Display " " (fan speed)**
    This display shows the fan speed you have selected.
12. **Display " " (time to clean air filter)**
13. **Display " " (defrost/hot start)**
14. **Timer mode start/stop button**
15. **Timer on/off button**
16. **Inspection/test operation button**
    This button is only used by qualified service persons for maintenance purposes.
17. **Programming time button**
    Use this button for setting the programming start and/or stop time.
18. **Temperature setting button**
    Use this button for setting the desired temperature.
19. **Filter sign reset button**
    Refer to the operation manual of indoor unit.
20. **Fan speed control button**
    Press this button to select the fan speed of your preference.
21. **Operation mode selector button**
    Press this button to select the operation mode of your preference.
22. **Air flow direction adjust button**
23. **Thermistor**
    It sense the room temperature around the remote controller.
24. **These button are used when the ventilation unit are installed (These are optional accessories)**
    Refer to the operation manual of the ventilation unit.

NOTE

- In contradistinction to actual operating situations, the display on figure 1 shows all possible indications.
- Above figure shows the remote controller which is opened the cover.
- If that particular function is not available, pressing the button may display the words "NOT AVAILABLE" for a few seconds.
  When running multiple units simultaneously the "NOT AVAILABLE" message will only be appear if none of the indoor units is equipped with the function. If even one unit is equipped with the function, the display will not appear.

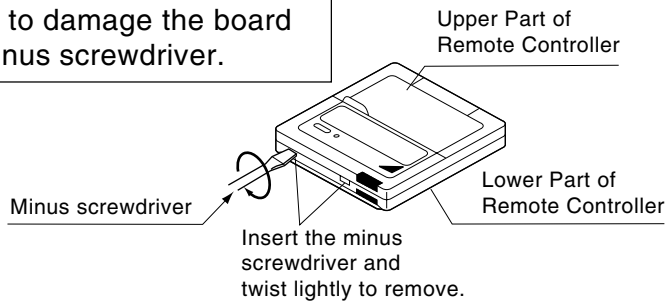
C: 3P171361-1

2.1.4 Installation

1.Remove the upper part of remote controller.

Insert minus screwdriver into the slots in the lower part of remote controller (2 places), and remove the upper part of remote controller.

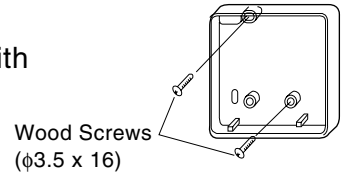
The PC board is mounted in the upper part of remote controller. Be careful not to damage the board with the minus screwdriver.

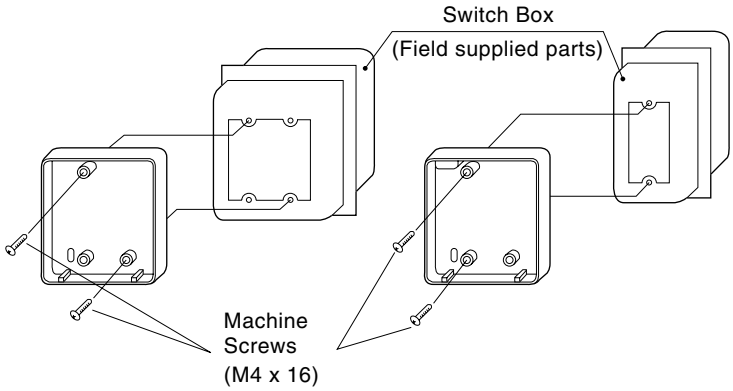


2.Fasten the remote controller.

① For exposed mounting, fasten with the included wood screws (2).

② For flush-mounting, fasten with the included machine screws (2).





For the field supplied switch box, use optional accessories KJB111AA or KJB211AA.

NOTE

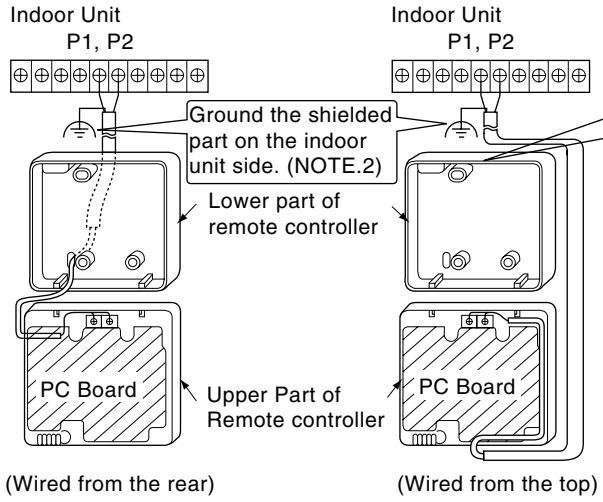
Choose the flattest place possible for the mounting surface. Be careful not to distort the shape of the lower part of remote controller by over-tightening the mounting screws.

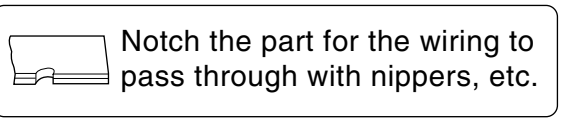
C: 2P068938-1

3.Wire the indoor unit.

Connect the terminals on top of the upper part of remote controller (P1, P2), and the terminals of the indoor unit (P1, P2). (P1 and P2 do not have polarity.)

NOTE
When wiring, run the wiring away the power supply wiring in order to avoid receiving electric noise (external noise).

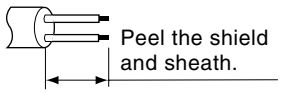




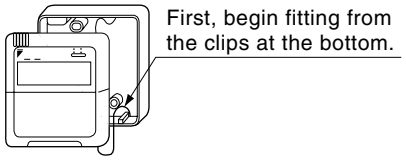
Wiring Specifications

Wiring Type	Sheathed vinyl code or cable (2 wire) (NOTE.2)
Size	0.75 – 1.25 mm²

NOTE) 1.Peel the shield and sheath for the part that is to pass through the inside of the remote controller case, as shown in the figure below.



2. Shield wire (2 wire) can be used for remote controller wiring, but it must confirm to EMC (Electromagnetic Compatibility) (European Directive).



4.Reattach the upper part of remote controller.

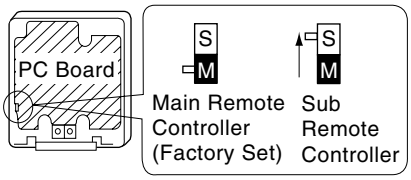
Be careful not to pinch the wiring when attaching.

NOTE

1.The switch box and wiring for connection are not included.
2.Do not directly touch the PC board with your hand.

If controlling one indoor unit with two remote controllers

Change the MAIN/SUB changeover switch setting as described below.



Set one remote controller to“main,” and the other to “sub.”

NOTE

- If controlling with one remote controller, be sure to set it to “main.”
- Set the remote controller before turning power supply on.

“ 88 ” is displayed for about one minute when the power supply is turned on, and the remote controller cannot be operated in some cases.

2P068938-1

2.1.5 Field Setting

If optional accessories are mounted on the indoor unit, the indoor unit setting may have to be changed. Refer to the instruction manual for each optional accessory.

Procedure

① When in the normal mode, press the " TEST " button for a minimum of four seconds, and the FIELD SET MODE is entered.

② Select the desired MODE NO. with the " " button.

③ During group control, when setting by each indoor unit (mode No. 20, 21 and 23 have been selected), push the " " button and select the INDOOR UNIT NO to be set. (This operation is unnecessary when setting by group.)

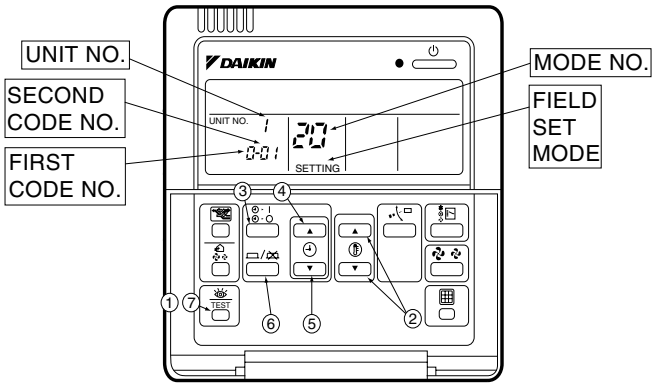
④ Push the " " upper button and select FIRST CODE NO.

⑤ Push the " " lower button and select the SECOND CODE NO.

⑥ Push the " " button once and the present settings are SET.

⑦ Push the " TEST " button for about one second to return to the NORMAL MODE.

(Example) If during group setting and the time to clean air filter is set to FILTER CONTAMINATION - HEAVY, SET MODE NO. to "10," FIRST CODE NO. to "0," and SECOND CODE NO to "02."



Mode No. Note) 1	FIRST CODE NO.	Description of Setting		SECOND CODE No. Note) 2				
				01		02		03
10(20)	0	Filter Contamination - Heavy/Light (Setting for spacing time of display time to clean air filter) (Setting for when filter contamination is heavy, and spacing time to clean air filter is to be halved)	Ultra-long-life type	Light	Approx. 10,000 hours	Heavy	Approx. 5,000 hours	—
			Long-life type		Approx. 2,500 hours		Approx. 1,250 hours	
			Standard type		Approx. 200 hours		Approx. 100hours	
	1	Long-life filter type (Setting of filter sign indication time) (Change setting when Ultra-long-life filter is installed)		Long-life filter		Ultra-long-life filter (1)		—
	3	Spacing Time of Display Time to Clean Air Filter Count (Setting for when the filter sign is not to be displayed)		Display		Do Not Display		—
11(21)	0	Setting Number of Connected Skyair Simultaneous Operation System Indoor Units(Setting for Simultaneous Operation System)		Pair		Twin		—
13(23)	0	High Celling Setting (Setting for when installed in a Ceiling higher than 2.7m)		Normal		High Ceiling 1		High Ceiling 2
	1	Selection of Air Flow Direction (Setting for when a blocking pad kit has been installed)		F		T		W
	3	Air Flow Direction Adjust Function (To be set when decoration panel for air outlet is installed)		Equippeed		No Equippeed		—
	4	Air Flow Direction Range Setting		Upper		Normal		Lower
	6	Setting the External Static Pressure (Setting according to the connected duct resistance) (For FHYK, follow the High Ceiling Setting)		Normal (Normal)		High Static Pressure (High Ceiling)		Low Static Pressure —

Note:

1. Setting is carried out in the group mode, however, set the mode number inside the ( ) for individual setting of the each indoor unit or confirmation after setting.
2. The SECOND CODE number is set to "01" when shipped from the factory.
   However for the following cases it is set to "02".
   ●Air flow direction range setting.
3. Do not make any settings not given in the table above.
4. Not displayed if the indoor unit is not equipped with that function.
5. When returning to the normal mode, "88" may be displayed in the LCD in order for the remote controller to initialize itself.

2P068938-1

3. Navigation Remote Controller (Wired Remote Controller)

3.1 BRC1E61

3.1.1 Features

- Clear Display ····· Equipped with backlight and large sized character display and buttons.
- Stylish ····· Basic tone is white and arrow keys are located at the center.
- Simple Operation ····· Simple operation used with arrow keys and menu-driven method.
- Multilingual Display ····· Available for selection of 10 languages to display arbitrarily
- Other Features ····· Wide variety of functions to meet customer needs such as schedule setting and contact address display.

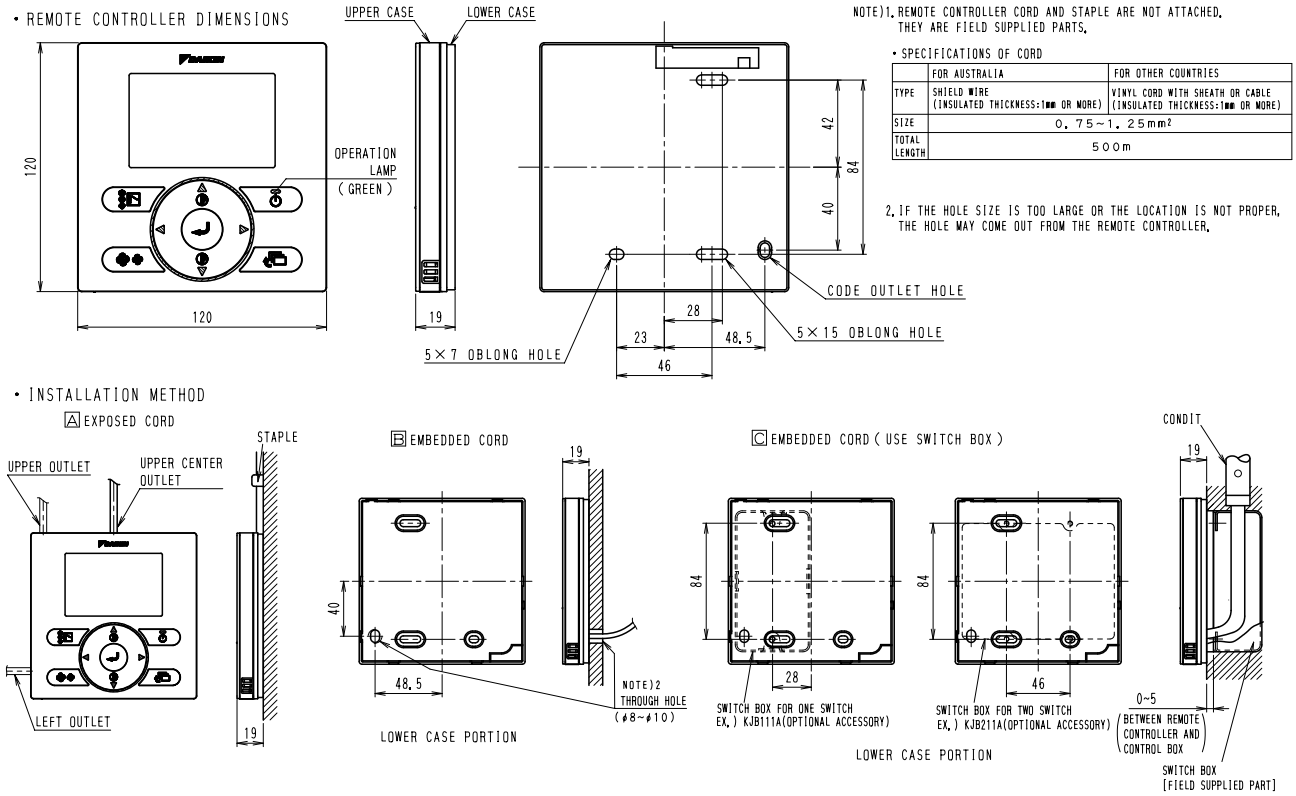
3.1.2 Functions

Category	Function	BRC1E61
Basic Functions	Drawing display	LCD
	Operation method	Menu selection
	Backlight function	○
Convenient Functions	Clock function (time display)	○
	Display switch function	○ *1
	Keylock function	○
	Schedule (weekly) timer*4	○
Maintenance/Services	Model name display	○ *2
	Contact dealer display	○ *2
	Operation time display	○ *3
	Operational data display	○*3

○: Possible

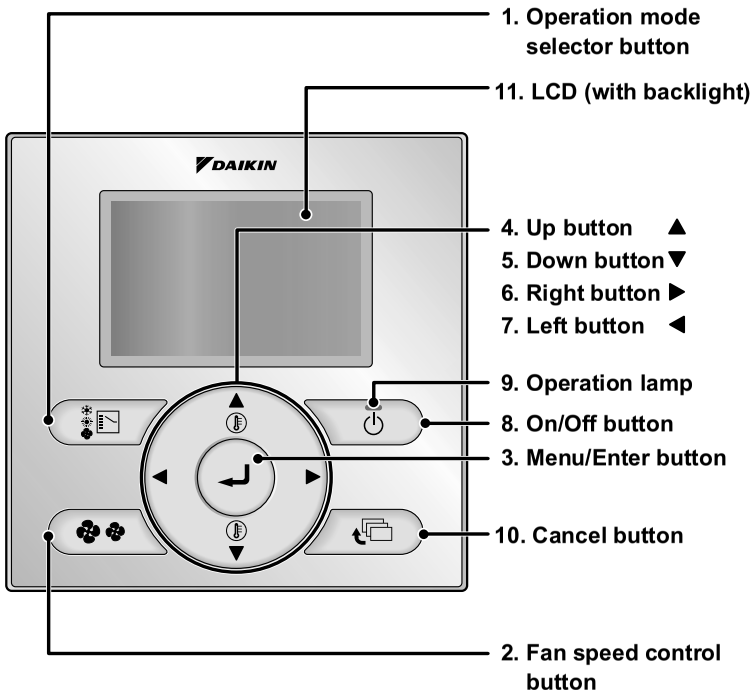
*1 Used for setting Normal Display mode or Detailed Display mode.
*2-1 When an error occurs, the error code blinks and the contact address and model names appear.
2-2 The contact address must be registered when the controller is installed.
2-3 For some models, model codes are displayed instead of model names.
*3 Can display for some model only.
*4 Setback function

3.1.3 Dimensions



3D064037

Names and Functions



Functions other than basic operation items (i.e., On/Off, Operation mode selector, Fan speed control, and temperature settings) are set from the menu screen.

NOTE

- **Do not install the remote controller in places exposed to direct sunlight. Otherwise, the LCD may become discolored and nothing may be displayed.**
- **Do not pull or twist the remote controller cord. Otherwise, the remote controller may error.**
- **Do not press the buttons on the remote controller with objects with sharp ends. Otherwise, the remote controller may receive damage or error.**

1. Operation mode selector button

- Press this button to select the operation mode of your preference. **(See page 14.)**
  *Available modes vary with the connecting model.

2. Fan speed control button

- Press this button to select the fan speed of your preference. **(See page 15.)**
  *Available fan speed vary with the connecting model.

3. Menu/Enter button

- Used to indicate the main menu. **(See page 24 for the menu items.)**
- Used to enter the setting item selected.

4. Up button ▲ (Be sure to press the part with the symbol ▲)

- Used to raise the set temperature.
- The next items on the upper side will be highlighted. (The highlighted items will be scrolled continuously when the button is kept pressed.)
- Used to change the item selected.

5. Down button ▼ (Be sure to press the part with the symbol ▼)

- Used to lower the set temperature.
- The next items on the lower side will be highlighted. (The highlighted items will be scrolled continuously when the button is kept pressed.)
- Used to change the item selected.

6. Right button ▶ (Be sure to press the part with the symbol ▶)

- Used to highlight the next items on the right-hand side.
- Each screen is scrolled in the right-hand direction.
- Home leave settings are enabled with this button kept pressed for at least four seconds. **(See page 19.)**

7. Left button ◀ (Be sure to press the part with the symbol ◀)

- Used to highlight the next items on the left-hand side.
- Each screen is scrolled in the left-hand direction.
- Home leave settings are enabled with this button kept pressed for at least four seconds. **(See page 19.)**

8. On/Off button

- Press this button and system will start.
- Press this button again and system will stop.

9. Operation lamp (Green)

- This lamp lights up during operation.
- This lamp blinks if a error occurs.

10. Cancel button

- Used to return to the previous screen.

11. LCD (with backlight)

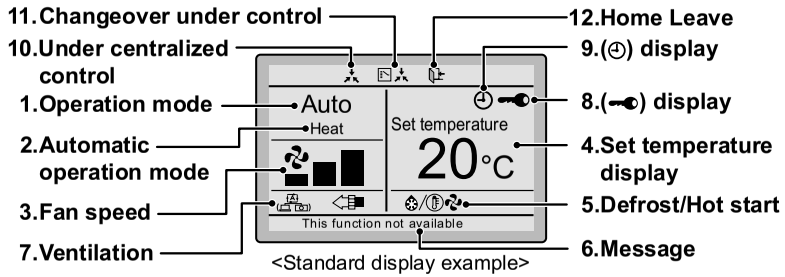
- The backlight will be light for approximately 30 seconds by pressing any operation button. Operate buttons excluding the On/Off button while the backlight is lit.
- If two remote controllers are used to control a single indoor unit, the backlight of the remote controller operated earlier than the other one will be lit.

Names and Functions

Liquid Crystal Display

- Two types of liquid crystal display (LCD) are available. The standard display is by default set.
- To go to the detailed display, select the detailed display in the main menu. **(See page 46.)**
- The displayed contents of the screen vary with the operation mode of the equipment interlocked. (The following display will appear when the air conditioner is in automatic heating operation.)

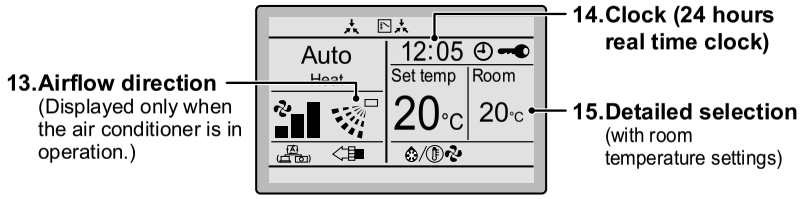
Standard display



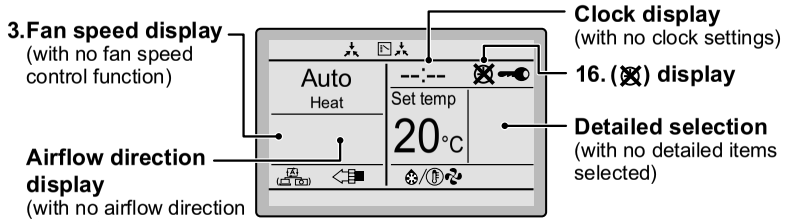
<Standard display example>

Detailed display

■ **The airflow direction, clock, and detailed selection items appear on the detailed display screen in addition to the items appearing on the standard display.**



<Detailed display example 1>



<Detailed display example 2>

1. Operation mode

- Used to display the present operation mode Cool, Heat, Vent, Fan, Dry or Auto mode.

2. Automatic operation mode

- Used to display the present automatic operation mode (Cool or Heat).

3. Fan speed

- Used to display the fan speed that is set for the air conditioner.
- The fan speed will not be displayed if the air conditioner does not have fan speed control function.

4. Set temperature display

- Used to display the temperature set for the air conditioner.

5. Defrost/Hot start "❄/🔥"

(See page 16.)

If Ventilating operation "⟲" is displayed:

- Displayed when a total heat exchanger unit, such as the Ventiair, is connected. For details, refer to the Operation Manual of the Ventiair.

6. Message

The following messages are displayed.
"This function not available."

- Displayed for a few seconds when an operation button is pressed if the indoor unit is not provided with the corresponding function.
- If a number of indoor units are in operation, the message will appear only if none of the indoor units is provided with the corresponding function, i.e., the message will not appear if at least one of the indoor units is provided with the corresponding function.

"Error: Press Menu Button."
"Warning: Press Menu Button."

- Displayed if the error or warning is detected **(see page 53)**.

"Quick Cool/Heat" (SkyAir only)

- Displayed if the quick cooling/heating function is turned ON **(see page 31).**

"Clean the filter."
"Clean the element."
"Clean the filter and element."

- Displayed when the time to clean the filter or element has come **(see page 51).**

7. Ventilation / Purifying

- Displayed when a total heat exchanger unit, such as the Ventiair, is connected.
- **Ventilation mode icon.**"⟲ ⟲ ⟲" These icons indicate the current ventilation mode (HRV only) (AUTOMATIC, HEAT EXCHANGE, BYPASS).
- **AIR Purifying ICON "⟲"** This icon indicates that the air cleaning unit (option) is operational.

8. 🔑 display (See page 23.)

- Displayed when the key lock is set.

9. ⏲ display (See page 34.)

- Displayed if the schedule timer or OFF reminder timer is enabled.

10. Under Centralized control "⟲"

- Displayed if the system is under the management of central control equipment (optional accessories) and the operation of the system through the remote controller is prohibited.

11. Changeover under control "⟲"

(VRV only)

- Displayed on the remote controller if the remote controller has no cooling/heating selection eligibility mode **(see page 21)**.

Names and Functions

12.Home leave “ ” (See page 19.)

- The home leave icon shows the status of the home leave function.

ON	Home leave is enabled
FLASHING	Home Leave is active
OFF	Home Leave is disabled

13.Airflow direction “ ”

- Displayed when the airflow direction and swing are set **(see page 28)**.
- This item is not displayed if the system is not provided with a function to set airflow directions.

14.Clock (24 hours real time clock)

- Displayed if the clock is set **(see page 48)**.
- If the clock is not set, “ -- : -- ” will be displayed.

15.Detailed selection

- Displayed if the detailed display items are selected **(see page 47)**.
- No detailed items are by default selected.

16. display

- Displayed to inform that the clock needs setting again.
- The schedule timer function will not work unless the clock is set again.

1. Safety Precautions

■ Also see installation manual attached to the indoor unit.

Please read these “Safety Precautions” carefully before installing air conditioning equipment and be sure to install it correctly.

- The precautions described herein are classified as WARNING and CAUTION. They both contain important information regarding safety. Be sure to observe all precautions without fail.

⚠ **WARNING**	Failure to follow these instructions properly may result in personal injury or loss of life.
⚠ **CAUTION**	Failure to observe these instructions properly may result in property damage or personal injury, which may be serious depending on the circumstances.

- After completing installation, conduct a trial operation to check for faults and explain to the customer how to operate the air conditioner and take care of it with the aid of the operation manual. Ask the customer to store the installation manual along with the operation manual for future reference.

⚠ WARNING
Ask your dealer or qualified personnel to carry out installation work. Do not attempt to install the remote controller yourself. Improper installation may result in water leakage, electric shocks or fire.
Consult your local dealer regarding relocation and reinstallation of the remote controller. Improper installation work may result in leakage, electric shocks or fire hazards.
Install the remote controller in accordance with the instructions in this installation manual. Improper installation may result in water leakage, electric shocks or fire.
Be sure to use only the specified accessories and parts for installation work. Failure to use the specified parts may result in the unit falling, water leakage, electric shocks or fire.
Install the remote controller on a foundation strong enough to withstand the weight of the remote controller. A foundation of insufficient strength may result in the remote controller falling and causing injury.
Electrical work must be performed in accordance with relevant local and national regulations and with instructions in this installation manual. Be sure to use a dedicated power supply circuit only. Insufficiency of power circuit capacity and improper workmanship may result in electric shocks or fire.
Always perform installation work with the power supply shut-off. Touch with energized electric parts causes an electric shock.
Do not disassembly, reconstruct or repair. Electric shock and/or fire are caused.
Make sure that all wiring is secured, the specified wires are used, and that there is no strain on the terminal connections or wires. Improper connections or securing of wires may result in abnormal heat build-up or fire.
The choice of materials and installations must comply with the applicable national and international standards.

⚠ CAUTION
To avoid leakage and electric shock due to entry of water or insects, fill the wiring through hole with putty.
To avoid electric shocks, do not operate with wet hands.
Do not wash the remote controller with water, as this may result in electric shocks or fire.
Install the indoor and outdoor units, power cord and connecting wires at least 1 meter away from televisions or radios to prevent picture interference and noise. (Depending on the incoming signal strength, a distance of 1 meter may not be sufficient to eliminate noise.)
Do not install the air conditioner in the following locations: 1. Where there is a high concentration of mineral oil spray or vapour (e.g. a kitchen). Plastic parts will deteriorate, parts may fall off and water leakage could result. 2. Where corrosive gas, such as sulphurous acid gas, is produced. Corroding of copper pipes or soldered parts may result in refrigerant leakage. 3. Near machinery emitting electromagnetic radiation. Electromagnetic radiation may disturb the operation of the control system and result in a malfunction of the unit. 4. Where flammable gas may leak, where there is carbon fibre or ignitable dust suspensions in the air, or where volatile flammables such as paint thinner or gasoline are handled. Operating the unit in such conditions may result in fire. 5. High temperature area or directly flamed point. Heating and/or firing may be caused. 6. Moist area, or place where may be exposed to water. If water enters inside of the remote controller, electric shock may be caused and inner electronics may fail.
When remote controller thermo function is used, select the installation location considering the followings. ● A place where average temperature in the room can be detected. ● A place where is not exposed to direct sunlight. ● A place where is far apart from heat source. ● A place where is not affected by outside air due to door opening/closing or the like.

2. Accessories

The following accessories are included.

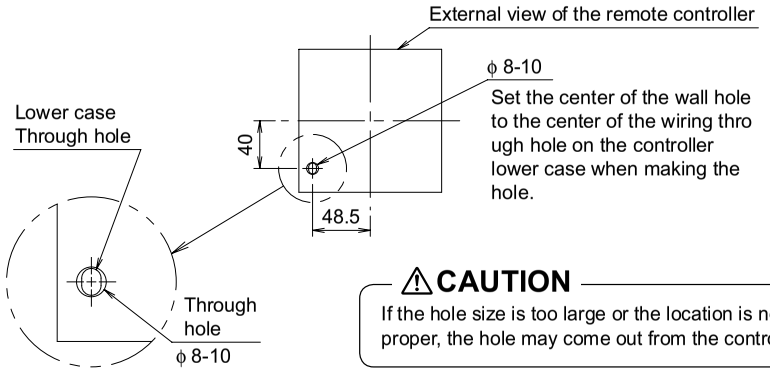
Wood screw	Small screw	Clamp	Operation manual	Installation manual	Wiring retainer
(ϕ3.5×16)	(M4×16)				
(2 pcs.)	(2 pcs.)	(1 pc.)	(1 pc.)	(1 pc.)	(1 pc.)

3. Remote controller installation procedure

3-1 Determine where to install the remote controller.

Make sure to follow "**1. Safety Precautions**" when determining the location.

3-2 Make a wiring through hole on the wall if the wires are taken out from the back side.



⚠CAUTION

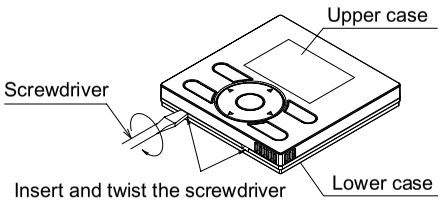
If the hole size is too large or the location is not proper, the hole may come out from the controller.

3-3 Remove upper case.

Insert a screwdriver in the recess of lower case to remove the upper case (2 points).

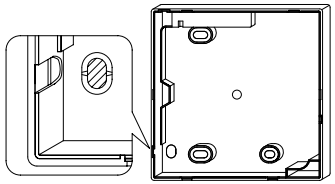
Remote controller PC-board is installed on the upper case. Take care not to damage the PC-board with the screwdriver.

Take care that dust or moisture does not touch the PC-board of removed upper case.



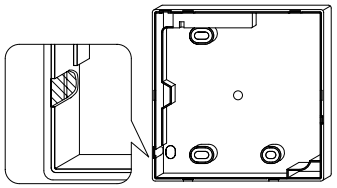
3-4 Determine the direction of controller wiring outlet (back outlet, left outlet, upper center outlet, upper outlet).

3-4-1 Back outlet



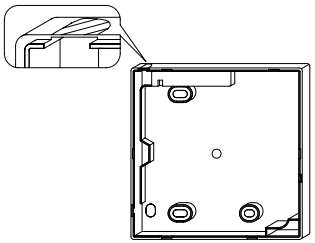
Cut off resin area (hatched area).

3-4-2 Left outlet



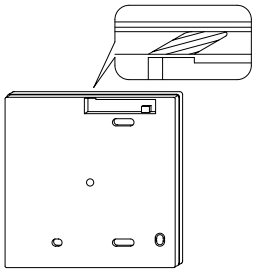
Cut off thin area (hatched area) with nippers or the like, and then remove burr with a file or the like.

3-4-3 Upper outlet



Cut off thin area (hatched area) with nippers or the like, and then remove burr with a file or the like.

3-4-4 Upper center outlet



Cut off thin area (hatched area) with nippers or the like, and then remove burr with a file or the like.

3-5 Conduct wiring.

⚠CAUTION

1. Switch box and transmission wiring are not attached.
2. Do not directly touch the remote controller PC-board.

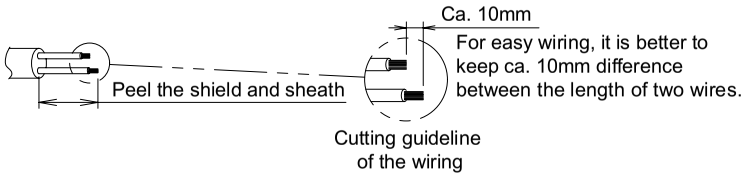
Wiring Specifications

Wiring Type	Sheathed vinyl cord or cable (2 wire) (NOTE)
Wiring Size	0.75-1.25mm²

NOTE

Shield wire (2 wire) can be used for remote controller wiring, but it must confirm to EMC (Electromagnetic Compatibility) (Australian regulation)

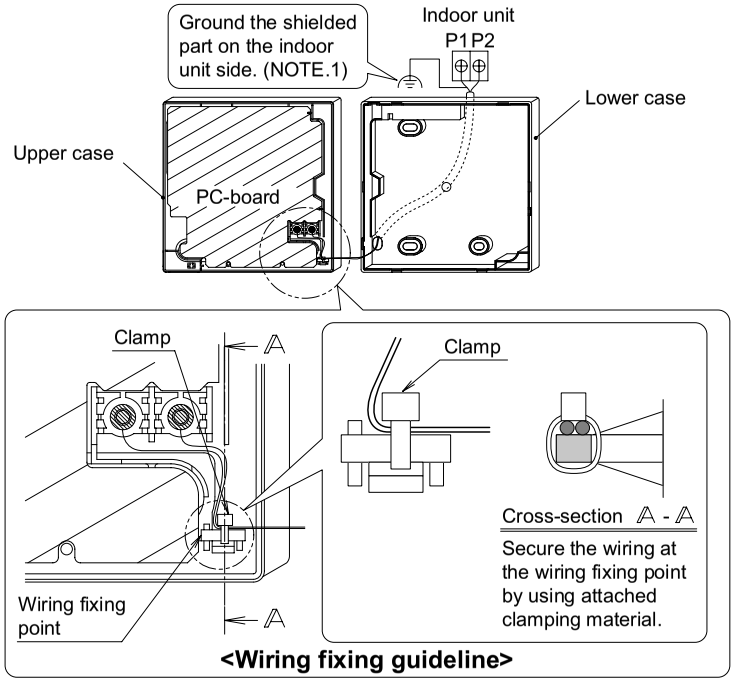
Sheath part in the remote controller case should be stripped.



Sheath stripping length:
- Ca. 150mm for upper outlet
- Ca. 200mm for upper center outlet

Connect the terminals (P/P1, N/P2) of the remote controller upper case with the terminals (P1, P2) of the indoor unit. (P1 and P2 have no polarities.)

3-5-1 Back outlet

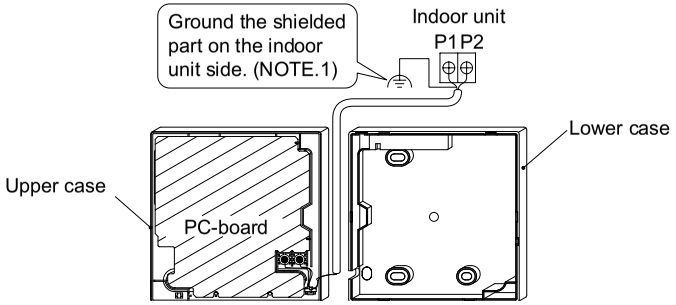


<Wiring fixing guideline>

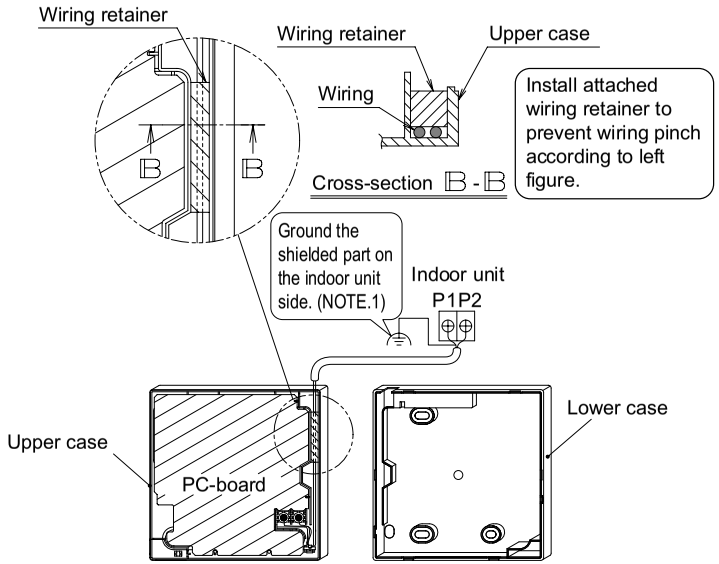
NOTE

1) Shield wire (2 wire) can be used for remote controller wiring, but it must confirm to EMC (Electromagnetic Compatibility) (Australian regulation)

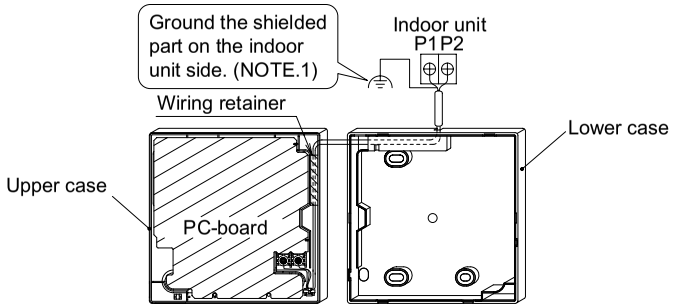
3-5-2 Left outlet



3-5-3 Upper outlet



3-5-4 Upper center outlet



⚠CAUTION

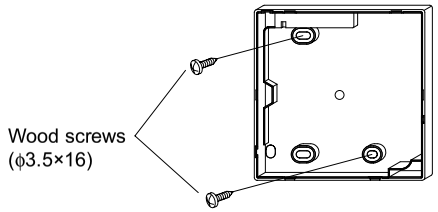
- Perform wiring apart from a power line not to receive electrical noise (external noise) during the wiring.
- Seal wiring draw-in port securely with putty (field supply) to prevent entry of insects or the like.

3-6 Fixing procedure of lower case.

In the case of wiring center upward drawing or rearward drawing, see wiring procedure first as wiring with the case is needed before fixing.

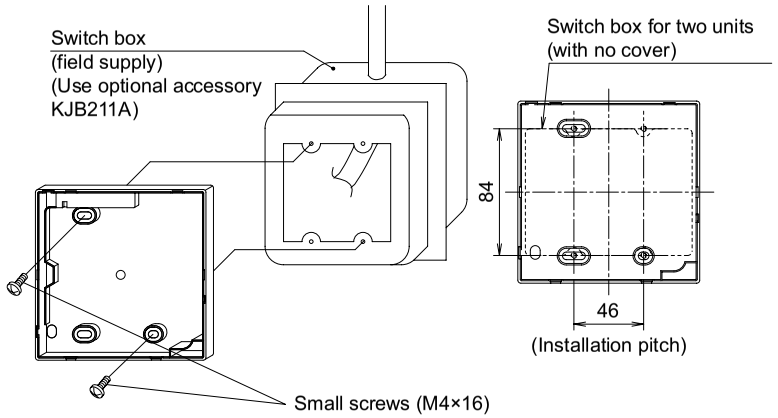
3-6-1 In the case of installation on the wall

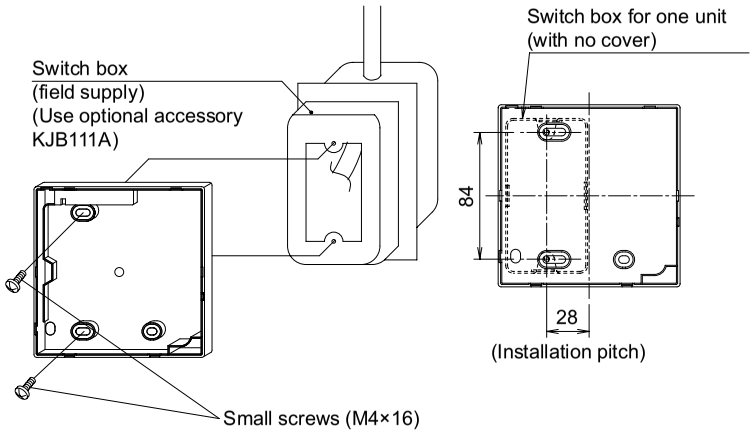
Secure by using attached wood screws (2 pcs.).



3-6-2 In the case of installation on the switch box

Secure by using attached small screws (2 pcs.).



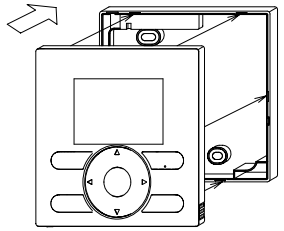


⚠CAUTION

- Select flat place for installation face as possible.
- And, do not tighten the installation screws too much not to deform the lower case.

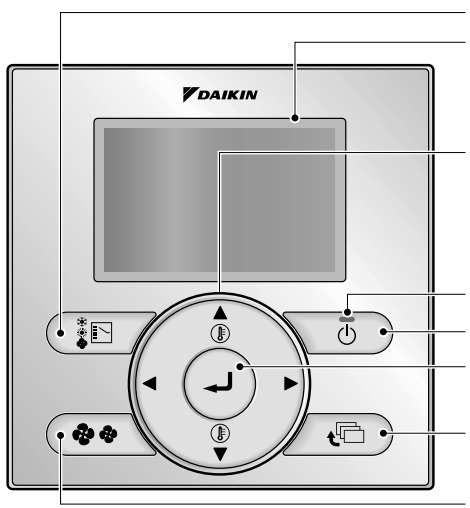
3-7 Install the upper case as original condition.

- Align the upper case with tabs of the lower case (6 points), inset and install the upper case.
- Install the wiring with care to prevent the pinch.
- Peel off a protective seal which is attached on the upper case.



4. Functions and menu items of remote controller buttons

4-1 Functions and menu items



(1) Operation mode selector button
Used to change the mode.

(2) Fan speed control button
Used to change the fan control.

(3) Menu/Enter button
- Used to indicate the main menu. (For details of main menu, see the operation manual.)
- Used to enter the setting item selected.

Main menu

Set temp mode changeover
Airflow Direction
Quick Cool/Heat On/Off
Ventilation
Timer setting
Service Contact/Model Info
Convenient functions
Setting status list
Clock setting
Language changeover

*Depending on connected model

(4) Up button ▲
- Used to raise the set temperature.
- The next items on the upper side will be highlighted. (The highlighted items will be scrolled continuously when the button is kept pressed.)
- Used to change the item selected.

(5) Down button ▼
- Used to lower the set temperature.
- The next items on the lower side will be highlighted. (The highlighted items will be scrolled continuously when the button is kept pressed.)
- Used to change the item selected.

(6) Right button ▶
- Used to highlight the next items on the right-hand side.
- Display contents are changed to next screen per page.

3P243521-1

Note : page 210

(7) Left button ◀
- Used to highlight the next items on the left-hand side.
- Display contents are changed to previous screen per page.

(8) On/Off button
Press once to operate, and press once again to stop.

(9) Operation lamp
Green lamp lights up during operation. The lamp will blink if an malfunction occurs.

(10) Cancel button
- Used to return to the previous screen.
- Press and hold this button for 4 seconds or longer to display field setting menu.

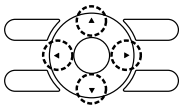
(11) LCD (with backlight)
The backlight will be light for approximately 30 seconds by pressing any operation button.

Field setting menu

Test operation ON/OFF
Register Service Contract
Field setting list
Group No. setting
Indoor unit Airnet No. set
Outdoor unit Airnet No. set
Error record
Indoor status display
Outdoor status display
Fan forced operation ON
Main/Sub changeover
Filter element sign OFF

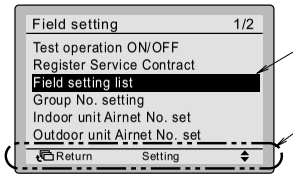
*Depending on connected model

⚠CAUTION
- Operate the button during backlight lit. However, On/Off may be operated concurrently with backlight lit.
- When 1 indoor unit is controlled by 2 remote controllers, a remote controller backlight which is operated first light.
- To operate Up/Down/Left/Right button, always press ▲ of the button.



4-2 Displays for button operation descriptions

<Field setting menu screen>



Highlighted display (selected items)

In the highlighted display (selected items) setting screen, button operation descriptions are displayed.

5. Power-on

- Check for completion of indoor/outdoor units wiring.
- Check for closing of EL. COMPO. BOX cover of indoor and outdoor units before power-on.

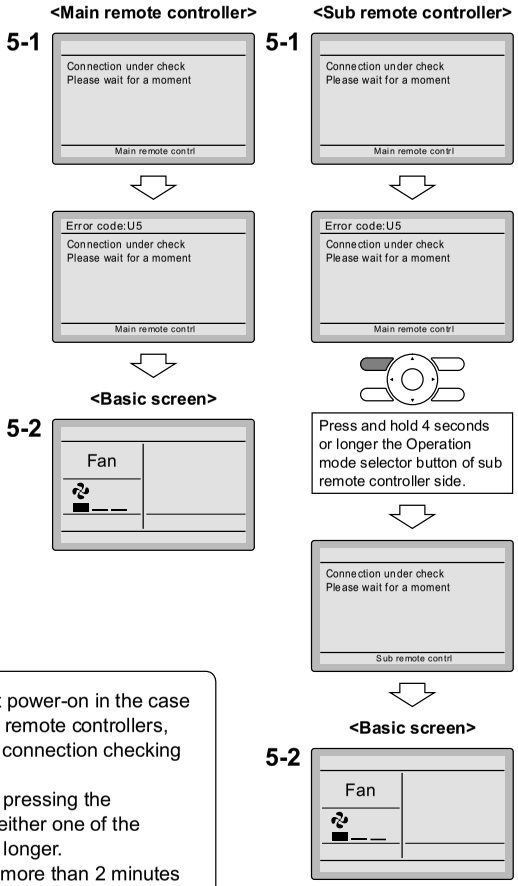
5-1 Followings are displayed after power-on.
"Connection under check
Please wait for a moment"

During above display, backlight does not light by button operation.

When 1 indoor unit is controlled by 2 remote controllers:

Be sure to set sub remote controller during above display. Press and hold 4 seconds or longer the Operation mode selector button of the remote controller to be set.
When the display is changed from main remote controller to sub remote controller, the setting is completed.

5-2 Basic screen is displayed.



⚠CAUTION
If sub remote controller is not set at power-on in the case of one indoor unit controlled by two remote controllers, "Error code: U5" is displayed in the connection checking screen.
Select the sub remote controller by pressing the Operation mode selector button of either one of the remote controllers for 4 seconds or longer.
If the basic screen is not displayed more than 2 minutes after "sub remote controller" display, shut off the power supply and check the wiring.

NOTE
When selecting a different language, refer to **12. Language changeover**. (See Note)

6. Field setting method

6-1 Press and hold Cancel button for 4 seconds or longer.
Field setting menu is displayed.

6-2 Select Field setting list in the field setting menu, and press Menu/Enter button.
Field setting list screen is displayed.

6-3 Highlight the mode, and select desired "Mode No." by using ▲▼ (Up/Down) button.

6-4 In the case of setting per indoor unit during group control (When Mode No. such as 20 , 21 , 22 , 23 , 25 are selected), highlight the unit No. and select "Indoor unit No." to be set by using ▲▼ (Up/Down) button.
(In the case of group total setting, this operation is not needed.)

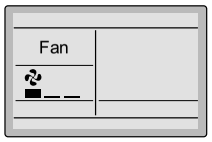
> In the case of individual setting per indoor unit, current settings are displayed. And, SECOND CODE NO. " - " means no function.

6-5 Highlight SECOND CODE NO. of the FIRST CODE NO. to be changed, and select desired "SECOND CODE NO." by using ▲▼ (Up/Down) button. Multiple identical mode number settings are available.

> In the case of group total setting, all of SECOND CODE NO. which may be set are displayed as " ＊ ". " ＊ " is changed to SECOND CODE NO. to be set. And, SECOND CODE NO. " - " means no function.

<Basic screen>

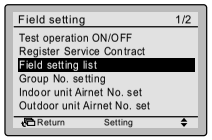
6-1



Press and hold Cancel button for 4 seconds or longer during backlight lit.

<Field setting menu screen>

6-2

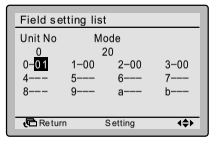


Press Menu/Enter button.

<Field setting screen>

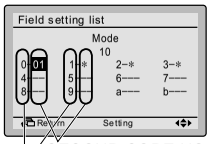
In the case of individual setting per indoor unit

6-3
6-4
6-5



In the case of group total setting

6-3
6-5



SECOND CODE NO.
FIRST CODE (SW) NO.

Press Menu/Enter button.

6-6 Press Menu/Enter button. Setting confirmation screen is displayed.

6-7 Select Yes and press Menu/Enter button. Setting details are determined and field setting list screen returns.

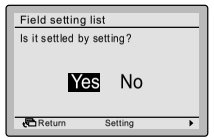
6-8 In the case of multiple setting changes, repeat "**6-3**" to "**6-7**".

6-9 After all setting changes are completed, press Cancel button twice.

6-10 Backlight goes out, and "Connection under check Please wait for a moment" is displayed for initialization. After the initialization, the basic screen returns.

<Setting confirmation screen>

6-6
6-7



Press Menu/Enter button.

Setting confirmation

⚠ CAUTION

- When an optional accessory is installed on the indoor unit, settings of the indoor unit may be changed. See the manual of the optional accessory.
- For field setting details of the outdoor unit, see installation manual attached to the outdoor unit.

Mode No. Note) 1	FIRST CODE NO.	Description of setting		SECOND CODE NO. Note) 2			
				01	02	03	04
10 (20)	0	Filter Contamination - Heavy/Light (Setting for spacing time of display time to clean air filter) (Setting for when filter contamination is heavy, and spacing time of display time to clean air filter is to be halved)	Ultra long life filter	Light: Approx. 10.000 hrs.	Heavy: Approx. 5.000 hrs.	———	———
			Long life filter	Light: Approx. 2.500 hrs.	Heavy: Approx. 1.250 hrs.	———	———
			Standard filter	Light: Approx. 200 hrs.	Heavy: Approx. 100 hrs.	———	———
	1	Long-life filter type (setting of filter sign indication time). (Change setting when ultra-long filter is installed)		Long-life filter	Ultra-long life filter	———	———
	2	Thermostat sensor in remote controller		Use	Not use	———	———
	3	Spacing time of display time to clean air filter count (setting for when the filter sign is not to be displayed)		Display	Do not display	———	———
11 (21)	0	Setting number of connected Sky Air simultaneous operation system indoor units (setting for simultaneous operations system)		Pair	Twin	Triple	Double twin

Mode No. Note) 1	FIRST CODE NO.	Description of setting	SECOND CODE NO. Note) 2			
			01	02	03	04
12 (22)	1	ON/OFF input from outside (setting for when forced ON/OFF is to be operated from outside).	Forced OFF	ON/OFF operation	———	———
	2	Thermostat differential changeover (setting for when using remote sensor).	1°C	0.5°C	———	———
13 (23)	0	High air outlet velocity (for high ceiling applications).	≤2.7m	>2.7≥3.0m	>3.0≥3.5m	———
	1	Selection of airflow direction (setting for when a blocking pad kit has been installed).	4-way flow	3-way flow	2-way flow	———
	3	Selection of airflow function (setting for when using a decoration panel for outlet).	Equipped	Not equipped	———	———
	4	Airflow direction range setting.	Upper	Normal	Lower	———
	6	Setting the external static pressure (setting according to the connected duct resistance) (for FHYK, follow the high ceiling setting)	Normal (Normal)	High static pressure (High ceiling)	Low static pressure ———	——— ———
15 (25)	3	Drain pump operation with humidifying.	Equipped	Not equipped	———	———
1c	1	Thermostat sensor in remote controller (for limit operation and Home leave function only)	Not use	Use	———	———
	3	Permission level setting	Level 2	Level 3	———	———
1e	2	Home leave function	Not permitted	Permitted	———	———

Notes) 1. Though setting is performed totally in the group, set Mode No. in the parenthesis when individual setting per indoor unit or checking after the setting should be performed.
2. SECOND CODE NO. at factory shipment is set to “01”. However for the following cases it is set to “02”.
- Airflow direction range setting (except round flow cassette)
- Thermostat sensor in remote controller (SkyAir only)
- Thermostat sensor in remote controller for limit operation and Home leave function only
- Home leave function

3. Any function which the indoor unit does not have is not displayed.

7. Test operation method (in the case of SkyAir)

∗ In the case of VRV, see the manual attached to the outdoor unit.

Also see installation manuals attached to the indoor unit and the outdoor unit.

- Check that wiring work of the indoor unit and the outdoor unit is completed.
- Check that EL. COMPO. BOX cover of the indoor unit and the outdoor unit is closed.
- After refrigerant piping, drain piping and electric wiring are completed, clean inside of the indoor unit and decorative panel.
- Perform the test operation according to following procedure.

7-1 Make sure to turn on the power supply more than 6 hours before operation start with front panel closed to protect compressor.

7-2 Confirm that stop valves of both liquid and gas are opened.
<Make sure that outer panel and piping cover is closed before operation (danger of electric shock). >
∗ After air purge by vacuum pump, refrigerant pressure may not rise even though the stop valve is opened. The reason is that refrigerant system of the outdoor unit is blocked by electrical expansion valve or the like. Operation is no problem.

7-3 Set the operation mode to cooling by using the remote controller.

7-4 Press and hold Cancel button for 4 seconds or longer. Field setting menu is displayed.

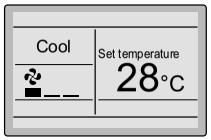
7-5 Select Test operation ON/OFF in the field setting menu, and press Menu/Enter button. Basic screen returns and “Test operation” is displayed.

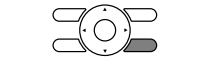
Notes for backlight

- The backlight will be light for approximately 30 seconds by pressing any operation button.
- Operate the buttons during the backlight lit. However, On/Off can be operated concurrently with the backlight lit.

<Basic screen>

7-3
7-4

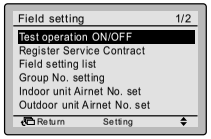


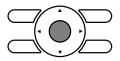


Press and hold Cancel button for 4 seconds or longer during backlight lit.

<Field setting menu screen>

7-5





Press Menu/Enter button.

7-6 Press On/Off button within about 10 seconds. The test operation starts. Check operation condition for 3 minutes.
* Note) In the case of above-mentioned procedures **7-5** and **7-6** in reverse order, test operation can start as well.

7-7 Press Menu/Enter button in the basic screen. Main menu is displayed.

7-8 In the case of a model having airflow direction setting function, select Airflow Direction in the main menu and check that airflow direction is actuated according to the setting. For operation of airflow direction setting, see the operation manual.

7-9 After the operation of airflow direction is confirmed, press Menu/Enter button. Basic screen returns.

7-10 Press and hold Cancel button for 4 seconds or longer in the basic screen.
Field setting menu is displayed.

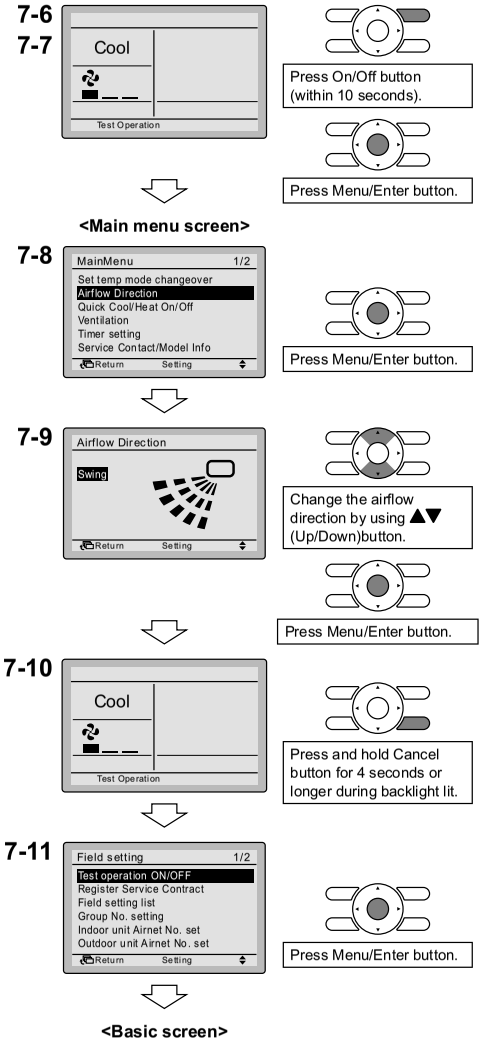
7-11 Select Test operation ON/OFF in the field setting menu, and press Menu/Enter button. Basic screen returns and normal operation is conducted.

7-12 Check the functions according to the operation manual.

7-13 When the decorative panel is not installed, shut off the power supply after the test operation finishes.

- If interior work is not completed after the test operation finish, explain to the customer that operation should not be performed until the interior work completion to protect the indoor unit.

(If the operation is performed, the indoor unit may be contaminated with the materials which arise from paints or adhesives during the interior work, and water splash or water leak may occur.)



⚠CAUTION

- If operation is not available due to any malfunction, refer to following **Failure diagnosis method** .
- After the test operation finishes, check that error code record is not displayed in the Service Contact/Model Information screen of the main menu according to the following procedure.

7-14 Press Menu/Enter button in the basic screen. Main menu screen is displayed.

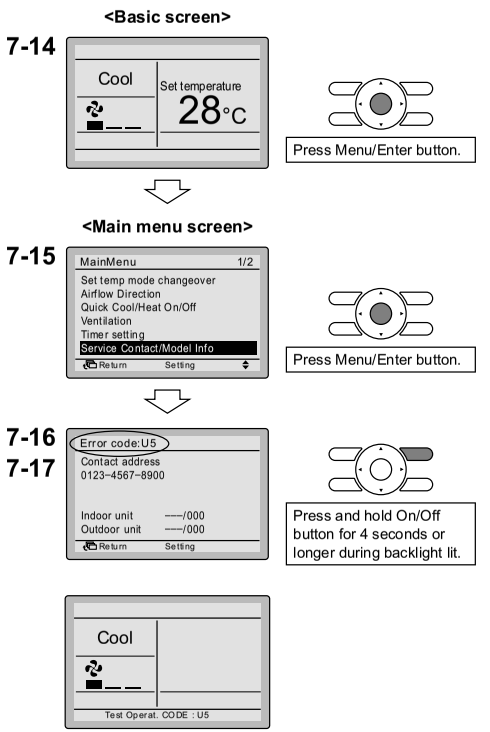
7-15 Select Service Contact/Model Info in the main menu, and press Menu/Enter button.

7-16 Service Contact/Model Information screen is displayed. Check that error code record is not displayed in the screen.
* Screen which does not display the error code record means normal status.

7-17 If the error code record is displayed, conduct the failure diagnosis referring to <Error code list> in the installation manual of the indoor unit.
After the failure diagnosis finishes, press and hold On/Off button for 4 seconds or longer in the "Service Contact/Model Info" screen to erase the error code record.

Failure diagnosis method

- When the remote controller displays any item in following table, inspect the details in the table.
- If a error occurs, "code" is displayed in the LCD like right figure.
Conduct the failure analysis referring to "Error code list" in the installation manual of the indoor unit.
And when the unit No. which detected the error during group control is confirmed, refer to "**8. Checking procedure of error record**".



Remote controller display	Description
No display	● Power outage, power voltage error or open-phase ● Wrong wiring (between indoor and outdoor units) ● Indoor PC-board assembly failure ● Remote controller wiring disconnection ● Remote controller failure ● Fuse blow (outdoor unit)
Display of “Connection under check Please wait for a moment” is turned on. ∗	● Indoor PC-board assembly failure ● Wrong wiring (between indoor and outdoor units)

∗ Though
“Connection under check
Please wait for a moment” is displayed for 90 seconds at maximum after power-on, this does not mean a failure. (Determine after 90 seconds.)

8. Checking procedure of error record

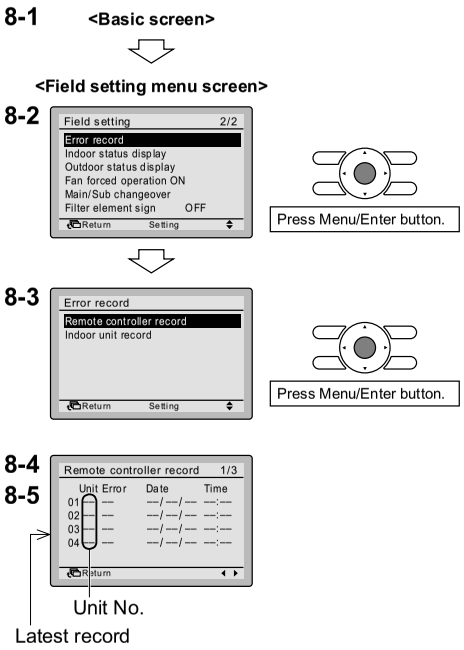
8-1 Press and hold Cancel button for 4 seconds or longer in the basic screen. Field setting menu is displayed.

8-2 Select Error record in the field setting menu, and press Menu/Enter button. The error record menu screen is displayed.

8-3 Select Remote controller record in the error record menu, and press Menu/Enter button.
Error codes and unit No. can be confirmed in the error record display screen.

8-4 In the error record, 10 items from the latest are displayed in order.

8-5 Press Cancel button in the error record display screen 3 times.
The basic screen returns.



9. Registration method of the service contract

● Registration of the service contract.

9-1 Press and hold Cancel button for 4 seconds or longer in the basic screen.
Field setting menu is displayed.

9-2 Select Register Service Contract in the field setting menu, and press Menu/Enter button. “Register service contract” menu screen is displayed.

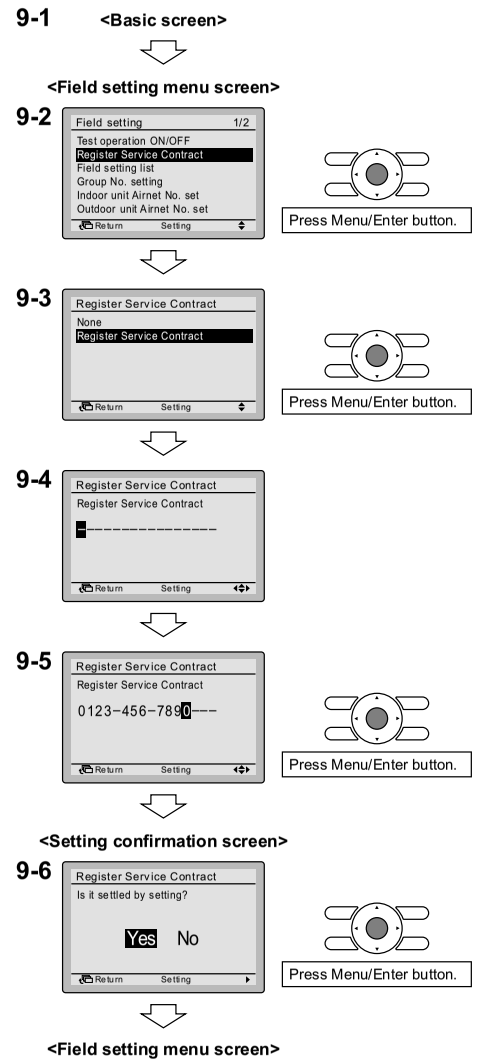
9-3 Select Register Service Contract , and press Menu/Enter button.

9-4 Enter the telephone number.
Numeric varies by using ▲▼ (Up/Down) button. Enter from the left end, and blank digit should be left as “ - ”.

9-5 Press Menu/Enter button.
Setting confirmation screen is displayed.

9-6 Select Yes and press Menu/Enter button.
Setting details are determined and field setting menu screen returns.

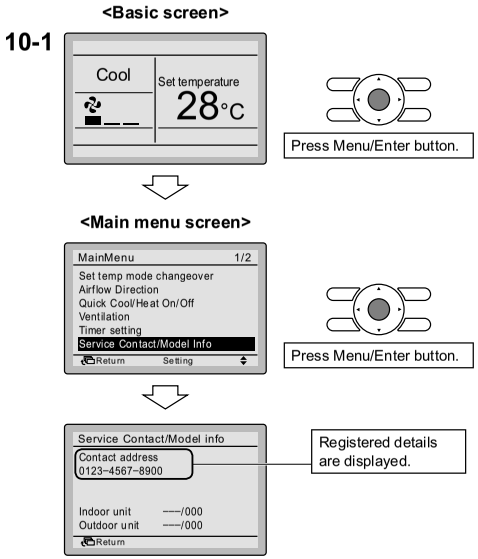
9-7 Press Cancel button once.
The basic screen returns.



10. Confirmation of registered details

10-1 Press Menu/Enter button in the basic screen.
Main menu is displayed.
Select Service Contact/Model Info in the main menu, and press Menu/Enter button.

10-2 Press Cancel button twice.
The basic screen returns.



11. Clock Setting

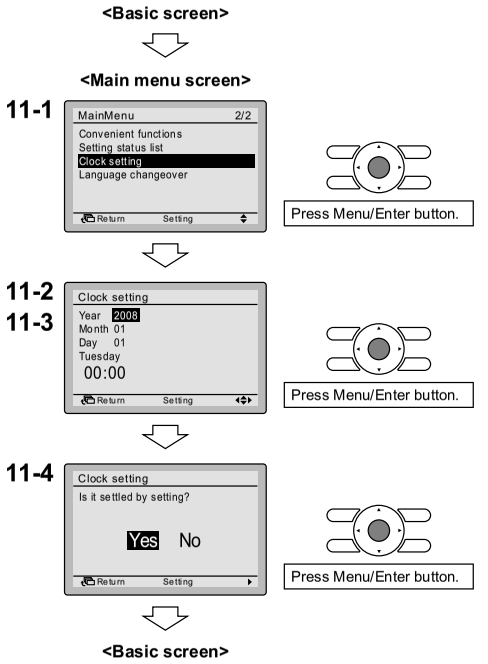
11-1 Press Menu/Enter button in the basic screen.
Main menu is displayed.
Select Clock setting in the main menu, press Menu/Enter button.

11-2 Select “year”, “month”, “day” and “time” by using ◀▶ (Left/Right) button and set by using ▲▼ (Up/Down) button in the clock setting screen. During the button is pressed and held, numeric changes continuously.
∗ Day of the week is set automatically.

11-3 Press Menu/Enter button.
Setting confirmation screen is displayed.

11-4 Select Yes and press Menu/Enter button.
Setting details are confirmed and basic screen returns.

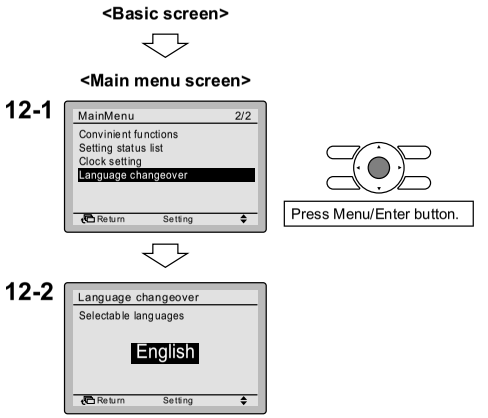
∗ If duration of power outage exceeds 48 hours, reset is needed.



12. Language changeover

12-1 Press Menu/Enter button in the basic screen.
Main menu is displayed.
Select Language changeover in the main menu, press Menu/Enter button.

12-2 Press ▲▼ (Up/Down) buttons to select “Language” on the language change-over screen.
English/Deutsch/ Français/Español/ Italiano/Ελληνικά/Nederlands/ Portugues/Русский/Türkçe
Pressing Menu/Enter button.
Setting details are confirmed and basic screen returns.



4. Wired Remote Controller with Weekly Schedule Timer

4.1 BRC1D61

Adds new, advanced functions to those of the wired remote controller.

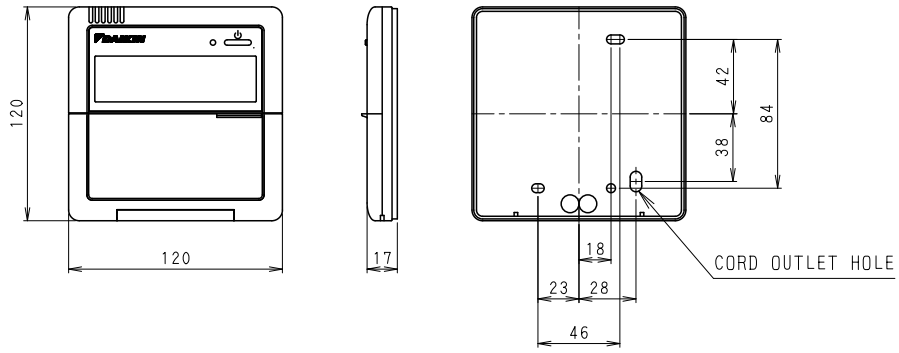
BRC1D61

- Includes ventilation mode and airflow rate switching, the main functions of HRV series.
- 24-hour clock function (1-hour backup for power failures).
- Programming function for each day of week.
- Scheduling possible of start/stop and temperature limit (5 settings/day).
- Programming can be enabled or disabled.
- Copy function for programmed schedules.

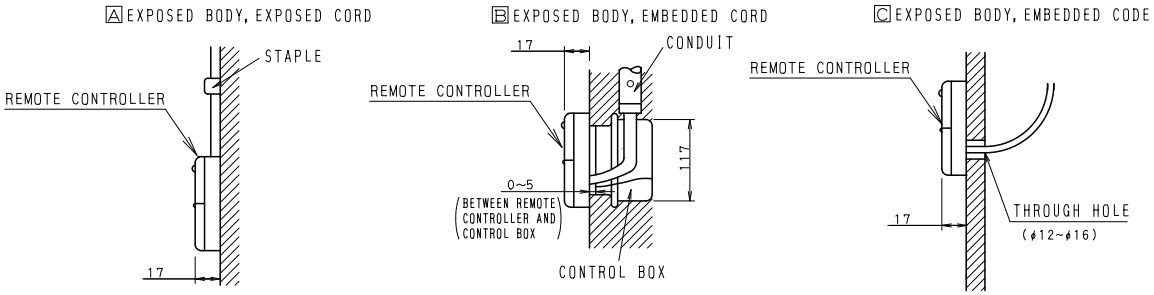
4.1.1 Dimensions

Unit (mm)

• REMOTE CONTROLLER DIMENSIONS



• INSTALLATION METHOD



NOTE)1. REMOTE CONTROLLER CORD AND STAPLE ARE NOT ATTACHED. THEY ARE FIELD SUPPLIED PARTS.

• SPECIFICATIONS OF CORD

	FOR AUSTRALIA	FOR OTHER COUNTRIES
TYPE	SHIELD WIRE (INSULATED THICKNESS:1mm OR MORE)	VINYL CORD WITH SHEATH OR CABLE (INSULATED THICKNESS:1mm OR MORE)
SIZE	0.75~1.25mm²	
TOTAL LENGTH	500m	

3D048117

4.1.2 Features and Functions

The BRC1D61 is a state of the art remote controller that offers full control over your installation.

1 BASIC REMOTE CONTROLLER

The basic remote controller functions are:
- ON/OFF,
- operation mode change-over,
- temperature adjustment,
- air volume adjustment
- air flow direction adjustment.

2 CLOCK FUNCTION

The clock functions are:
- 24 hours real time clock,
- day of the week indicator.

3 SCHEDULE TIMER FUNCTION

The schedule timer functions are:
- a maximum of 5 actions can be programmed for each day of the week (totalling 35 actions),
- schedule timer can be enabled/disabled at any time,
- linked to a set temperature or a LIMIT operation or an OFF operation,
- "last command" overrules previous command until next scheduled command.

4 LIMIT OPERATION

Limit operation provides thermostat control within the range of the set minimum and maximum temperature. The minimum temperature setting will trigger heating, the maximum temperature setting will trigger cooling.

5 LEAVE HOME

The leave home function prevents the room temperature from dropping when the occupants are out for a longer period. If the room temperature drops below 10°C, heating is started automatically. As soon as 15°C is reached, the controller returns to its original status.

6 BUTTON PERMISSION LEVEL

Three hierarchical permission levels can be set to limit the user action.

4.1.3 Names and Functions

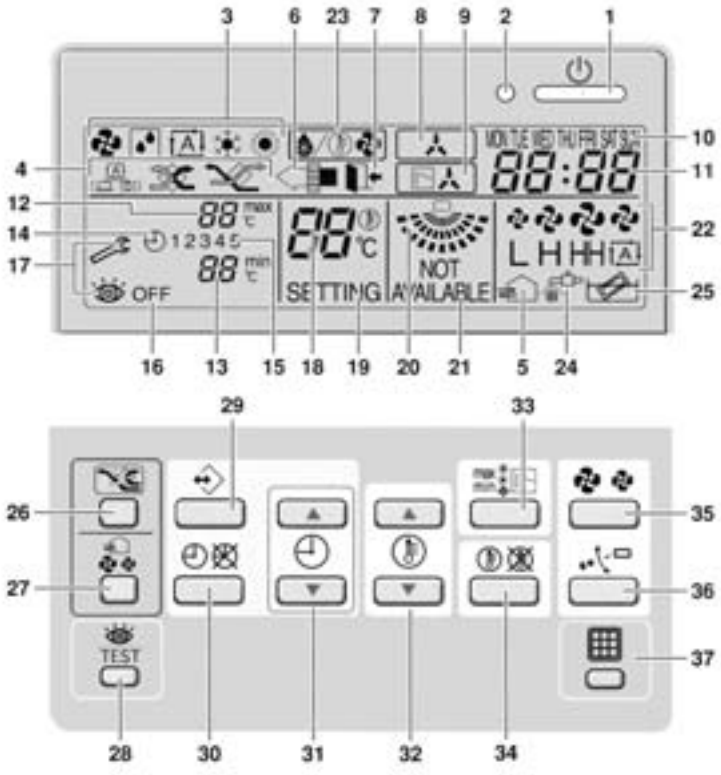


Figure 1

3P107422-3D

4.1.4 Name and Function of Switches and Icons (Refer to figure 1)

1 ON/OFF BUTTON

Press the ON/OFF button to start or stop the system.

2 OPERATION LAMP

The operation lamp lights up during operation or blinks if a malfunction occurs.

3 OPERATION MODE ICON

These icons indicate the current operation mode (FAN, DRY, AUTOMATIC, COOLING, HEATING).

4 VENTILATION MODE ICON

These icons indicate the current ventilation mode (HRV only) (AUTOMATIC, HEAT EXCHANGE, BYPASS).

5 VENTILATION ICON

The ventilation icon appears when the ventilation is adjusted with the ventilation amount button (HRV only). Simultaneously, the ventilation amount is indicated by the fan speed icon (see 22).

6 AIR CLEANING ICON

This icon indicates that the air cleaning unit (option) is operational.

7 LEAVE HOME ICON

The leave home icon shows the status of the leave home function.

ON	Leave home is enabled
FLASHING	Leave home is active
OFF	Leave home is disabled

8 EXTERNAL CONTROL ICON

This icon indicates that another controller with higher priority is controlling or disabling your installation.

9 CHANGE-OVER UNDER CENTRALISED CONTROL ICON

This icon indicates that the change-over of the installation is under centralised control assigned to another indoor unit or optional cool/heat selector connected to the outdoor unit (= master remote controller).

10 DAY OF THE WEEK INDICATOR
MON TUE WED THU FRI SAT SUN

The day of the week indicator shows the current week day (or the set day when reading or programming the schedule timer).

11 CLOCK DISPLAY 88:88

The clock display indicates the current time (or the action time when reading or programming the schedule timer).

12 MAXIMUM SET TEMPERATURE 88 max °C

The maximum set temperature indicates the maximum set temperature when in limit operation.

13 MINIMUM SET TEMPERATURE 88 min °C

The minimum set temperature indicates the minimum set temperature when in limit operation.

14 SCHEDULE TIMER ICON

This icon indicates that the schedule timer is enabled.

15 ACTION ICONS 1 2 3 4 5

These icons indicate the actions for each day of the schedule timer.

16 OFF ICON OFF

This icon indicates that the OFF action is selected when programming the schedule timer.

17 INSPECTION REQUIRED and

These icons indicate that inspection is required. Consult your installer.

18 SET TEMPERATURE DISPLAY 88 °C

This indicates the current set temperature of the installation (not shown in LIMIT operation or in FAN or DRY mode).

19 SETTING SETTING

Not used, for service purposes only.

20 AIR FLOW DIRECTION ICON

This icon indicates the air flow direction (only for installations with motorised air flow flaps).

21 NOT AVAILABLE NOT AVAILABLE

NOT AVAILABLE is displayed whenever a non-installed option is addressed or a function is not available.

22 FAN SPEED ICON L H HH A

This icon indicates the set fan speed.

23 DEFROST/HOTSTART MODE ICON

This icon indicates that the defrost/hotstart mode is active.

24 AIR FILTER CLEANING TIME ICON

This icon indicates the air filter must be cleaned. Refer to the manual of the indoor unit.

25 ELEMENT CLEANING TIME ICON

This icon indicates the element must be cleaned (HRV only).

26 VENTILATION MODE BUTTON

The ventilation mode button operates the HRV; refer to the HRV manual for more details.

3P107422-3D

27 VENTILATION AMOUNT BUTTON

This button sets the ventilation amount; refer to the HRV manual for more details.

28 INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON TEST

Not used, for service purposes only.

29 PROGRAMMING BUTTON

This button is a multi-purpose button.

Depending on the previous manipulations of the user, the programming button can have various functions.

30 SCHEDULE TIMER BUTTON

This button enables or disables the schedule timer.

31 TIME ADJUST BUTTON

These buttons are used to adjust the clock or, when in programming mode, to adjust the programmed action time. Both buttons have an auto-repeat function.

32 TEMPERATURE ADJUST BUTTONS

These buttons are used to adjust the current setpoint or, when in programming mode, to adjust the programmed setpoint temperature (step = 1°C). Both buttons are also used to adjust the day of the week.

33 OPERATION CHANGE/MIN-MAX BUTTON

This button is a multi-purpose button. Depending on the previous manipulations of the user, it can have following functions:

1 select the operation mode of the installation (FAN, DRY, AUTOMATIC, COOLING, HEATING)

2 toggle between minimum temperature and maximum temperature when in limit operation

34 SETPOINT/LIMIT BUTTON

This button toggles between setpoint, limit operation or OFF (programming mode only).

35 FAN SPEED BUTTON

This button toggles between L (Low), H (High), HH (very High), A (Automatic).

36 AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST BUTTON

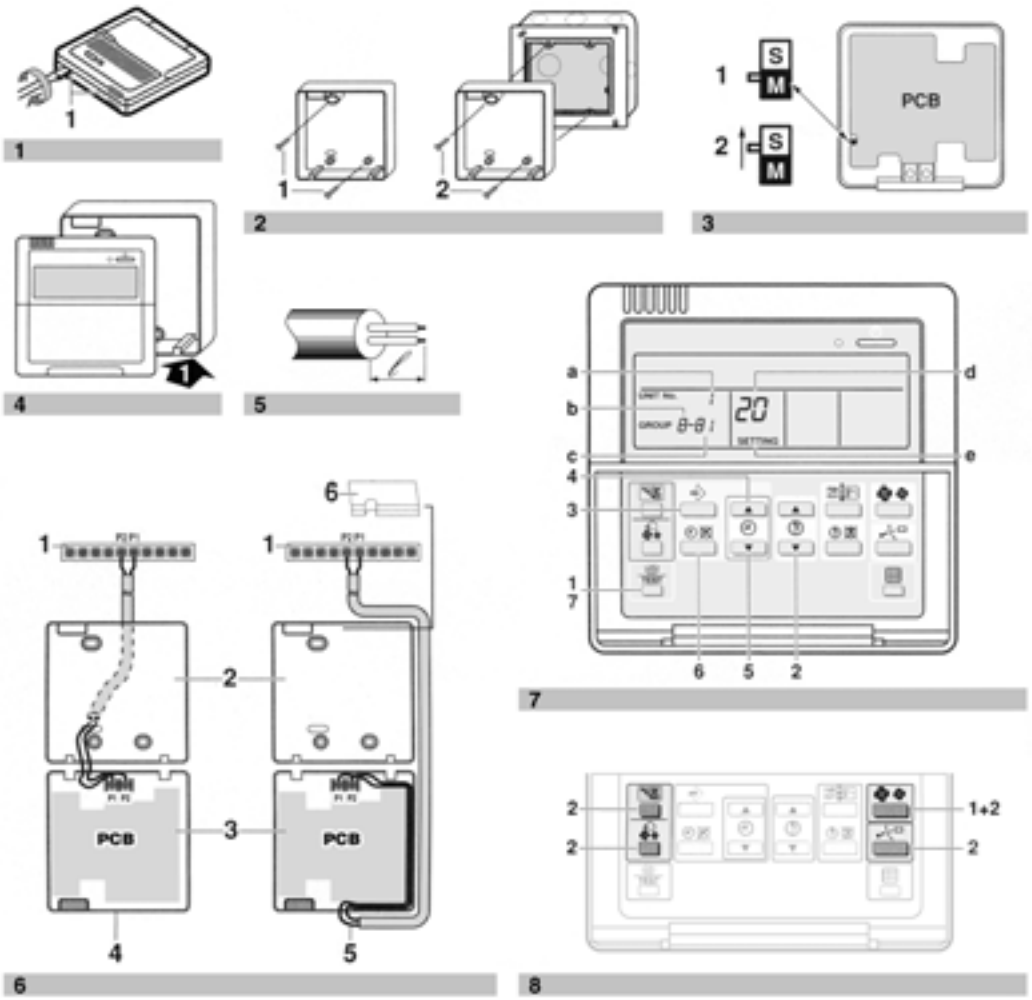
This button enables to adjust the air flow direction.

37 AIR FILTER CLEANING TIME ICON RESET BUTTON

This button is used to reset the air filter cleaning time icon.

3P107422-3D

4.1.5 Installation



3P107422-4D

The kit includes the following parts:

Remote controller	Wood screws
	

Wall plugs	Machine screws
	

1. Remove the upper part of remote controller (Refer to figure 1)

Insert a minus screwdriver into the slots (1) in the lower part of the remote controller (2 places), and remove the upper part of the remote controller.

The PC board is mounted in the upper part of the remote controller. Be careful not to damage the board with the minus screwdriver.

2. Fasten the remote controller (Refer to figure 2)

1 for exposed mounting, fasten with the two included wood screws (Ø4x30) and plugs.

2 for flush-mounting, fasten with the two included machine screws (M4x16).

For the field supplied switch box, use optional accessory KJB111A or KJB211A.

NOTE Choose the flattest place possible for the mounting surface. Be careful not to distort the shape of the lower part of the remote controller by overtightening the mounting screws.

3. Wire the indoor unit (Refer to figure 6)

1 indoor unit

2 lower part of the remote controller

3 upper part of the remote controller

4 wired from the rear

5 wired from the top

6 notch the part for the wiring to pass through with nippers, etc.

Connect the terminals on top of the upper part of the remote controller (P1, P2), and the terminals of the indoor unit (P1, P2). (P1 and P2 do not have polarity.)

NOTE When wiring, run the wiring away from the power supply wiring in order to avoid receiving electric noise (external noise).

Wiring specifications

Wiring type	Size
2 wire	0.75–1.25 mm^2

NOTE Peel the shield for the part that has to pass through the inside of the remote controller case (⟋). Refer to figure 5.

4. Reattach the upper part of the remote controller

Be careful not to pinch the wiring when attaching.

Refer to figure 4:

First begin fitting from the clips at the bottom.

NOTE
1. The switch box and wiring for connection are not included.
2. Do not directly touch the PC board with your hand.

If controlling one indoor unit or one group of indoor units with two remote controllers

Change the MAIN/SUB changeover switch setting as described below (Refer to figure 3).

1 Main remote controller (factory set)

2 Sub remote controller

Set one remote controller to "main", and the other to "sub".

NOTE
1. If controlling with one remote controller, be sure to set it to "main".
2. Set the remote controller before turning the power supply on.

"88" is displayed for about one minute when the power supply is turned on. During this time the remote controller can not be operated.

3P107422-4D

5. Permission level function

■ If required, you can limit the user action by restricting the number of operable buttons. Refer to the chapter "Field settings".

Level	Operable buttons
1	All
2	• on/off button • schedule timer button • temperature adjust button • operation change/MIN-MAX button • fan speed button • air flow direction adjust button
3	• on/off button • temperature adjust button • fan speed button

■ For switching between level 1 permission and the selected level in service, proceed as follows:

1 Keep the fan speed button " " pressed,

2 and press the 3 other indicated keys simultaneously while keeping the fan speed button " " pressed.

Refer to figure 8.

■ If you want to limit the user action on the remote controller to be defined as "sub", start with only connecting this controller to the unit. Make sure that this controller is set to "main" (factory set) first, change the permission level to the setting you prefer and only then set the remote controller to "sub".
You can now proceed with connecting the remote controller to be defined as "main".

6. Field settings

If optional accessories are mounted on the indoor unit, the indoor unit setting may have to be changed. Refer to the instruction manual for each optional accessory.

Refer to figure 7.

a Unit NO
b First Code NO
c Second Code NO
d Mode NO
e Field set mode

Procedure (Refer to figure 7)

1 When in the normal mode, press the " TEST " button for a minimum of four seconds, and the FIELD SET MODE is entered.

2 Select the desired MODE NO. with the " " button.

3 During group control, when setting by each indoor unit (mode No. 20, 21, 22 and 23 have been selected), push the " " button and select the INDOOR UNIT NO. to be set. (This operation is unnecessary when setting by group.)

4 Push the " " upper button and select FIRST CODE NO.

5 Push the " " lower button and select the SECOND CODE NO.

6 Push the " " button once and the present settings are SET.

7 Push the " TEST " button to return to the NORMAL MODE.

Example

If during group setting and the time to clean the air filter is set to FILTER CONTAMINATION - HEAVY, SET MODE NO. to "10", FIRST CODE NO. to "0", and SECOND CODE NO. to "02".

NOTE

1. Setting is carried out in the group mode, however, if the mode number inside the parentheses is selected, indoor units can also be set individually.
2. The SECOND CODE number is set to "01" when shipped from the factory.
3. Do not make any settings not given in the table.
4. Not displayed if the indoor unit is not equipped with that function.
5. When returning to the normal mode, "88" may be displayed in the LCD in order for the remote controller to initialize itself.
6. It is not possible to change field settings on the remote controller that is set to "sub".

3P107422-4D

Mode No. Note 1	FIRST CODE NO.	Description of setting		SECOND CODE NO. Note 2			
				01	02	03	04
10(20)	0	Filter Contamination - Heavy/Light (Setting for spacing time of display time to clean air filter) (Setting for when filter contamination is heavy, and spacing time of display time to clean air filter is to be halved)	Ultra long life filter	Light: Approx. 10.000 hrs.	Heavy: Approx. 5.000 hrs.	—	—
			Long life filter	Light: Approx. 2.500 hrs.	Heavy: Approx. 1.250 hrs.		
			Standard filter	Light: Approx. 200 hrs.	Heavy: Approx. 100 hrs.		
	1	Long-life filter type (setting of filter sign indication time). (Change setting when ultra-long filter is installed)		Long-life filter	Ultra-long life filter	—	—
	2	Thermostat sensor in remote controller		Use	Not use	—	—
	3	Spacing time of display time to clean air filter count (setting for when the filter sign is not to be displayed)		Display	Do not display	—	—
11(21)	0	Setting number of connected Sky Air simultaneous operation system indoor units (setting for simultaneous operations system)		Pair	Twin	Triple	Double twin
12(22)	1	ON/OFF input from outside (setting for when forced ON/OFF is to be operated from outside).		Forced OFF	ON/OFF operation	—	—
	2	Thermostat differential changeover (setting for when using remote sensor).		1°C	0.5°C	—	—
13(23)	0	High air outlet velocity (for high ceiling applications).		≤2.7 m	>2.7≤3.0 m	>3.0≤3.5 m	—
	1	Selection of air flow direction (setting for when a blocking pad kit has been installed).		4-way flow	3-way flow	2-way flow	—
	3	Selection of air flow function (setting for when using a decoration panel for outlet).		Equipped	Not equipped	—	—
	4	Air flow direction range setting.		Upper	Normal	Lower	—
	6	Setting the external static pressure (setting according to the connected duct resistance) (for FHYK, follow the high ceiling setting)		Normal (Normal)	High static pressure (High ceiling)	Low static pressure —	—
15(25)	3	Drain pump operation with humidifying.		Equipped	Not equipped	—	—
1b	0	Permission level setting		Level 2	Level 3	—	—
	1	Leave home function		Not permitted	Permitted	—	—
	2	Thermostat sensor in remote controller (for limit operation and leave home function only)		Use	Not use	—	—

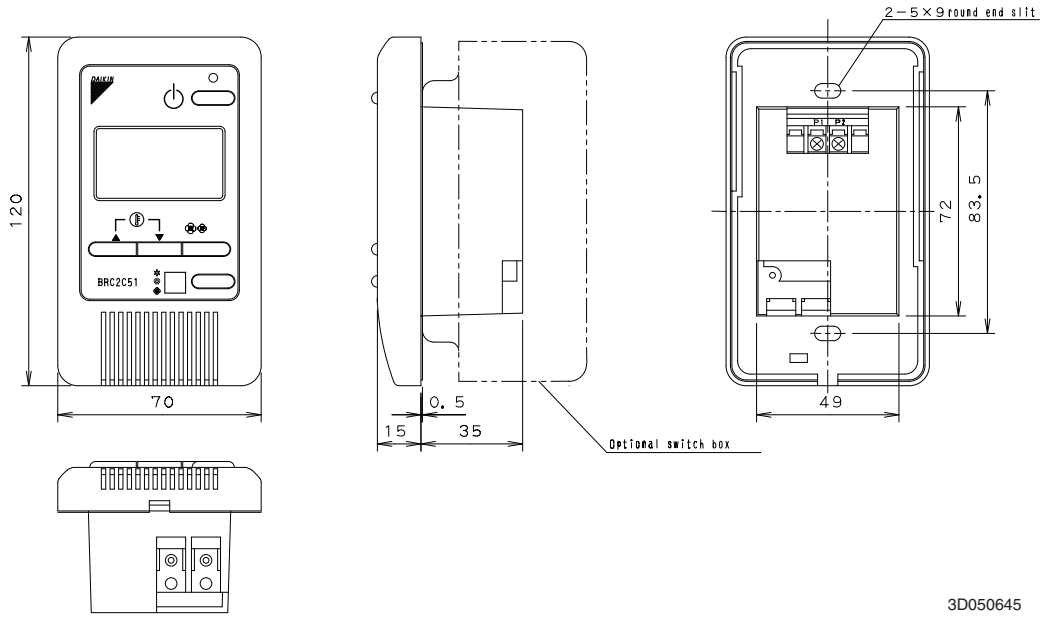
3P107422-4D

5. Simplified Remote Controller

5.1 BRC2C51

5.1.1 Dimension

Unit: mm

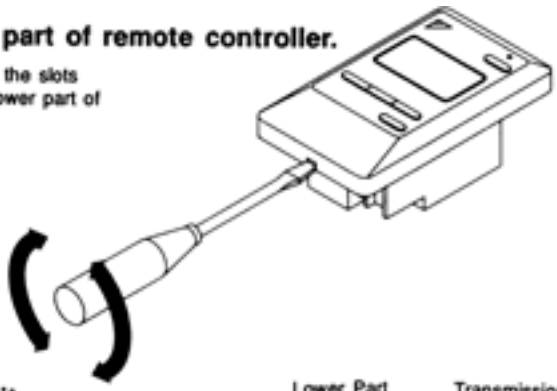


3D050645

5.1.2 Installation

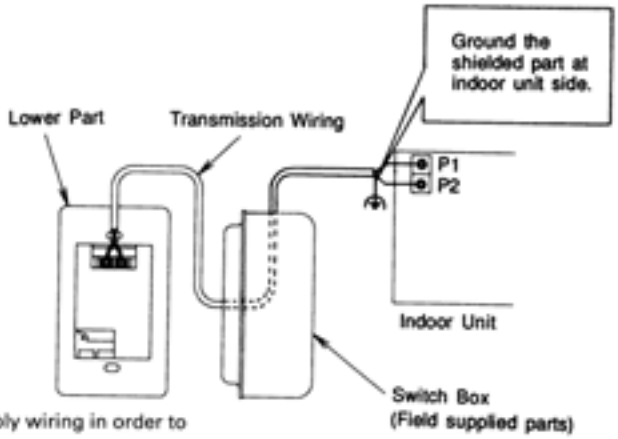
1. Remove the upper part of remote controller.

Insert minus screwdriver into the slots between the upper and the lower part of remote controller.



2. Wire the indoor unit.

Connect terminals P1 and P2 on the rear of the lower part of remote controller to terminals P1 and P2 on the indoor unit. (Terminals P1 and P2 have no polarity.)



NOTE

1. When wiring, run the wiring away from the power supply wiring in order to avoid receiving electric noise (external noise).
2. When wiring, refer to the wiring diagram of indoor unit (attached to indoor unit) as well.

WIRING SPECIFICATION

Wiring type	Shield wire (2 wire) (See NOTE 2,3)
Size	0.75 – 1.25 mm^2

NOTE) 1. Treat the terminal for the wire to be connected to the remote controller so the shielded part does not touch any other part.
2. Sheathed wire may be used for transmission wirings, but they do not comply with EMC (Electromagnetic Compatibility) (European Directive).
When using sheathed wire, EMC must conform to Japanese standards stipulated in the Electric Appliance Regulatory Act. (If using a sheathed wire, the grounding shown the figure on the right is unnecessary.)

3PA52943C

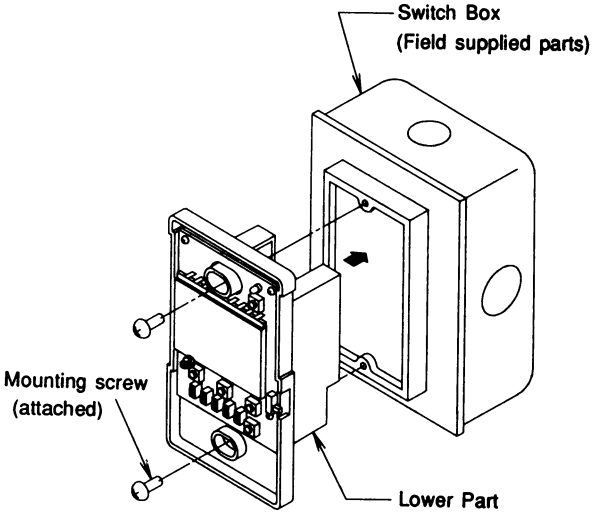
3. Fasten the remote controller.

Attach the lower part of remote controller to the switch box (field supplied parts).

NOTE

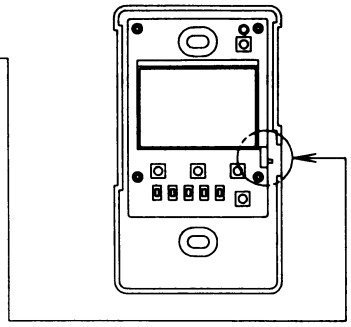
Choose the flattest place possible for the mounting surface. Be careful not to distort the shape of the lower part of remote controller by over-tightening the mounting screws.

For the field supplied switch box, use optional accessories KJB111A.



4. Initial setting

Change the MAIN/SUB changeover switch setting as described below.
If controlling one indoor unit with two remote controllers.
Set one remote controller to "main," and the other to "sub."



Main Remote Controller (Factory Set)

Sub Remote Controller

NOTE

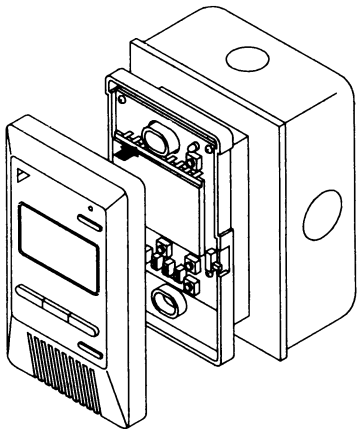
- If controlling with one remote controller, be sure to set it to "main."
- Set the remote controller before turning power supply on.

"88" is displayed for about one minute when the power supply is turned on, and the remote controller cannot be operated in some cases.

5. Reattach the upper part of remote controller.

NOTE

1. The switch box and wiring for connection are not included.
2. Do not directly touch the PC board with your hand.



3PA52943C

FIELD SETTING

(If optional accessories are mounted on the indoor unit, the indoor unit setting may have to be changed. Refer to the instruction manual for each optional accessory.)

Procedure

① Remove the upper part of remote controller.

② When in the normal mode, press the [BS6] BUTTON (field set), and the FIELD SET MODE is entered.

③ Select the desired MODE No. with the [BS2] BUTTON (temperature setting ▲) and the [BS3] BUTTON (temperature setting ▼).

④ During group control, when setting by each indoor unit (mode No. 20, 22 and 23 have been selected), push the [BS8] BUTTON (unit no.) and select the INDOOR UNIT NO. to be set. (This operation is unnecessary when setting by group.)

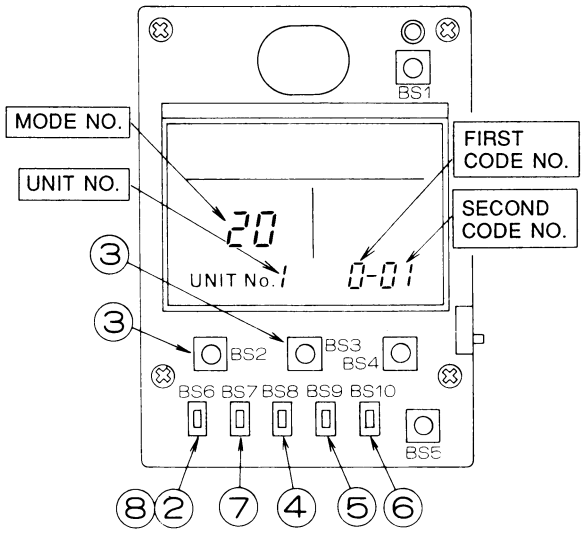
⑤ Push the [BS9] BUTTON (set A) and select FIRST CODE NO.

⑥ Push the [BS10] BUTTON (set B) and select SECOND CODE NO.

⑦ Push the [BS7] BUTTON (set/cancel) once and the present settings are SET.

⑧ Push the [BS6] BUTTON (field set) to return to the NORMAL MODE.

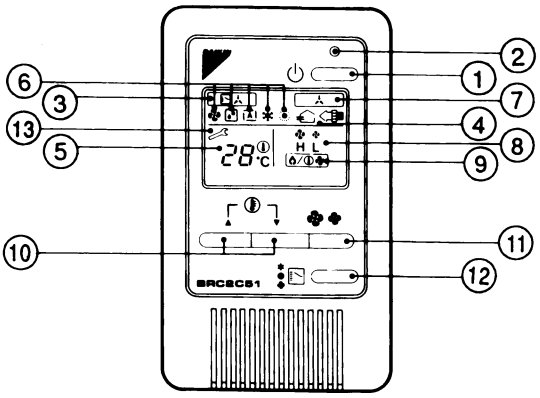
(Example) If during group setting and the time to clean air filter is set to FILTER CONTAMINATION - HEAVY, SET MODE NO. to "10," FIRST CODE NO. to "0," and SECOND CODE NO. to "02."



Mode No. Note) 1	FIRST CODE No.	Description of Setting		SECOND CODE No. Note) 2				
				01		02		03
10(20) Note) 6	0	Filter Contamination - Heavy/Light (Setting for spacing time of display time to clean air filter) (Setting for when filter contamination is heavy, and spacing time of display time to clean air filter is to be halved)	Long Life Filter	Light	Approx. 2,500 Hrs.	Heavy	Approx. 1,250 Hrs.	—
			Standard Filter		Approx. 200 Hrs.		Approx 100 Hrs.	
	3	Spacing Time of Display Time to Clean Air Filter Count (Setting for when the filter sign is not to be displayed)		Display		Do Not Display		—
12(22)	1	ON/OFF Input from Outside. (Setting for when forced ON/OFF is to be operated from outside.)		Forced OFF		ON/OFF Operation		
	2	Thermostat Differential Changeover (Setting for when using the remote sensor) FXYC, FXYF, FXYK or FXYH only		1°C		0.5°C		—
13(23)	0	High Air Outlet Velocity (Setting for when installed in a high ceiling) FXYF only		2.7 m or less		More than 2.7 m; 3.0 m or less		More than 3.0 m; 3.5 m or less
	1	Selection of Air Flow Direction (Setting for when a blocking pad kit has been installed) FXYF only		4-way flow		3-way flow		2-way flow
15(25)	1	Humidifying with thermostat OFF		Not equipped		Equipped		
	3	Drain pump operation with humidifying		Not equipped		Equipped		

NOTE) 1. Setting is carried out in the group mode, however, if the mode number inside the parentheses is selected, indoor units can also be set individually.
2. The SECOND CODE number. is set to "01" when shipped from the factory.
3. Do not make any settings not given in the table on the left.
4. Not displayed if the indoor unit is not equipped with that function.
5. When returning to the normal mode, "88" may be displayed in the LCD in order for the remote controller to initialize itself.
6. This mode is used to set the time until the display time to clean air filter lights up when using central remote controller.

3PA52946A



REMOTE CONTROLLER: NAME AND FUNCTION OF EACH SWITCH AND DISPLAY	
①	**ON/OFF BUTTON** Press the button and the system will start. Press the button again and the system will stop.
②	**OPERATION LAMP (RED)** The lamp lights up during operation. Blinks in case of stop due to malfunction.
③	**DISPLAY " [ ] " (CHANGEOVER UNDER CONTROL)** It is impossible to changeover heat/cool with the remote controller when it shows this display. (As for details, see " SETTING OF MASTER REMOTE CONTROLLER" in the operation manual attached to the indoor unit.)
④	**DISPLAY " OPTION " (VENTILATION)** This display shows that the total heat exchanger (HRV) are in operation.
⑤	**DISPLAY "28 °C "(SET TEMPERATURE)** This display shows the set temperature. Only given during a cooling or heating operation.
⑥	**DISPLAY " " " " " " " " " " (OPERATION MODE)** This display shows current OPERATION MODE. " " is not available with outdoor units specially designed for cooling only. " A " is reserved only for outdoor units capable of heat recovery.
⑦	**DISPLAY " [ ] " (UNDER CENTRALIZED CONTROL)** When this display shows, the system is UNDER CENTRALIZED CONTROL. (This is not a standard specification)
⑧	**DISPLAY " H " " L " (FAN SPEED).** The display shows the fan speed: "HIGH" or "LOW".
⑨	**DISPLAY " [ ] " (DEFROST/ HOT START)** Indicates that defrost or hot start (during which the fan is stopped till the temperature of air supply rises enough at the start of a heating run) is progress.
⑩	**TEMPERATURE SETTING BUTTON** Use this button for SETTING TEMPERATURE of the thermostat. ▲ ; Each press raises the set temperature by 1°C. ▼ ; Each press lowers the set temperature by 1°C. The variable temperature range is 16°C to 32°C.
⑪	**FAN SPEED CONTROL BUTTON** Press this button to select the fan speed, HIGH or LOW, of your choice.
⑫	**OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON** Press this button to select OPERATION MODE.
⑬	**DISPLAY " " (MALFUNCTION)** Indicates malfunction and blinks if the unit stops operating due to malfunction. (As for details, see "TROUBLE SHOOTING" in the operation manual attached to the indoor unit.)
For the sake of explanation, all indications are shown in the figure above contrary to actual running situations.	

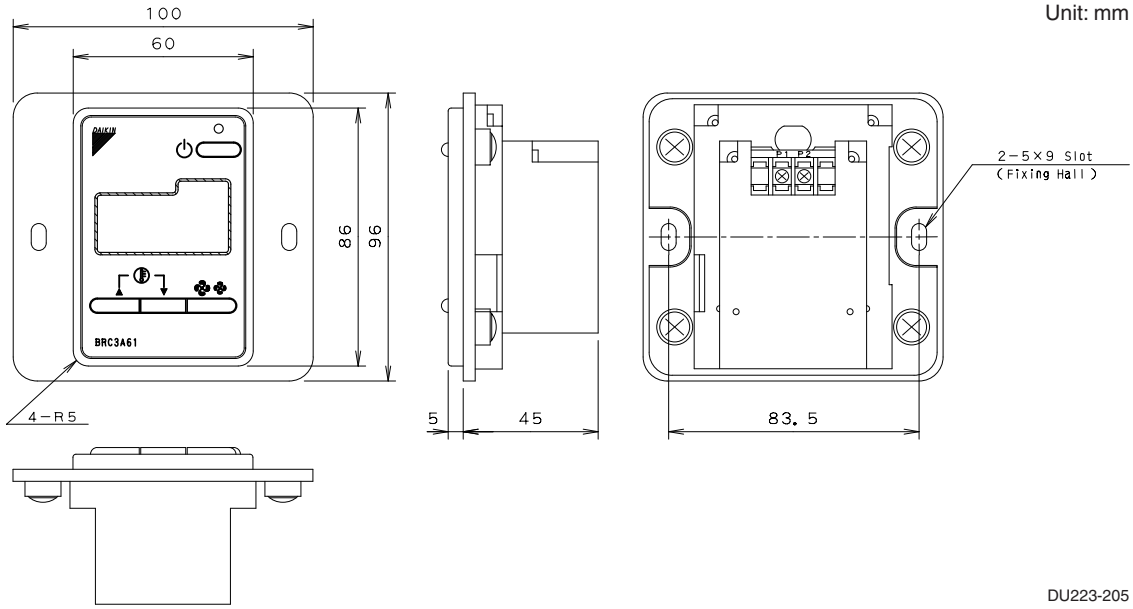
C: 2PA52942

6. Remote Controller for Hotel Use

6.1 BRC3A61

6.1.1 Dimension

Unit: mm

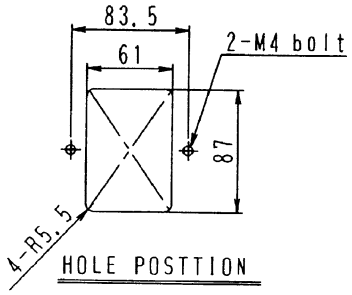


DU223-205

6.1.2 Installation

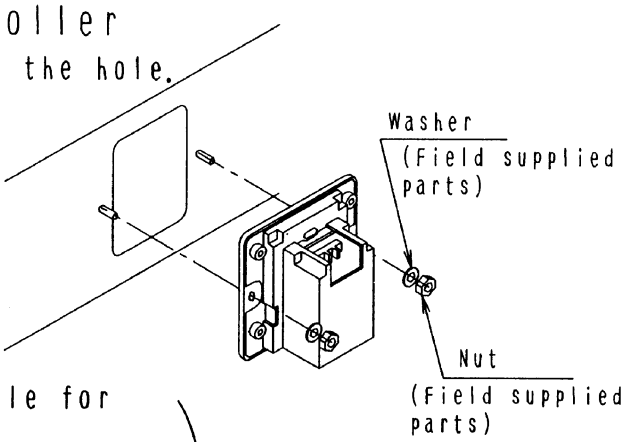
1, Prepare for the fixing panel

Open a hole in the panel and install two mounting bolt at below.



2, Attach the remote controller

Attach the remote controller to the hole.



(Choose the flattest place possible for the mounting surface.
Be careful not to distort the shape of the casing of remote controller by over-lightening the nuts.)

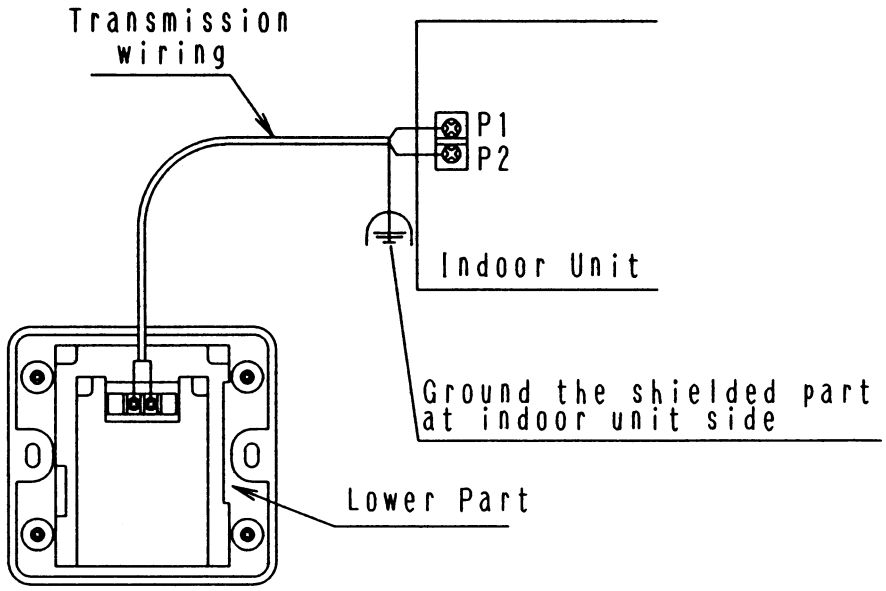
《 PRECAUTION 》

1. The washers and nuts are not included.
2. Do not directly touch the PC board with your hand.

3PA61527

3, Wire the indoor unit.

Connect terminals P1 and P2 on the rear of the lower part of remote controller to terminals P1 and P2 on the indoor unit. (Terminals P1 and P2 have no polarity)



《 PRECAUTION 》

① When wiring, run the wiring away the power supply wiring in order to avoid receiving electric noise (ex-ternal noise)

② When wiring, refer to the wiring diagram of indoor unit (attached to indoor unit) as well.

WIRING SPECIFICATION

Wiring type	Shield wire (2 wire)(See NOTE 2)
Size	0.75～1.25mm²

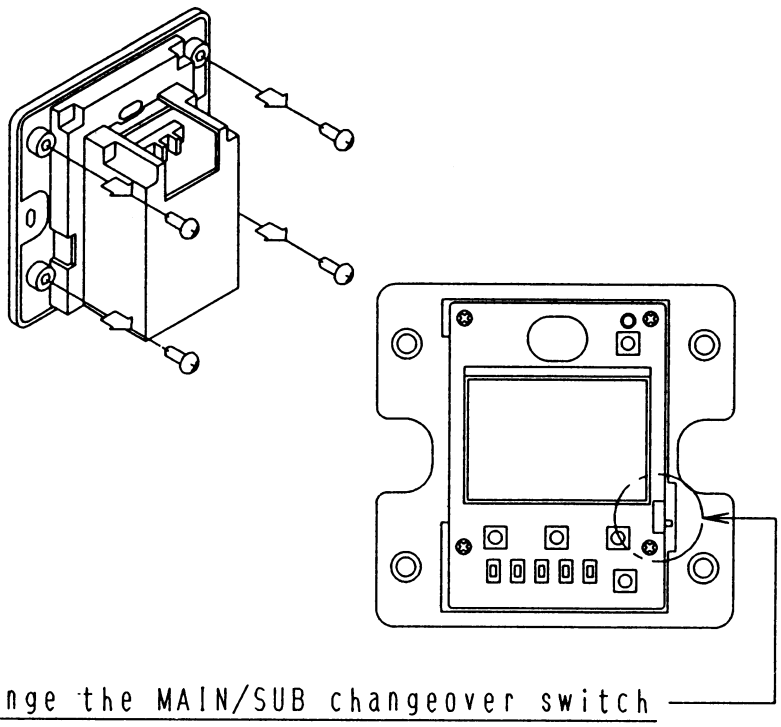
NOTE)

1. Treat the terminal for the wire to be connected to the remote controller so the shielded part does not touch any other part.
2. Sheathed wire may be used for transmission wirings. If using a sheathed wire, as for Electromagnetic Compatibility the system must conform to the Electrical Appliance And Material Control Law Of Japan.

3PA61527

4, Initial setting

Remove the screws(×4) and remove the lower part of remote controller.



If controlling one indoor unit with two remote controlles setting as described below. Set one remote controller to 'MAIN', and the other to' SUB'

Main Remote Controller (Factory Set)

Sub Remote Controller

《 PRECAUTION 》

- If controling with one remote controller, be sure to set it to 'MAIN'
- Set the remote controller before turning power supply on.

'88' is displayed for about one minute when the power supply is turned on, and the remote controller cannot be operated in some cases.

3PA61527

FIELD SETTING

(If optional accessories are mounted on the indoor unit, the indoor unit setting may have to be changed. Refer to the instruction manual for each optional accessory.)

Procedure

① Remove the upper part of remote controller.

② When in the normal mode, press the [BS6] BUTTON (field set), and the FIELD SET MODE is entered.

③ Select the desired MODE No. with the [BS2] BUTTON (temperature setting ▲) and the [BS3] BUTTON (temperature setting ▼).

④ During group control, when setting by each indoor unit (mode No. 20, 22 and 23 have been selected), push the [BS8] BUTTON (unit no.) and select the INDOOR UNIT NO. to be set. (This operation is unnecessary when setting by group.)

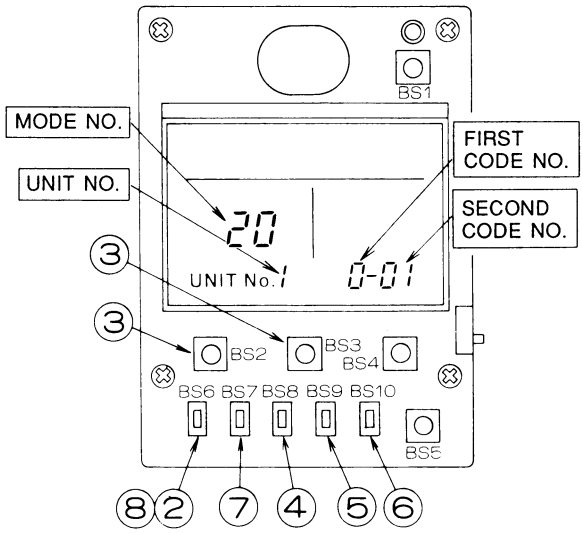
⑤ Push the [BS9] BUTTON (set A) and select FIRST CODE NO.

⑥ Push the [BS10] BUTTON (set B) and select SECOND CODE NO.

⑦ Push the [BS7] BUTTON (set/cancel) once and the present settings are SET.

⑧ Push the [BS6] BUTTON (field set) to return to the NORMAL MODE.

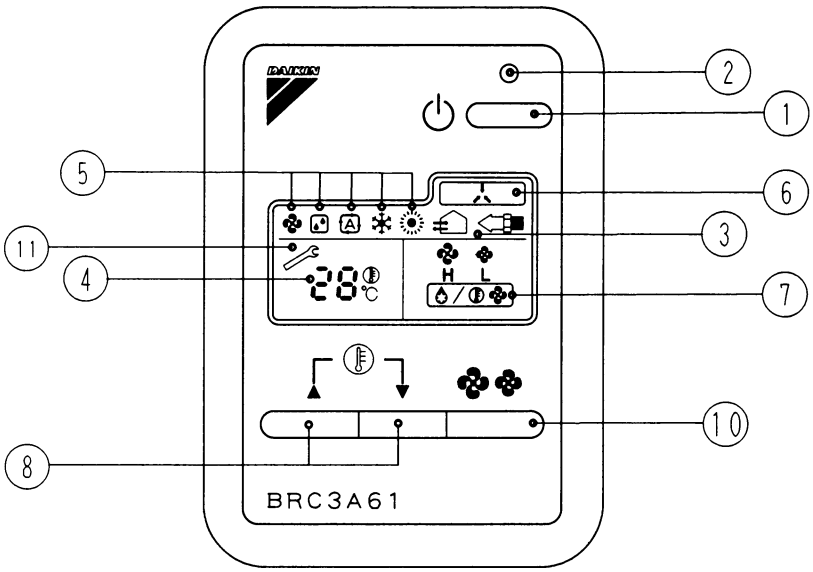
(Example) If during group setting and the time to clean air filter is set to FILTER CONTAMINATION - HEAVY, SET MODE NO. to "10," FIRST CODE NO. to "0," and SECOND CODE NO. to "02."



Mode No. Note) 1	FIRST CODE No.	Description of Setting		SECOND CODE No. Note) 2				
				01		02		03
10(20) Note) 6	0	Filter Contamination - Heavy/Light (Setting for spacing time of display time to clean air filter) (Setting for when filter contamination is heavy, and spacing time of display time to clean air filter is to be halved)	Long Life Filter	Light	Approx. 2,500 Hrs.	Heavy	Approx. 1,250 Hrs.	—
			Standard Filter		Approx. 200 Hrs.		Approx 100 Hrs.	
	3	Spacing Time of Display Time to Clean Air Filter Count (Setting for when the filter sign is not to be displayed)		Display		Do Not Display		—
12(22)	1	ON/OFF Input from Outside. (Setting for when forced ON/OFF is to be operated from outside.)		Forced OFF		ON/OFF Operation		
	2	Thermostat Differential Changeover (Setting for when using the remote sensor) FXYC, FXYF, FXYK or FXYH only		1°C		0.5°C		—
13(23)	0	High Air Outlet Velocity (Setting for when installed in a high ceiling) FXYF only		2.7 m or less		More than 2.7 m; 3.0 m or less		More than 3.0 m; 3.5 m or less
	1	Selection of Air Flow Direction (Setting for when a blocking pad kit has been installed) FXYF only		4-way flow		3-way flow		2-way flow
15(25)	1	Humidifying with thermostat OFF		Not equipped		Equipped		
	3	Drain pump operation with humidifying		Not equipped		Equipped		

NOTE) 1. Setting is carried out in the group mode, however, if the mode number inside the parentheses is selected, indoor units can also be set individually.
2. The SECOND CODE number. is set to "01" when shipped from the factory.
3. Do not make any settings not given in the table on the left.
4. Not displayed if the indoor unit is not equipped with that function.
5. When returning to the normal mode, "88" may be displayed in the LCD in order for the remote controller to initialize itself.
6. This mode is used to set the time until the display time to clean air filter lights up when using central remote controller.

3PA52946A



REMOTE CONTROLLER: NAME AND FUNCTION OF EACH SWITCH AND DISPLAY

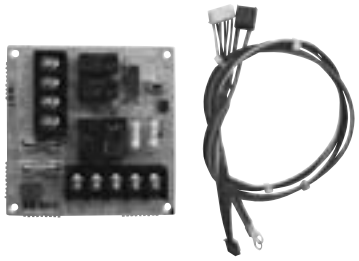
①	**ON/OFF BUTTON** Press the button and the system will start. Press the button again and the system will stop.
②	**OPERATION LAMP(RED)** The lamp lights up during operation. Blinks in case of stop due to malfunction.
③	**DISPLAY'OPTION' (VENTILATION/AIR CLEANING)** This display shows that the total heat exchange are in operation. (This is optional accessory)
④	**DISPLAY' 28℃ ' (SET TEMPERATURE)** This display shows the set temperature. Only given during a cooling or heating operation.
⑤	**DISPLAY' '' '' '' '' ' (OPERATION MODE)** This display shows current OPERATION MODE. '' is not available whis outdoor units specially designed for cooling only. '' is reserved only for outdoor units capable of heat recovery.
⑥	**DISPLAY'' (UNDER CENTRALIZED CONTROL)** When this display shows, the system is UNDER CENTRALIZED CONTROL (This is not a standard specification)
⑦	**DISPLAY' H L '(FAN SPEED)** The display shows the fan speed: 'HIGH' or 'LOW'.
⑧	**DISPLAY''(DEFROST/HOT START)** Indicates that defrost or hot start (during which the fan is stopped till the temperature of air supply rises enough at the start of a heating run)is progress.
⑨	**TEMPERATURE SETTING BUTTON** Use this button for SETTING TEMPERATURE of the thermostat. ▲:Each press raises the set temperature by 1℃ ▼:Each press lowers the set temperature by 1℃ The variable temperature range is 16℃ to 32℃.
⑩	**FAN SPEED CONTROL BUTTON** Press this button to select the fan speed, HIGHT or LOW, of your choice.
⑪	**DISPLAY' ' (MALFUNCTION)** Indicates malfunction and blinks if the unit stops operating due to malfunction. (As for details, see 'TROUBLE SHOOTING' in the operation manual attached to the indoor uint or the outdoor unit.)

(NOTE)
- For the sake of explanation, all indications are shown in the figure above contrary to actual running situations.
- This remote controller does not have "AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST BUTTON." Don't operate the flap adjusting air flow direction by your hand. (FXYF, FXYC, FXYH, FXYA, FXYK)

3PA61137

7. Adaptor for Wiring

7.1 KRP1B61



Item \ Model	KRP1B61
Dimensions (mm)	100×100
Length of lead wire (mm)	400
Accessories	PC board support. Clamp. Installation manual.

Accessories Check if the following accessories are included in the kit.

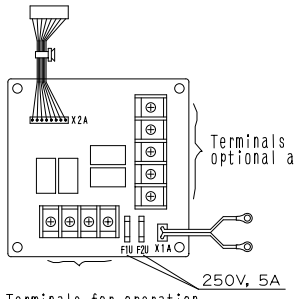
Adaptor ×1

PC board support	×4
Clamp	×3
Installation manual	×1

Notes
- Kits vary according to applicable models.
- A special adaptor fixing plate and box are required for the following models.

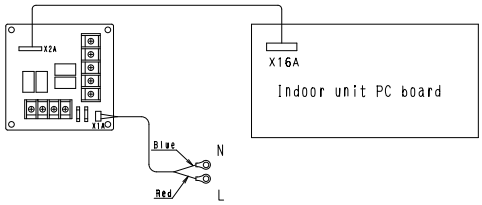
FXC(Q) ・・・・・・・・・・・・・KRP1B96

1 NAMES OF PARTS



2 ELECTRIC WIRING

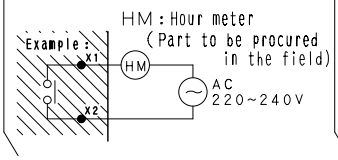
- Refer to the WIRING DIAGRAM attached to the indoor unit before attempting to wire.
  〔Make sure wires to units do not pass over the PC board when wiring.〕
- Wire the adaptor to the indoor unit as shown below.



① Fetching the operation display signal

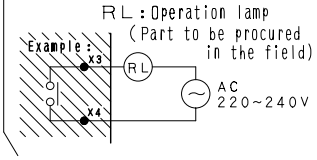
- Attaching an hour meter

Output is generated at the contact while the compressor is running.



- Fan ON display

Output is generated at the contact while the fan is running.



② If optional accessories are installed(auxiliary electric heater, humidifier)

- Wire correctly in accordance with the attached installation manual.
- Refer to the wiring diagram applied to the indoor unit when running electric wiring.

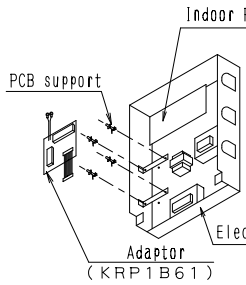
C: 2PA61563C

❸ INSTALLATION

- Installation differs according to models as shown below.
- Do not bundle low and high voltage wires together.
- Bundle any axcess wires with the attached clamps so as to keep loose wirings off the indoor unit PC board.

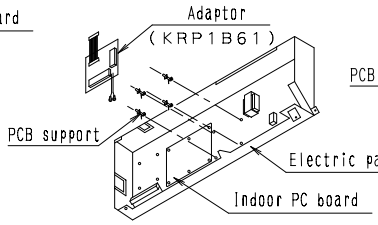
《Ceiling mounted built-in type》

FXS



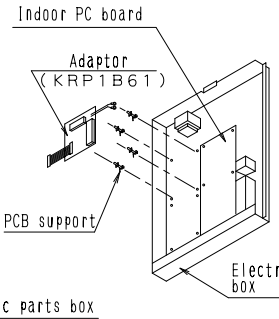
《Ceiling mounted cassette type》

FXK(Q) (Corner model)

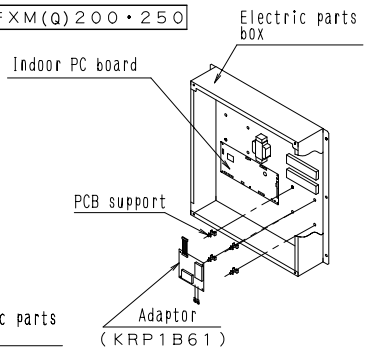


《Ceiling mounted duct type》

FXM40~125

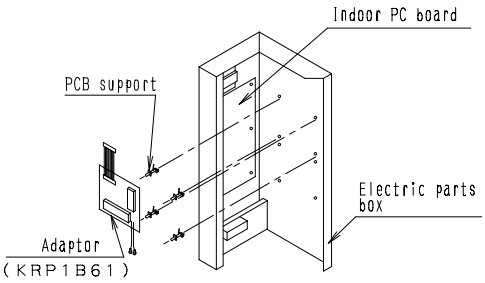


FXM(Q)200・250



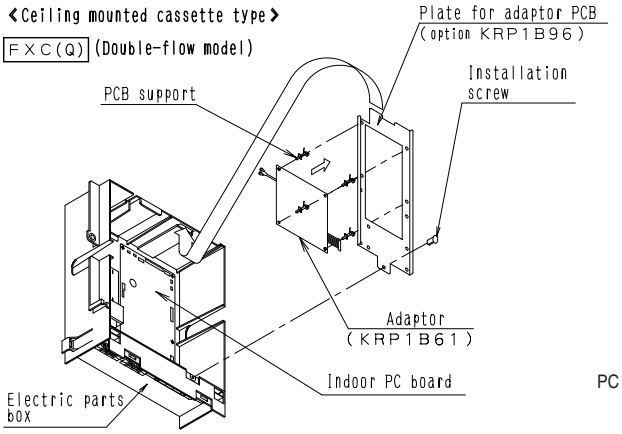
《Floor-standing type》

FXL(Q)
FXN(Q)



《Ceiling mounted cassette type》

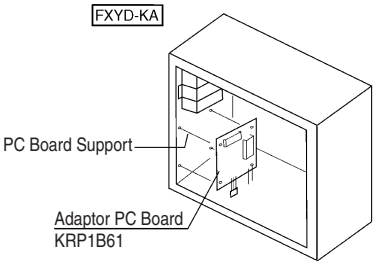
FXC(Q) (Double-flow model)



NOTE) A separate plate is needed to install the adaptor PCB.

<<Ceiling mounted low silhouette duct type>>

FXYD-KA



Note: Installation box is necessary for second adaptor

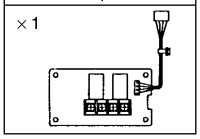
C: 2PA61563C

7.2 KRP1BA54 / KRP1B56 / KRP1BA57 / KRP1BA59

Item \ Model	KRP1BA54	KRP1B56	KRP1BA57	KRP1BA59
Dimensions (mm)	85×49			
Length of lead wire (mm)	250	2,000	1,500	500
Component parts	Wiring adaptor PCB. PCB support. Clamp. Installation manual.			

Accessories Check if the following accessories are included in the kit.

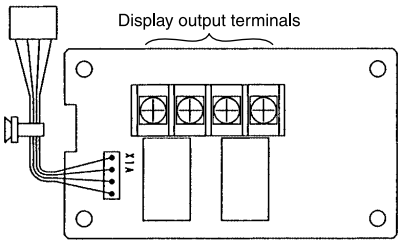
Adaptor ×1



PCB support	×4
Clamp	×3
Installation manual	×1

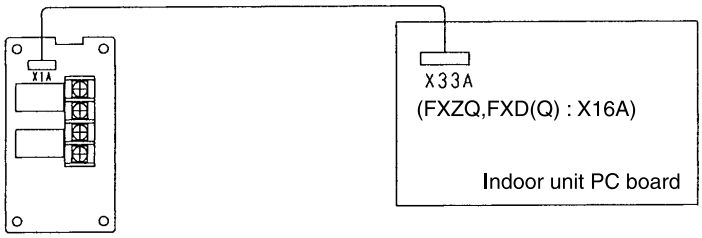
NOTE
- Kits vary according to applicable models.
- A special adaptor fixing plate and box are required for the following models.
  FXF-L·····KRP1DA98
  FXZQ, FXD(Q)·····KRP1BA101

1 NAMES OF PARTS



2 ELECTRIC WIRING

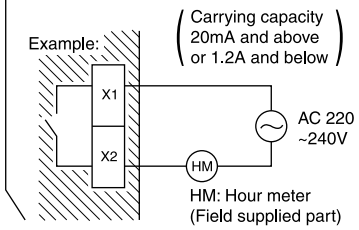
- Refer to the WIRING DIAGRAM attached to the indoor unit before attempting to wire. [Make sure wires to units do not pass over the PC board when wiring]
- Wire the adaptor to the indoor unit as described below.



○Fetching the operation display signal

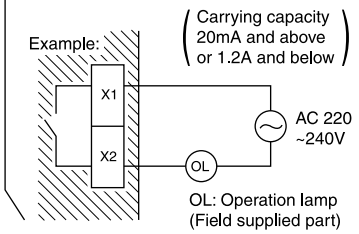
• Attaching an hour meter

Output is generated at the contact while the compressor is running.



• Fan ON display

Output is generated at the contact while the fan is running.



C: 1PA60037E

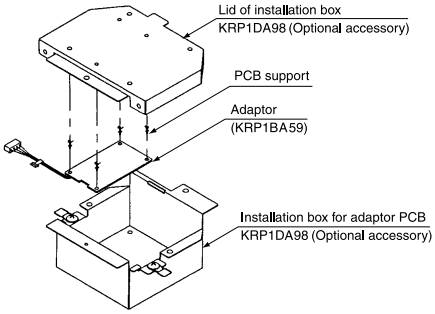
3 INSTALLATION

- Installation differs according to models as shown below. Do not bundle low and high voltage wires together.
- Bundle any excess wires with the attached tie wraps so as to keep loose wirings off the indoor unit PC board.

≪Ceiling-mounted cassette type≫

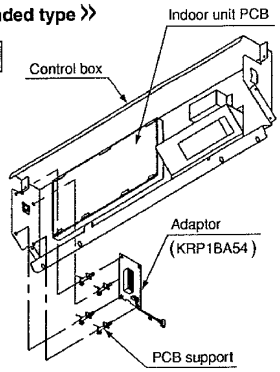
FXF (Multi-flow type)

NOTE: Installation box for adaptor PCB is required to install the adaptor.



≪Ceiling suspended type≫

FHQ · FXH(Q)

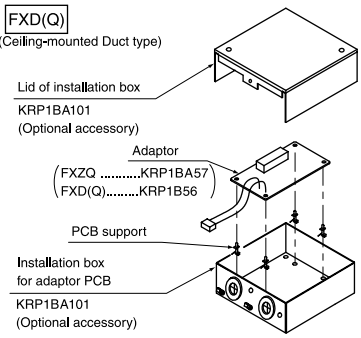


≪Ceiling-mounted cassette type≫
≪Ceiling-mounted Duct type≫

FXZQ (Compact Multi-flow type)

FXD(Q) (Ceiling-mounted Duct type)

NOTE: Installation box for adaptor PCB is required to install the adaptor.



C: 1PA60037E

7.3 KRP1C63

Accessories Check if the following accssories are included in the kit.

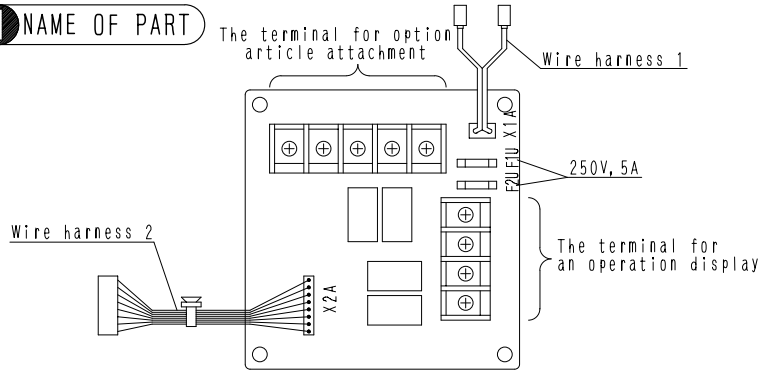
Adapter	Wire harness 1	Wire harness 2	PCB support	Clamp	Installation manual
					
×1	×1	×1	×4	×3	×1

Note

- Keep in mind that a kit changes with application models.
- An adapter attachment box is required for the following model separately.

FCQ(N)-KVEA, FXFQ-PVE・・・・・・・・・・・・KRP1H98

1 NAME OF PART

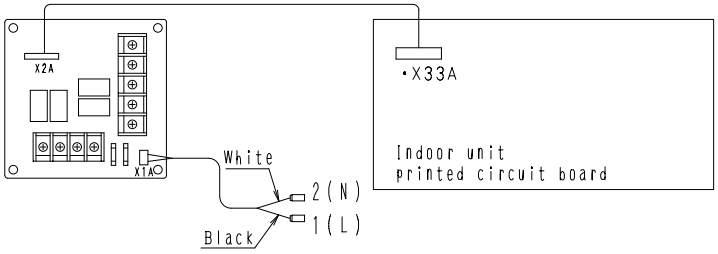


2 ELECTRIC WIRING

- Please be sure for electric wiring to do the upper work of reference of the electric wiring figure of pasting on an indoor unit.

[Be careful for wiring to apparatus not to pass along a substrate top at the time of wiring.]

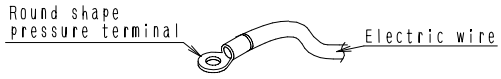
- Please wire an indoor unit main part in the following way.



The connection with the terminal base for wiring between units should use a round shape pressure connection terminal.
When you cannot use it unavoidably, Please be sure to keep the following matter.

2P178844B

≪Attention at the time of power-source wiring≫

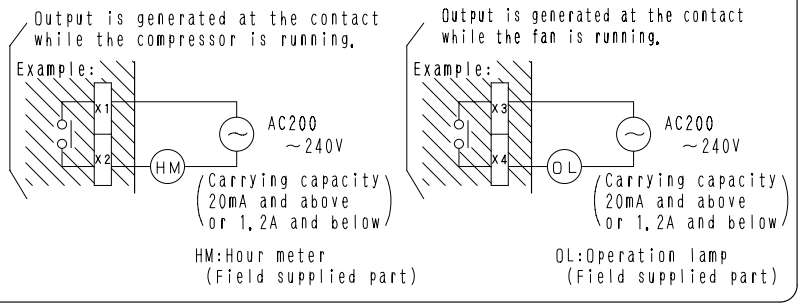


- Please do not connect two diameter electric wires of different to the terminal base for wiring between units.
  (There is fear of unusual generation of heat according to looseness of an electric wire etc.)
- It connects certainly using a predetermined electric wire, and external force wiring in a terminal part. Please fix not to be added.
- Please use a proper driver for bolting of a terminal screw thread.
  The driver of small size damages a screw-head part, and cannot perform proper bolting.
- A screw thread may be damaged if a terminal screw thread is bolted too much.
- Refer to the right table for the torque with a bunble of a terminal screw thread.

Torque with a bunble (N・m)	
The terminal base for wiring between units	1.18～1.44

○Fetching the operation display signal.

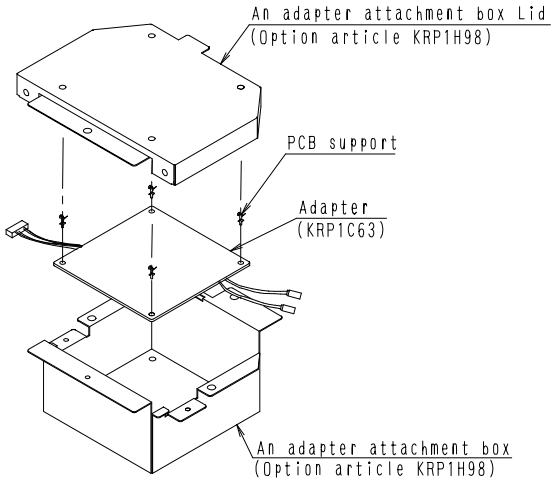
●Attaching the operation display signal ●Fan ON display



③INSTALLATION

- Means of attachment are shown below.
  However, a strong electric wire and a weak-electric-current line should not band together simultaneously.
- Please remain so that wiring does not wire on the indoor PCB, and bundle wiring of a part by attached Thailand Rapp.

FCQ(N)-KVEA
FXFQ~PVE



NOTE) An adapter attachment box is required for attachment separately.
- Please use substrate support of attachment by an adapter and attach in the adapter attachment box cover side.

2P178844B

7.4 KRP1C64

Caution

- This unit is wiring adaptor for indoor unit of ceiling-mounted duct type. Check the indoor unit model name. (As below mentioned table)
- This unit is needed to plate for adaptor PC separately.
- Refer to installation manual of plate for adaptor PC, while installing this unit.

Adaptor for wiring	Indoor unit	Plate for adaptor PC kit
KRP1C64	FBQ-DV1, FBQ-DVET FXMQ～PVE	KRP4A96

Accessories

- Check if the following accessories are included in the kit.

< Remarks >

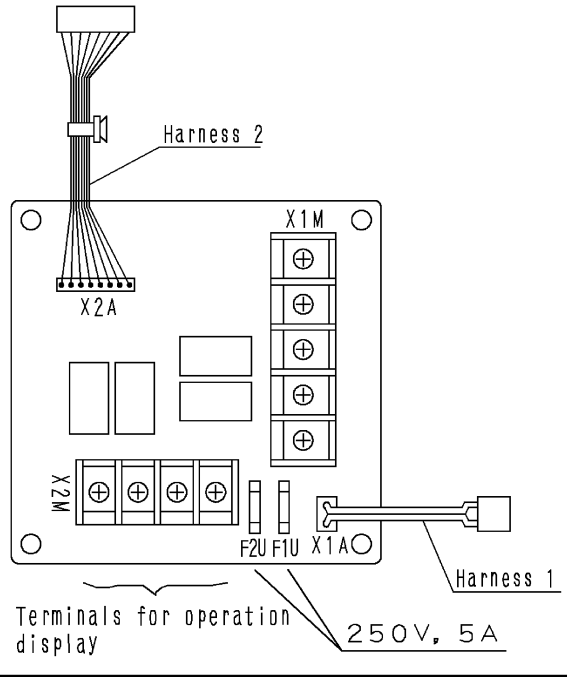
Don't throw away all parts until finished installation, because these parts are necessary for installation work.

Name	Adaptor for wiring	Harness 1	Harness 2	PC board support	Clamp	Installation manual
Shape						
Quantity	1	1	1	4	4	1

< Caution >

- All wiring must be performed by an authorized electrician.
- For electric wiring work, refer to also "Wiring diagram" attached to the control box lid and this manual.
- All wiring must be worked after shutting down power supply.
- All field supplied parts and materials and electric works must conform to local codes.
- A circuit breaker capable of shutting down power supply to the entire system must be installed.

1 NAMES OF PARTS



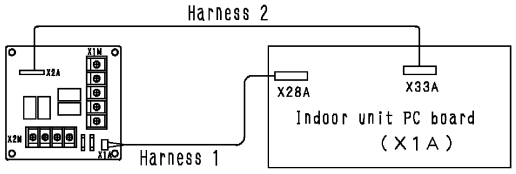
C: 3P226298

②ELECTRIC WIRING

- Refer to the WIRING DIAGRAM attached to the indoor unit before attempting to wire.

  〔Make sure wires to units do not pass over the PC board when wiring.〕

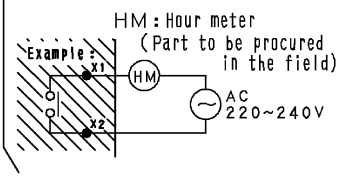
- Wire the adaptor to the indoor unit as shown below.



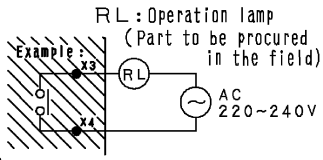
Fetching the operation display signal

- Attaching an hour meter
- Fan ON display

Output is generated at the contact while the compressor is running.

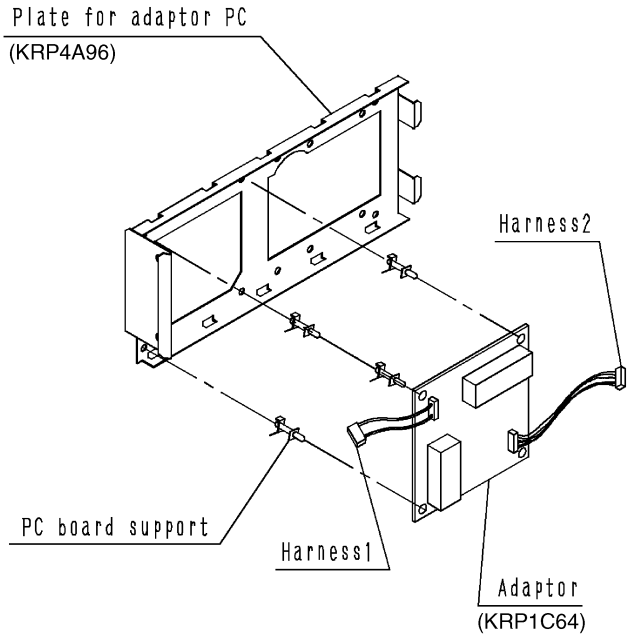


Output is generated at the contact while the fan is running.



③INSTALLATION

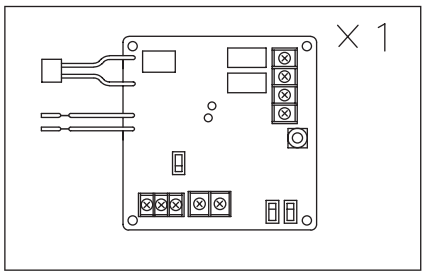
- Do not bundle low and high voltage wires together.
- Bundle any axcess wires with the attached clamps so as to keep loose wirings off the indoor unit PC board.
- Set up adaptor to the plate refer to below figure direction.



3P226298

8. Wiring Adaptor for Electrical Appendices (1) (2)

8.1 KRP2A61 / KRP2A62 / KRP2A53



Item \ Model	KRP2A53	KRP2A61	KRP2A62
Dimensions (mm)	100×100		
Length of lead wire (mm)	2,000	500	1,300
Component parts	Wiring adaptor PCB. PCB support. Clamp. Installation manual.		

System Configuration

The KRP2A61·62·53 enables operation by remote control (ON/OFF control, temperature setting, operation display, error display). With it, the following system can be built. Note however that the adaptor cannot be used with other optional controllers for centralized control.

1. Zone Control

(Unified control of a max. 64 groups of a max. 16 indoor units each. But, the max. of indoor units is 128.)

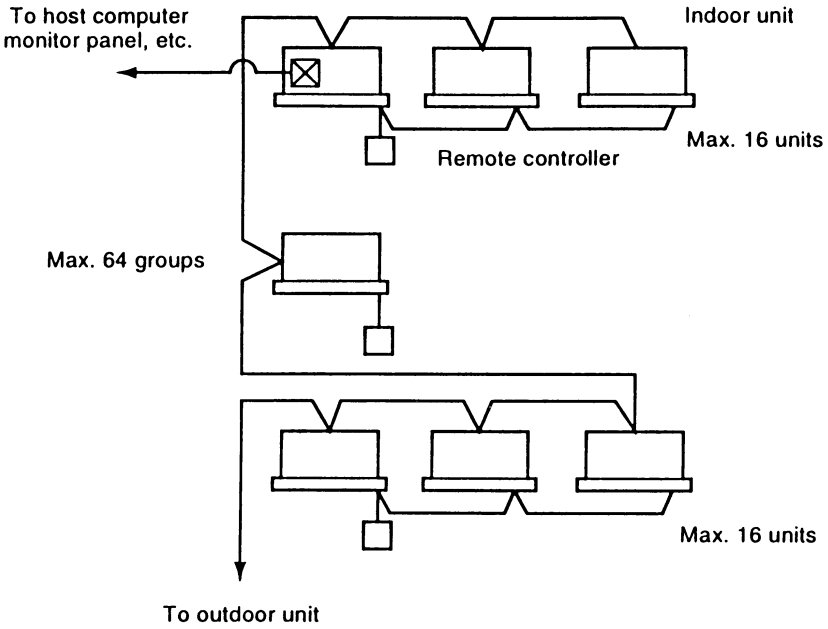
This system requires the following parts.

- Wiring Adaptor for Electrical Appendices (1)
  ... KRP2A61 or KRP2A62 or KRP2A53
- Remote controller switches (For control)

...BRC1C62
BRC2C51
BRC3A61
} Per group

(Ex.) Zone control for 8 FXYC63KVE units (control groups of 4, 3 and 1)

KRP2A61×1 kit
BRC1C62×3 kits
} 1 set required for each group.

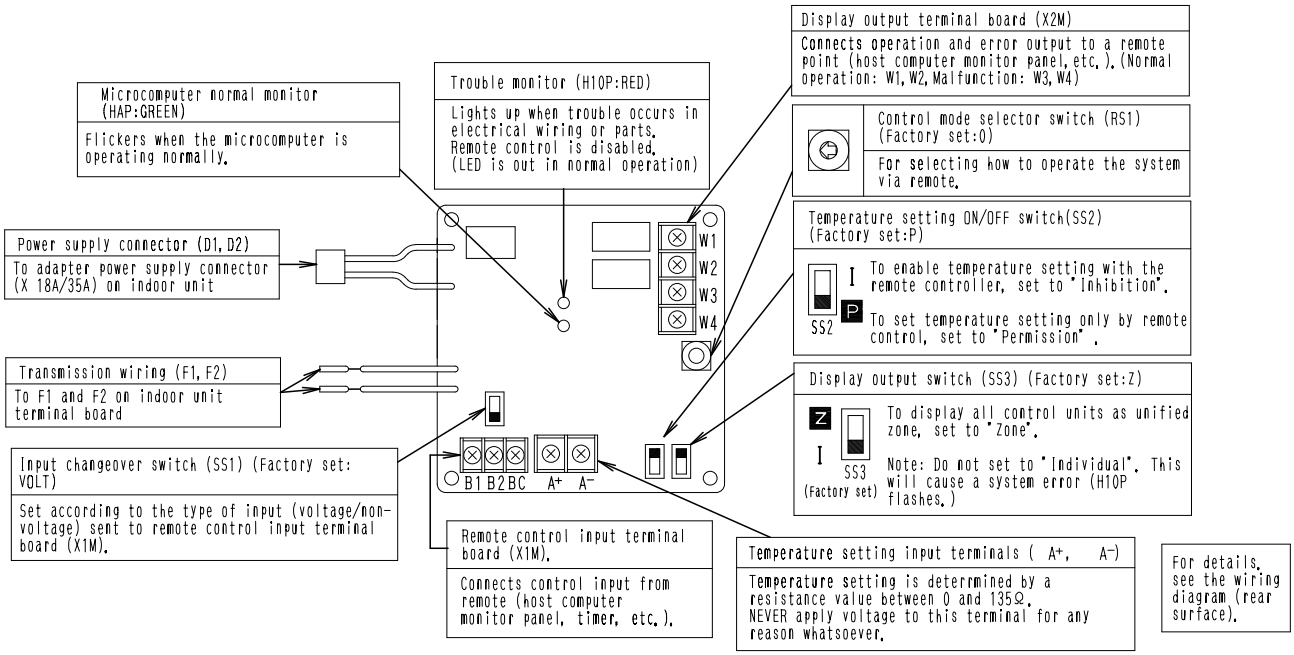


Note:

1. Individual indoor units connected to the centralized line cannot be displayed individually.

C: 1PA63641J

Names of Parts and Functions

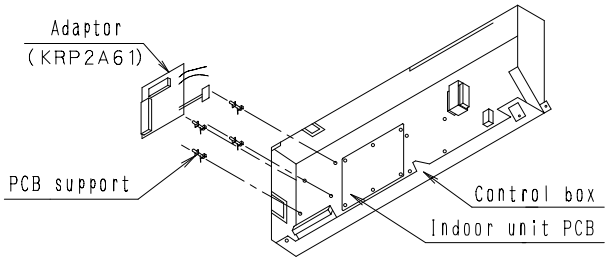


1PA63641-1J

Installation

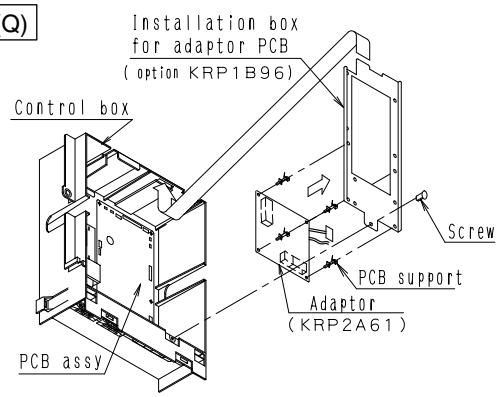
Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner Type

FXK(Q)



Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type (Double-Flow)

FXC(Q)

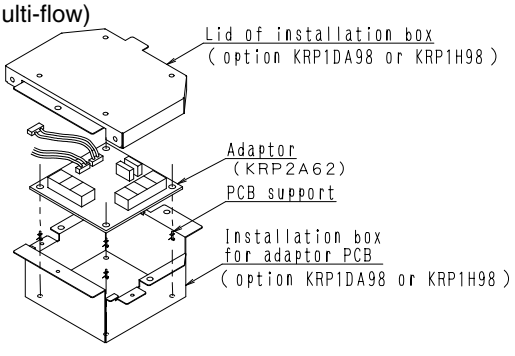


NOTE :Installation box for adaptor PCB is required to install the adaptor.

Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type

FXFQ (Round-flow)

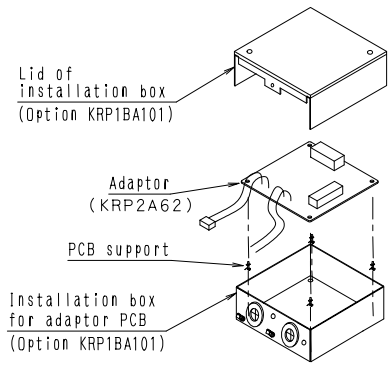
FXF (Multi-flow)



NOTE) Installation box for adaptor PCB is required to install the adaptor.

Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type (Compact Multi-Flow)

FXZQ



NOTE :Installation box for adaptor PCB is required to install the adaptor.

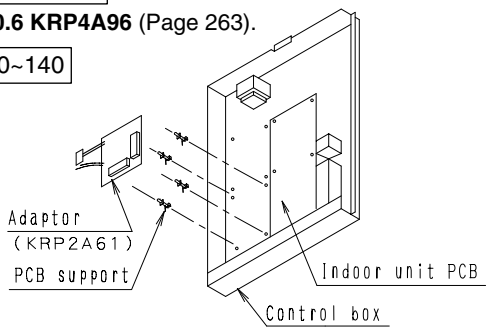
C: 1PA63641J

Ceiling Mounted Duct Type

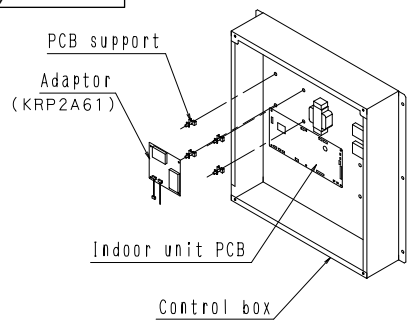
FXMQ20~140P

See **10.6 KRP4A96** (Page 263).

FXM20~140

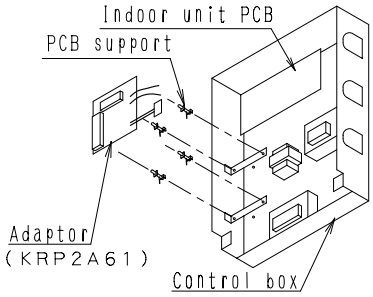


FXM(Q)200 · 250



Ceiling Mounted Built-In Type
Ceiling Mounted Built-In Type (Rear Suction)

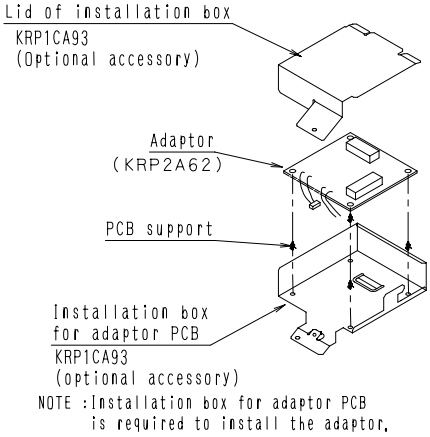
FXS
FXSYQ
FXYB



Note :
Installation box is necessary for second adaptor (FXS (Q)).

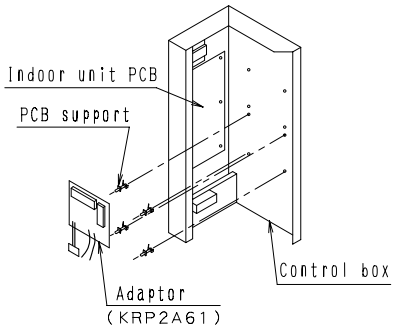
Ceiling Suspended Type

FXH(Q)



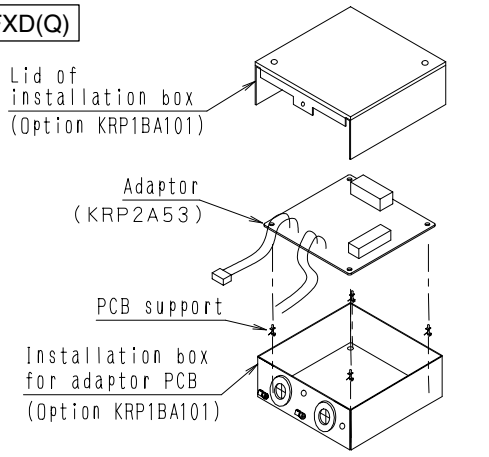
Floor Standing Type

FXL(Q)
FXN(Q)



Slim Ceiling Mounted Duct Type

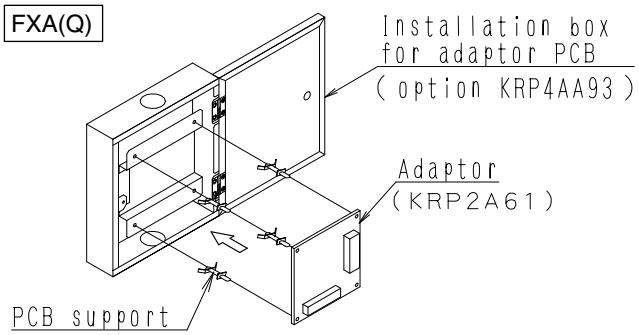
FXD(Q)



NOTE :Installation box for adaptor PCB is required to install the adaptor.

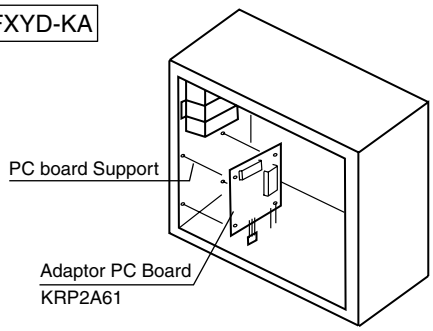
Wall Mounted Type

FXA(Q)



Ceiling Mounted Low Silhouette Duct Type

FXYD-KA



Note:
Installation box is necessary for second adaptor.

C : 1PA63641J

Electric Wiring Work

1. First, wire between the indoor and outdoor units, then to the separate power supply, and between the indoor units and the remote controllers. Then, check wiring is correct. (If wanting group control by remote controller, check transmission wiring.) For details, see the installation manual of the indoor and outdoor units.

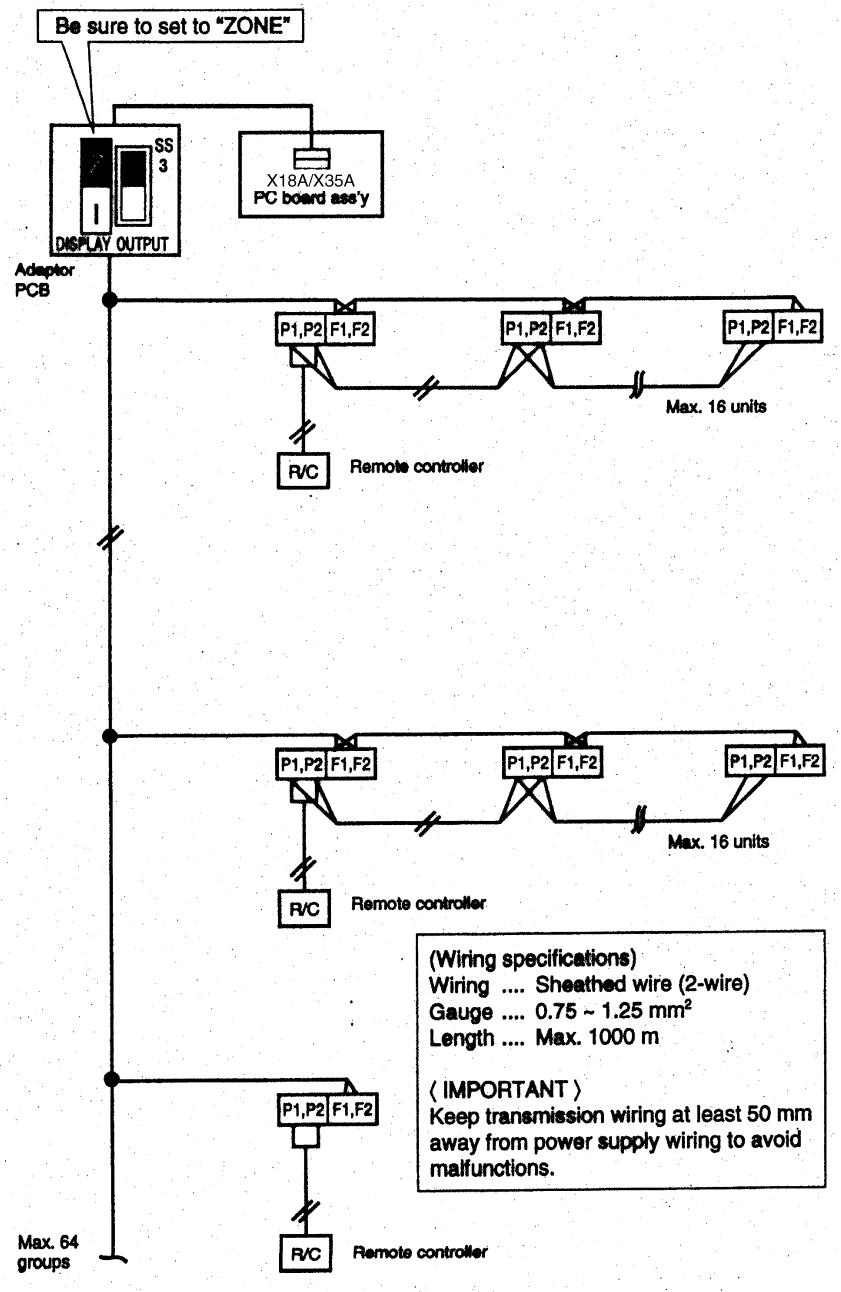
2. Next, wire between the wiring adaptor for electrical appendices (1) and the indoor units. For details, see **Wiring to indoor units**.

3. Finally, wire between external units such as the host computer monitor panel, and make the necessary settings. For details, see **Wiring to external units (host computer monitor panel)**.

Note:
It is not necessary to set address No. for centralized control.
(Setting is automatic.)

Wiring to Indoor Units

1. For Zone Control



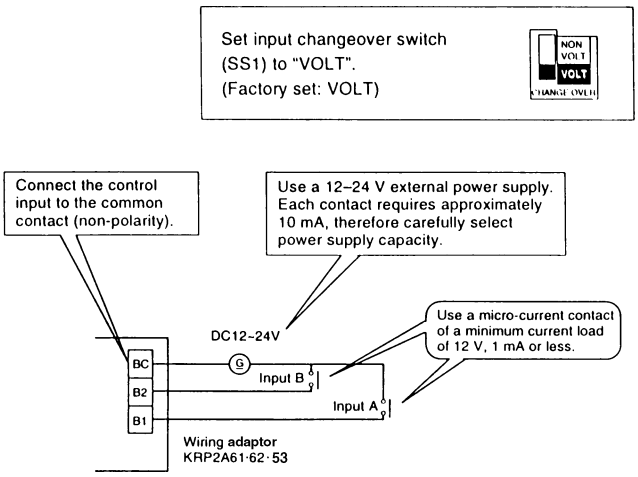
1PA63642C

Wiring to External Units (Host Computer Monitor Panel)

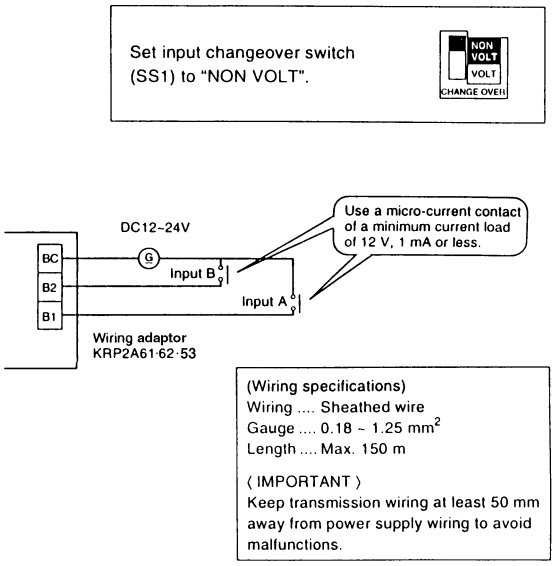
1. Remote Control Input (Operation Control)

Wire as described below. Wiring differs depending on whether using a voltage or non-voltage input.

■ For voltage input

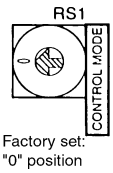


■ For non-voltage input



2. Setting Control Mode Selector Switch (RS1)

Using control mode selector switch (RS1), select the control mode as described below.



Factory set:
"0" position

(1) When operating with only individual display function

Position	Function
0	Individual Display (Input Ignored)

(2) When operating with constant input from A

Position	Function	Contents when input A is ON	Contents when input A is OFF
1	Remote controller rejection	Operation (remote controller is normally rejected)	Stop + remote controller rejection
2	Central priority	Operation + remote controller accepted	
3	Stop by remote controller acceptable	Operation + stop by remote controller acceptable (No operation by the remote controller)	
4	Remote controller acceptance/ rejection	Remote controller acceptance only (No operation by the remote location)	

Note:

■ Input B is for forced-OFF. When ON, stop + remote controller is rejected, and input A is ignored. When OFF, even if A is ON, the contents of when input A is ON, are not achieved. Input A must therefore be re-input.

C : 1PA63642C

(3) When operating with momentary input from A
(Use a momentary input of ON time 200 milli-sec. or longer.)

Position	Function	Contents of Input A	Function of Input B
5	Remote controller rejected	Stop for ON while operating, operate for ON while stopping	Input B will be forced stop function (When ON, stop + remote controller is rejected, input A is ignored.)
6	Last command priority	Stop for ON while operating, operate for ON while stopping (Remote controller is normally accepted.)	

■ For demand control from input B

Position	Function when input A is ON	Function when input B is ON
C	Remote controller rejected (Same as position “5”)	Forced thermostat OFF command
D		Forced temperature shift command
E	Last command priority (Same as position “6”)	Forced thermostat OFF command
F		Forced temperature shift command

■ Forced thermostat OFF command
Forces indoor unit to operate the fan only.
■ Forced temperature shift command
The indoor unit operates at 2°C higher (cooling) or 2°C lower (heating) than the set temperature.

Note:
■ In zone control, operation is displayed as long as one indoor unit is running. When in the last command priority mode, some units are not operating while ON.
■ In such case, even if input A is ON, the unit and all other units in the same zone will stop.

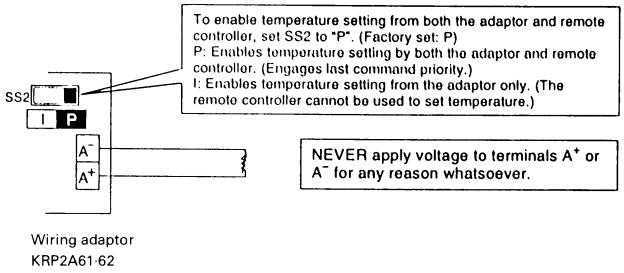
(4) When operating with dual momentary inputs from A and B (Use a momentary input of 200 milli-sec. or longer.)

Position	Function	Contents when Input A is ON	Contents when Input A is OFF
7	Remote controller rejection	Operation (remote controller is normally rejected)	Stop + remote controller rejection
8	Central priority	Operation + remote controller accepted	
9	Stop by remote controller acceptable	Operation + stop by remote controller acceptable (No operation by the remote controller)	
A	Remote controller acceptance/ rejection	Remote controller acceptance only (No operation by the remote location)	
B	Last command priority	Operation (remote controller is normally accepted)	Stop (remote controller normally accepted)

Note:
■ Doing constant input A with position 7-A, it will be forced OFF function (input A is ignored).
■ Constant input cannot use for input B with position B.

1PA63642C

3. Temperature Setting Input



Temperature setting corresponds to resistance values in the range of 0 to 135Ω. Their relationship is as shown below.

Temperature Setting (°C)	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24
Resistance (Ω)	0.0~3.4	5.0~11.6	13.8~20.0	22.4~28.4	31.0~36.4	39.4~44.8	48.2~52.8	56.6~61.2	65.2~69.4

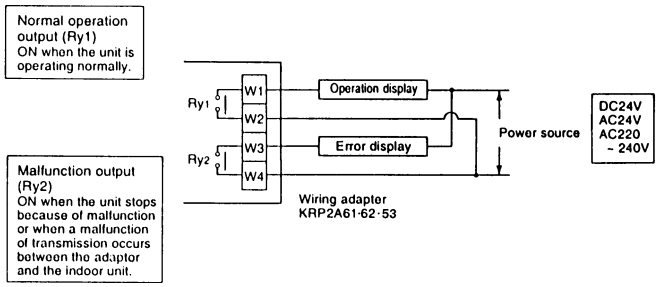
Temperature Setting (°C)	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32
Resistance (Ω)	73.8~77.8	82.4~85.8	91.0~94.0	99.4~102.2	108.6~110.4	117.2~119.2	125.8~127.4	134.2~140.0

Note:
Wiring resistance included in above figures.

(Wiring specifications)
Wiring ... Sheathed wire
Gauge ... 1.25~2.00 mm²
Length ... Max. 70 m
(IMPORTANT)
Keep transmission wiring at least 50 mm away from power supply wiring to avoid malfunctions.

4. Canceling Display Signals

Operation output terminals (W1 and W2) and malfunction output terminals (W3 and W4) are non-voltage constant contact output.
(Allowed electric current per contact is between 10 mA and 3 A.)



Note:
If using a 220~240V power supply, keep transmission wiring at least 50 mm away from incoming power supply wiring.

Output / System	Both Ry1 and Ry2 OFF	Ry1 only ON	Ry2 only ON
Zone control	All zones OFF	At least one unit running normally, no malfunction	Even 1 unit stopped due to malfunction or malfunction of transmission between adaptor and indoor unit

Display output is described by system in the below table.

Note:
If rewiring F1 and F2 after running the system, turn ON power for 5 minutes, then turn it OFF and ON again. Changes to wiring can sometimes disable control from the wiring adaptor.

C: 1PA63642C

8.2 KRP4AA51 / KRP4AA52 / KRP4AA53 / KRP4A54

Outline / Features

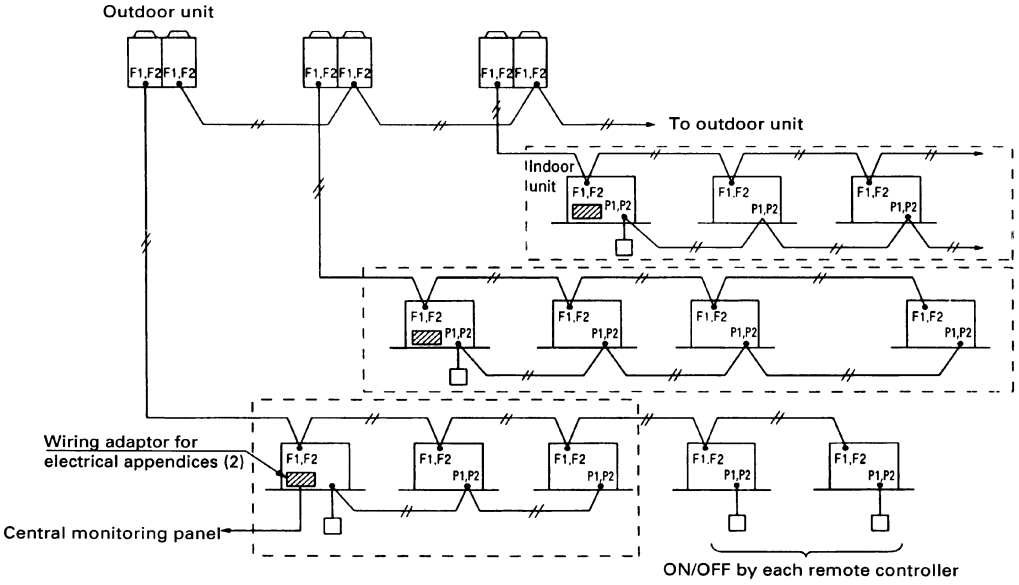
This adaptor is an interface required to connect the indoor unit with the central monitoring panel. And by installing this adaptor in the indoor unit, it enables you to have various remote controls (ON/OFF, temperature setting, operation status display and malfunction display). One adaptor can control simultaneously the group of units (Max. 16 units) connected to the remote control wiring line (P1, P2).

Note:
1. This adaptor cannot be used together with central control equipment and data station.
2. The model of adaptor differs according to the type of indoor unit to be installed.

Applied Model

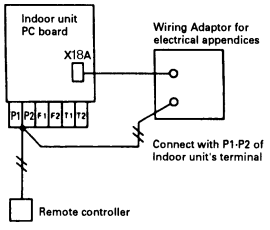
Applied Model		Remark	Applied Model	Remark	Note
VRV Systems	VRV Plus Series	○	SkyAir Series	○	
	VRV Inverter “K(A)” “K(U)” Series	○	Room Air-Conditioner	×	
	VRV Heat Recovery Series	○	Other Air-Conditioner	×	
	VRV II, III Series	○	HRV Unit	○	BRC1B61, 62 etc. are required.

System Configuration

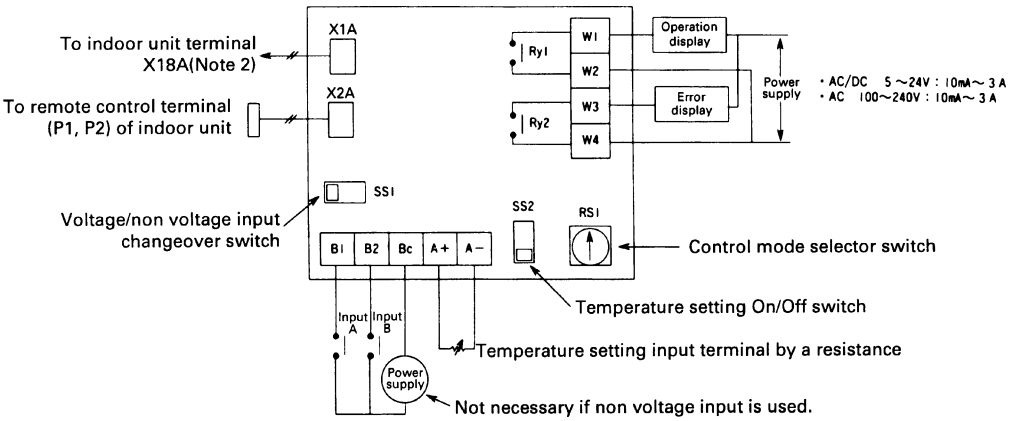


Note:
1. Marked ▨ shows wiring adaptor for electrical appendices.
2. Marked ⬚ indicates the same control range.
3. The wiring adaptor for electrical appendices (2) can control simultaneously the group of the units (Max. 16 units) connected to the remote control wiring line (P1, P2). In another words, all the units connected between P1 and P2 terminal have the same control.

■ **Point of wiring**



Names and Functions of Operating Part



Note:

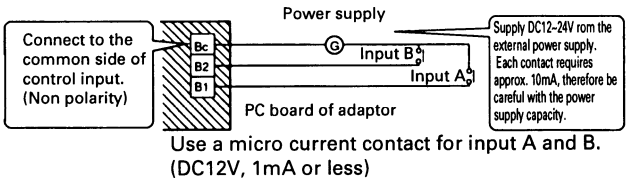
1. This is valid only for the indoor unit, which has a temperature setting function.
2. Terminal No. X18A is for the indoor unit of VRV system. For SkyAir series and other air-conditioner, connect to the relevant terminal for each units.

Input/Output for External Control

1. Depending on whether [voltage input] or [non voltage input], connect the wiring as shown below.

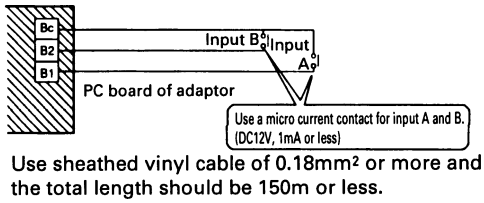
■ **Input with Voltage.**

Set the Voltage/Non voltage changeover switch (SS1) to VOLT.



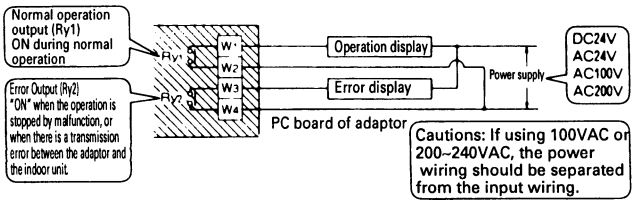
■ **Input with No Voltage.**

Set the Voltage/Non voltage changeover switch (SS1) to NON VOLT.



2. Display Signal Retrieval (Output)

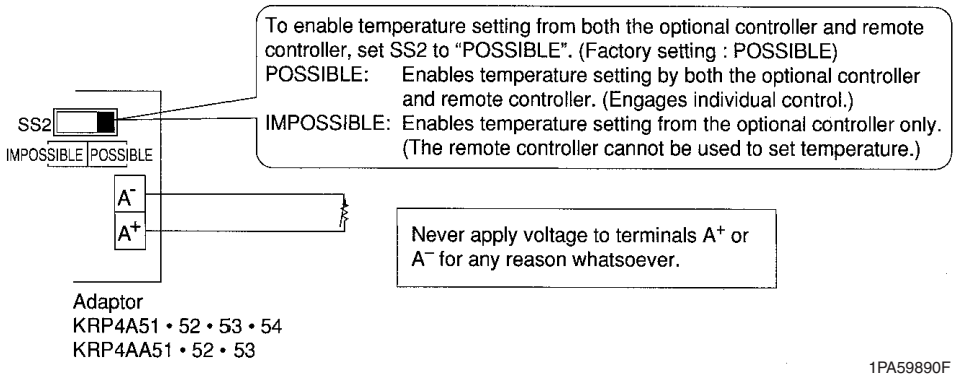
The normal operation output terminals (W1, W2) and error output terminals (W3, W4) are non-voltage output contacts. (Permissive current is 10mA~3A per contact.)



Output is as given below.

Output / System	Both Ry1 and Ry2 is OFF.	Only Ry1 is ON.	Only Ry2 is ON.
Group control	OFF	All normal operation	At least one unit is stopped due to error or transmission error between the adaptor and the indoor unit.

3. Temperature Setting Input



Temperature setting corresponds to resistance values in the range of 0 to 135Ω.
Their relationship is as shown below.

Relation between the setting temperature and the resistance are as follows.

Setting temperature (°C)	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32
Resistance (Ω)	0.0 ~ 3.4	5.0 ~ 11.6	13.8 ~ 20.0	22.4 ~ 28.4	31.0 ~ 36.4	39.4 ~ 44.8	48.2 ~ 52.8	56.6 ~ 61.2	65.2 ~ 69.4	73.8 ~ 77.8	82.4 ~ 85.8	91.0 ~ 94.0	99.4 ~ 102.2	108.6 ~ 110.4	117.2 ~ 119.2	125.8 ~ 127.4	134.2 ~ 140.0

Note:

- The value of resistance includes the resistance of wiring.
- The setting temperature is limited within the setting range of indoor unit. If you set the temperature outside of the range by the adaptor, it controls at the nearest setting range.

Setting of Control Mode Selector Switch (RS1)

Position	Functions	Description of Operation by Input Mode A and B	
		Input A (Between B1~Bc)	Input B (Between B2~Bc)
0	Input Ignored	—	—
1	Remote Control Rejection	Start at ON, and stop at OFF	Stop at ON (remote control rejection), Input A acceptance at OFF
2	Central Priority	Start at ON (remote control acceptance), stop at OFF (remote control rejection)	
3	Remote Control Acceptance/ Rejection	The same as position 1 (Only stop is accepted by remote controller)	
4	Remote Control Acceptance/ Rejection, OFF	Start at ON (remote control acceptance), stop at OFF (remote control rejection)	
5	Remote Control Rejection	Start/Stop (Repeats)	
6	Last Command Priority	The same as position 5 (remote control acceptance all the time)	Stop at ON remote control acceptance), start at OFF (remote control rejection)
7	Remote Control Rejection	Start at ON	Stop at ON.
8	Last Command Priority	Start at ON (remote control acceptance)	Stop at ON (remote control rejection)
9	Remote Control OFF Acceptance	The same as position 7 (Only stop is accepted by remote controller)	The same as position 7
A	Remote Control Acceptance/ Rejection, OFF	Start at ON (remote control acceptance)	Stop at ON (remote control rejection)
B	Last Command Priority	The same as position 7 (remote control acceptance all the time)	The same as position 7
C	Position 5 + Energy Saving Control	The same as position 5	Forced thermostat OFF at ON
D	Position 5 + Temperature Set-Back		Setting temperature shift command at ON
E	Position 6 + Energy Saving Control	The same as position 6	Forced thermostat OFF at ON
F	Position 6 + Temperature Set-Back		Setting temperature shift command at ON

Note:

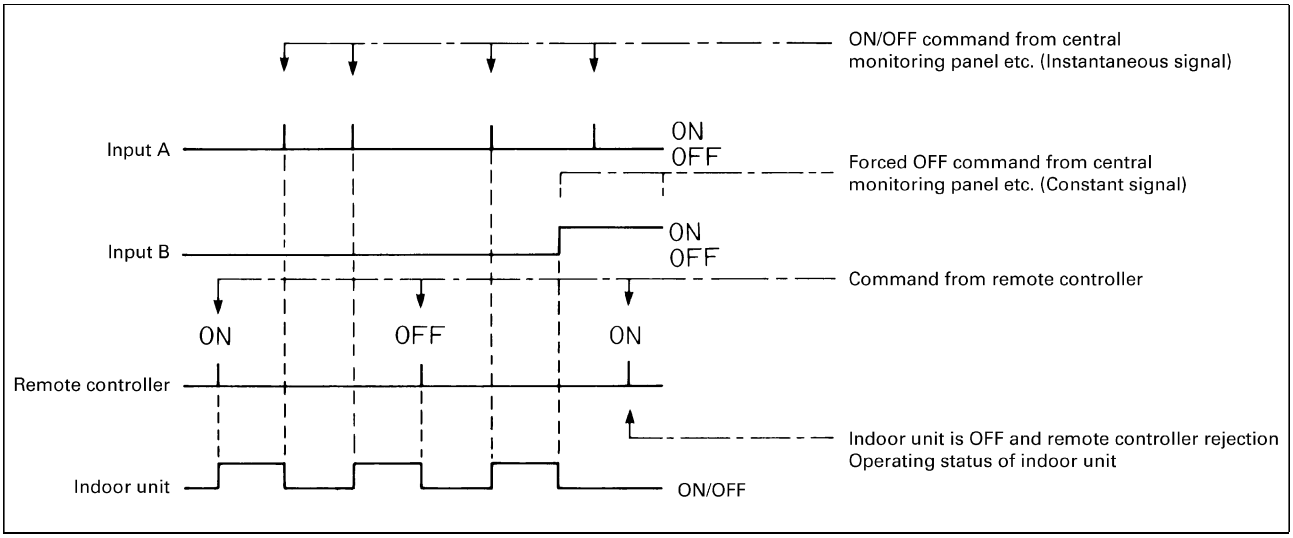
1. When constant input is used for input B at position 7~A, the system is shut-down forcibly (Ignored input A). Constant input cannot be used for input B at position B.
2. Refer to the followings for the outline of above functions.

■ **Description of Functions (Outline)**

1. Remote Control Rejection.....	For when you want to turn ON/OFF only by central remote controller. (ON/OFF cannot be controlled by remote controller for indoor unit.)
2. Remote controller OFF Only Accepted	For when you want to turn ON only by the central remote controller, and turn OFF only by remote controller for indoor unit.
3. Central Priority	For when you want to turn ON only by the central remote controller, and during the set time, turn ON/OFF freely by remote controller for indoor unit.
4. Individual Priority (Last command priority)	For when you want to turn ON/OFF by both central remote controller and remote controller for indoor unit.
5. Remote Controller Permission Timer	For when you want to turn ON/OFF by remote controller for indoor unit during set time, and you want to start the operation by remote controller for indoor unit at the programmed time of system start.

<Example when the control mode selector switch is set at position 6>

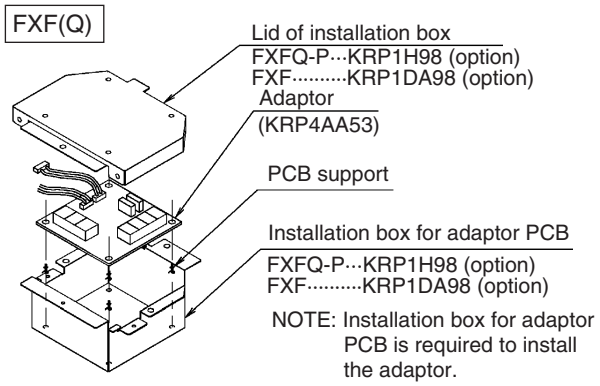
The following is the time chart for the command by remote controller and the indoor unit against input signal.



Instruction for Installation

Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type

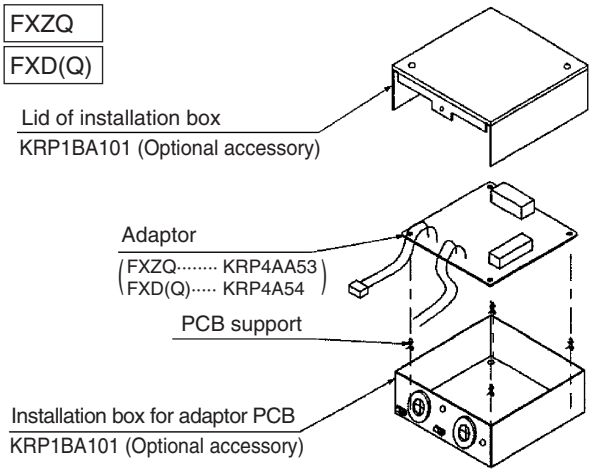
FXF(Q)



NOTE: Installation box for adaptor PCB is required to install the adaptor.

Slim Ceiling Mounted Duct Type
Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type (Multi-Flow) 600×600

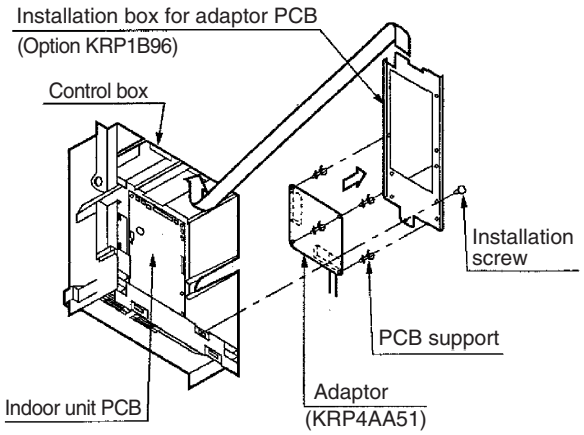
FXZQ
FXD(Q)



NOTE: Installation box for adaptor PCB is required to install the adaptor.

Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type (Double-Flow)

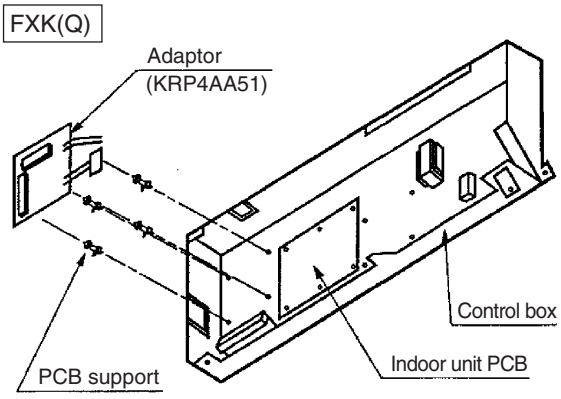
FXC(Q)



NOTE) A separate plate is needed to install the adaptor PCB.

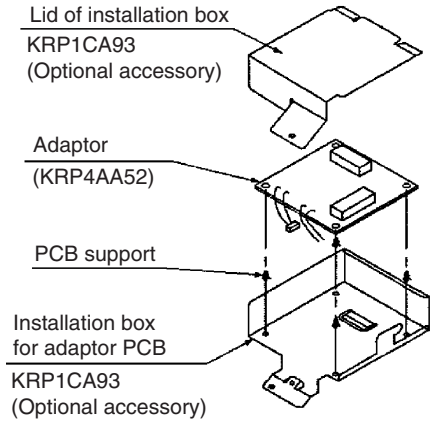
Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner Type

FXK(Q)



Ceiling Suspended Type

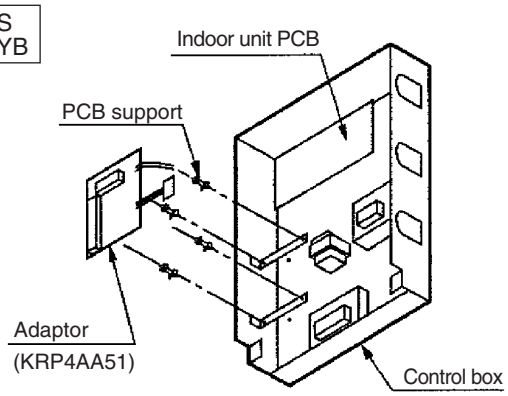
FXH(Q)



NOTE: Installation box for adaptor PCB is required to install the adaptor.

Ceiling Mounted Built-In Type

FXS
FXYB



Note :
Installation box is necessary for second adaptor (FXS).

Note:
The above shows the installation for VRV indoor unit. For the SkyAir series and other air-conditioner, it may be different from the ones showed above and refer to its engineering data for the details.

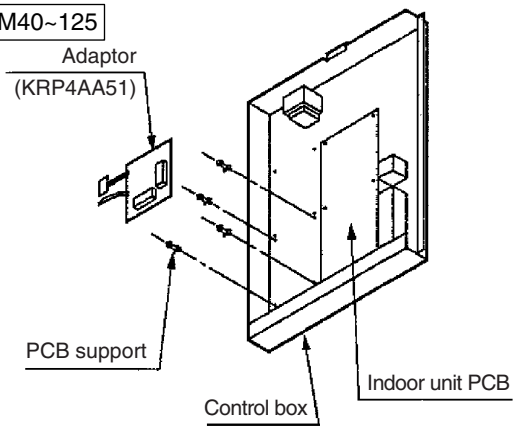
C: 1PA59889K

Ceiling Mounted Duct Type

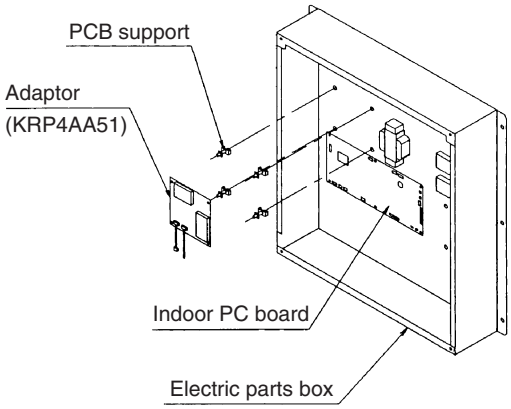
FXMQ20~140P

See **10.6 KRP4A96** (Page 263).

FXM40~125

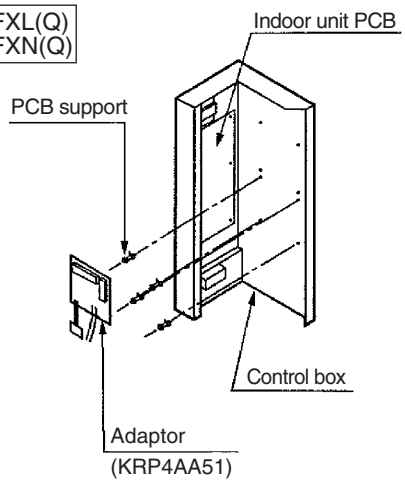


FXM(Q)200 · 250



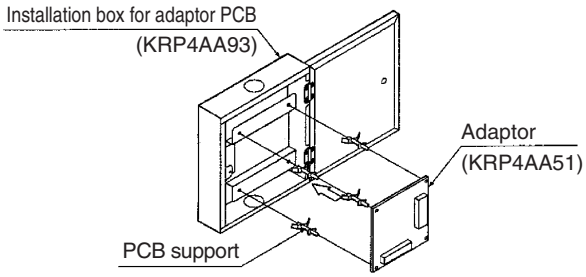
Floor Standing Type

FXL(Q)
FXN(Q)



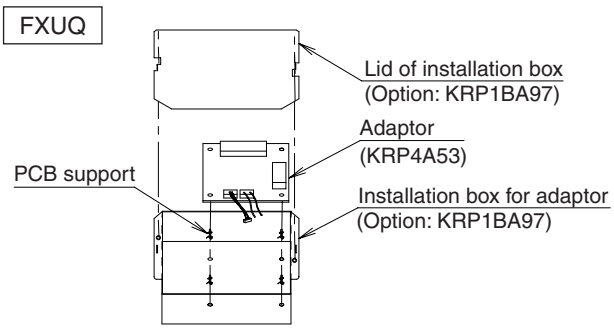
Wall Mounted Type

FXA(Q)



Ceiling Suspended Cassette Type

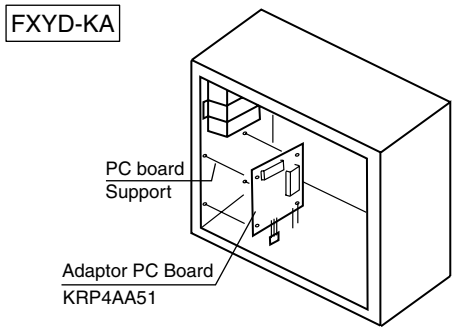
FXUQ



Note:
Installation box for adaptor (option) is required to install.

Ceiling Mounted Low Silhouette Duct Type

FXYD-KA



Note:
Installation box is necessary for second adaptor.

Note:
The above shows the installation for VRV indoor unit. For the SkyAir series and other air-conditioner, it may be different from the ones showed above and refer to its engineering data for the details.

C: 1PA59889K

9. Remote Sensor (For Indoor Temperature)

9.1 KRCS01-1B / KRCS01-4B

Item	Model	KRCS01-1B	KRCS01-4B
Length of branch wiring	m	12	
Appearance		Light ivory (with the Daikin logo)	
Box material		ABS resin	
Mass (Weight)	kg	0.3	
Dimensions	mm	W50 × H60 × D15	
Component parts		Remote sensor. Extension cord (12m). Screws. Clamps. Installation manual.	

- Recommended for ceiling suspension and ceiling-embedded types which often result in a difference between set temperature and actual temperature.
- The sensor for detecting the temperature can be placed away from the indoor air conditioner. (Branch wiring is included in the kit.)

Caution

- Select a location for the sensor where it can detect the average temperature. Avoid the following locations.

1. Locations in direct sunlight.
2. Locations where the outlet air from the air conditioner is directed.
3. Locations close to other heat sources.
4. Locations near doors which might be affected by air coming in.

Installation

Remote sensor INSTALLATION MANUAL

KRCS01-1B
KRCS01-4B

Be sure to read this manual before installation and follow the instruction.

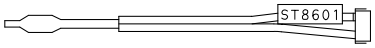
3K019189-1B

Note

● The kit modeles vary according to the model of air conditioners as follows:

KRCS01-1B	Skyair, VRV, Other air-cooled package air conditioners, High efficiency year round cooling only air conditioners, Round-flow type is excluded.	Note 1)
KRCS01-4B	Skyair Round-flow type	Note 2)
	VRV Round-flow type	
	Duct type, FBQ~DVET、FBQ~DV1、FXMQ~PVE	

Note 1) If you are unsure if this kit can be used for your indoor unit, check if the type of the thermistor (for detection of inlet air temperature) is as same as the type in this kit (ST8601).
The shape of the thermistor for detection of the indoor unit inlet air temperature is shown below.



Note 2) When installed on these models, the dehumidification by detection of humidity does not operate.

Components

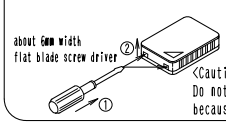
Check the following components.

Designation	Remote sensor (sensor box)	Extension cable (2-core, 12m)	Clamps	Installation manual (this drawing)	Sensor box mounting screws (M4X16)
shape					
Pieces	1 Piece	1 Piece	2 Pieces	1 sheet	2 Pieces

1 Mounting

1)Selecting the mounting location
The thermistor for temperature detection is incorporated into the remote sensor. Select the mounting location taking the following cautions into account.
①where the average temperature of an air conditioned room can be detected.
②where it is not exposed to the direct sunlight.
③where it is not influenced by other heat sources.
④where it is not exposed to the direct discharge air from the air conditioner.
⑤whera it is not exposed to the outdoor air infiltrated into the room by opening the door.

2)Mounting
●Remove the cover of the sensor box.

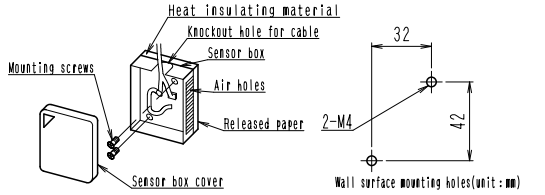


Insert a flat blade screw driver into the sensor box concave part (2 locations)and remove the cover pushig up the nail to the cover of the sensor box.

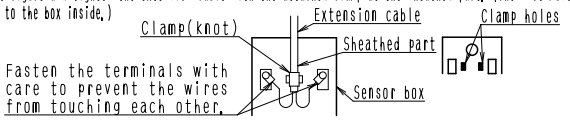
<Cautions>
Do not push the nail powerfully with a narrow flat blade screw driver, because you may break off the nail.

C: 3K019189B

①When mounting on the wall

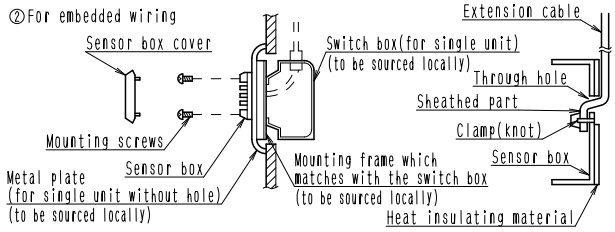


- Break open the knockout hole in the sensor box with a nipper or a similar tool. Pass the extension wires through the hole and fasten the wires to the terminals with screws.
- To avoid tensile force on the terminals, pass the attached clamp through the holes shown in the below right figure and tighten the extension cable with the attached clamp at the sheathed part. (The knot must come to the box inside.)

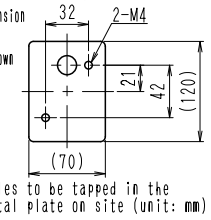


- Screw the sensor box securely to the wall surface with screws M4X16(2 places). If the sensor box cannot be screwed to wall surface, tear off the released paper and mount it on the wall surface

②For embedded wiring

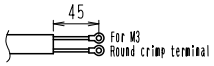


- Pass the extension cable through the switch box cable hole and carry out the wiring.
- Pass the attached clamp though the clamp holes and tighten the extension cable at the sheathed part as shown in the upper right drawing.
- Tap M4 screw holes in the metal plate (to be sourced locally) as shown in the right drawing and mount the switch box on the metal plate.



<Cautions>

- Give caution when wiring so that the air holes will not be blocked.
- When the extension cable is longer than necessary, cut it to the appropriate length, peel the insulation, attach the round crimp terminal for M3 (to be sourced locally) and carry out the wiring. The length of insulation to be peeled off is as shown. (Work carefully so that the connector side may not be cut.)



❷ Wiring method

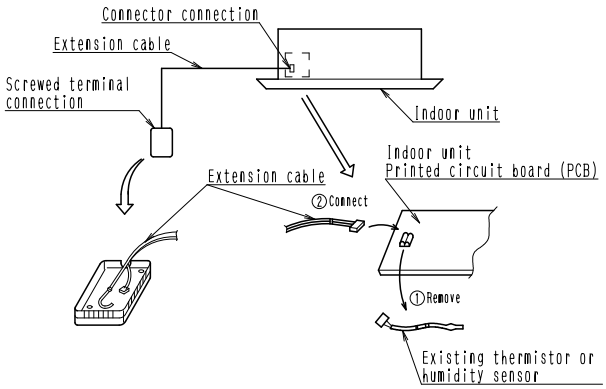
Connect the extension cable connector side to the indoor unit PCB (printed circuit board) For connection to the indoor unit, follow the procedure shown below.

⚠ Caution

1) Make sure to turn off the power supply before starting the wiring work and do not turn on until all the work is completed.
Read also the installation manual and the wiring diagram of the indoor unit when carrying out the work.
2) When wiring the extension cable, do not pass where the extension cable may be affected by the power line or noise.
3) Make sure to securely connect the connectors.
Defective connection may result in incorrect detection of room temperature or malfunction.
4) Do not splice wires.
5) Since the connector marking of the thermistor for detection of inlet air temperature differ depending on the indoor unit type, make sure to check the indoor unit wiring diagram and follow it correctly.
6)Lay and clamp the extension cable inside the indoor unit switch box just like the low voltage line(cord for remote controller).
And do not pass where the extension cable inside the indoor unit switch box may be affected by the power line(cord for the indoor unit and the other electric line).

<Procedure>

1. When wiring to the indoor unit PCB, remove the existing thermistor (for detection of inlet air temperature) and then connect the extension cable.
<For Skyair and VRV>



2. Lay and clamp the extension cable inside the indoor unit switch box just like the existing thermistor. Provide protection of the existing cable for thermistor without affecting other components.
3. Fit the sensor box cover into the sensor box.

❸ Operation test after mounting the sensor

Conduct cooling and heating operation test after the sensor is mounted and the wiring is completed.

3K019189B

10. Installation Box for Adaptor PCB

10.1 KRP1H98

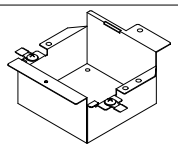
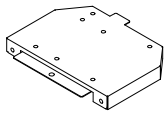
Item \ Model	KRP1H98
Material	Hot-dip zinc-coated carbon steel sheet
Applicable adaptor	KRP1C63 / KRP2A62 / KRP4AA53
Accessories	Clamp : 2 Code sticker : 6 Screws for adaptor box cover : 1 Installation manual. Wire clamp material : 8 Mounting screws : 3 Earth wire (length 1060m) : 1

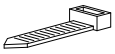
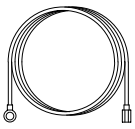
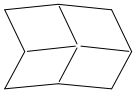
Caution

- This box is mountable on the ceiling mounted cassette type (round-flow type) unit. After confirming the indoor unit model name, mount this box on the unit listed in the table shown bottom.
- When mounting the box, see also the indoor unit installation manual and the adapter PCB (Printed Circuit Board) mounting instruction.

Kit name	Indoor unit model that party crowded is possible	
KRP1H98	SkyAir	FCQ(N)71 • 100 • 125 • 140KVEA
	VRV	FXFQ 25 • 32 • 40 • 50 • 63 • 80 • 100 • 125 PVE

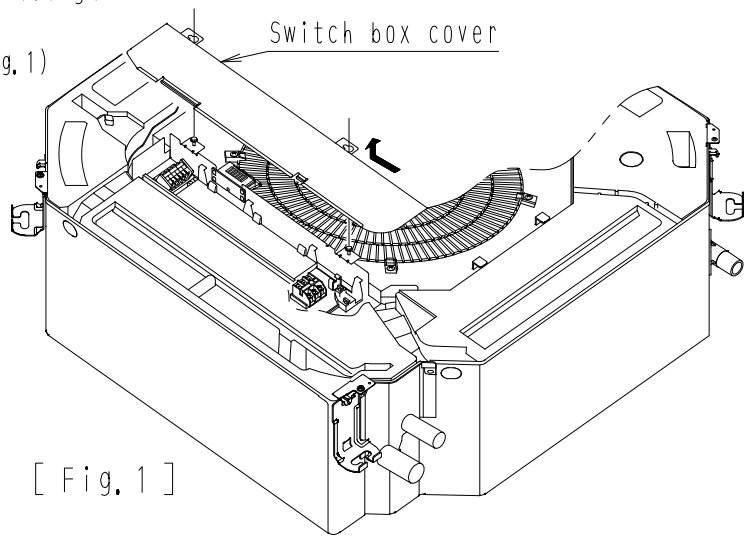
Accessories Check if the following accessories are included with your kit.

Name	Adapter box	Adapter box cover	Screw(1)	Screw(2)
Quantity	1PC.	1PC.	2PCS.	1PC.
Shape			 M4×12	 M4×8

Name	Clamp	Earth wire	Screw for earth wire	Installation manual
Quantity	8PCS.	1PC.	1PC.	1PC.
Shape				

❶ Mounting the adapter box

《Preparation before wiring》
Remove the switch box cover. (Fig.1)

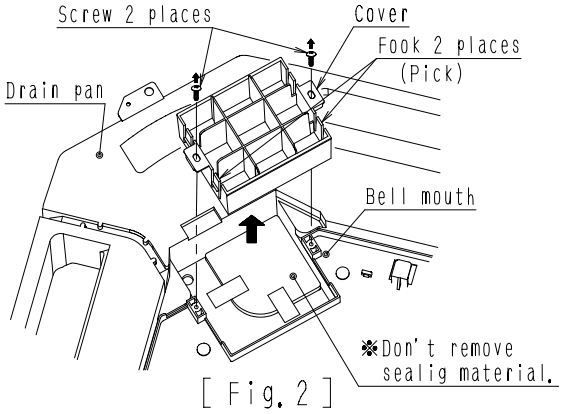


[Fig.1]

C: 2P196605A

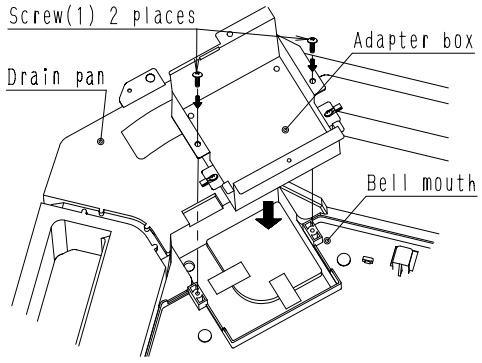
《Mounting the adapter box》

①Remove the cover, when the cover is attached. (Fig. 2)



[Fig. 2]

②Fix the box with the attached fixing screws (1) at two places. (Fig. 3)



[Fig. 3]

❷ Mounting the adapter PCB

《How to mount the adapter PCB》

①Connect the wiring to the adapter PCB.
(The work is easier if the wiring is connected to the PCB first.)

● See the instruction attached to the adapter PCB for where to connect the wiring.

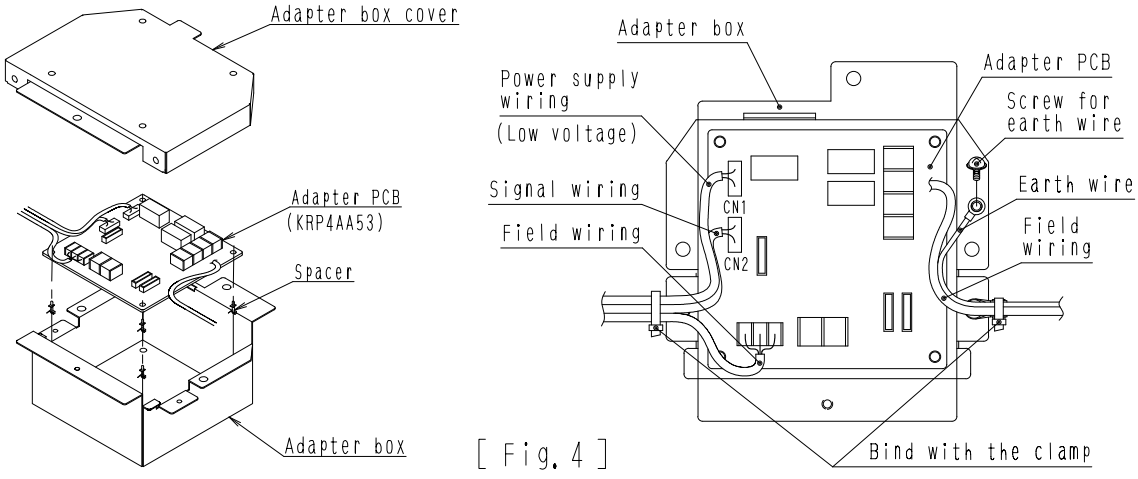
②Mount the adapter PCB on the adapter box and the adapter box cover.

Adapter PCB	Place where to mount
KRP4AA53 KRP2A62	The PCB to be mounted on the adapter box. (Fig. 4)
KRP1C63	The PCB to be mounted on the adapter box cover. (Fig. 5)
KRP1BA57	The PCB to be mounted on the adapter box cover. (Fig. 6)

● For the mounting position of the adapter PCB, see the instruction attached to the adapter PCB.

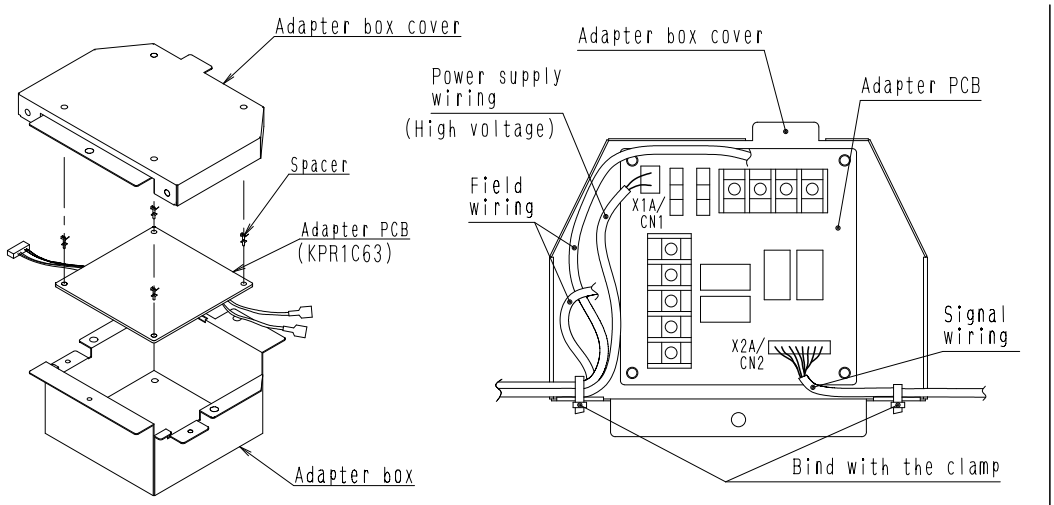
③Fix the earth wire with the attached fixing screw for earth wire. (Fig. 4)

④Bind the wiring from the adapter PCB with the attached clamp. (Fig. 4～6)

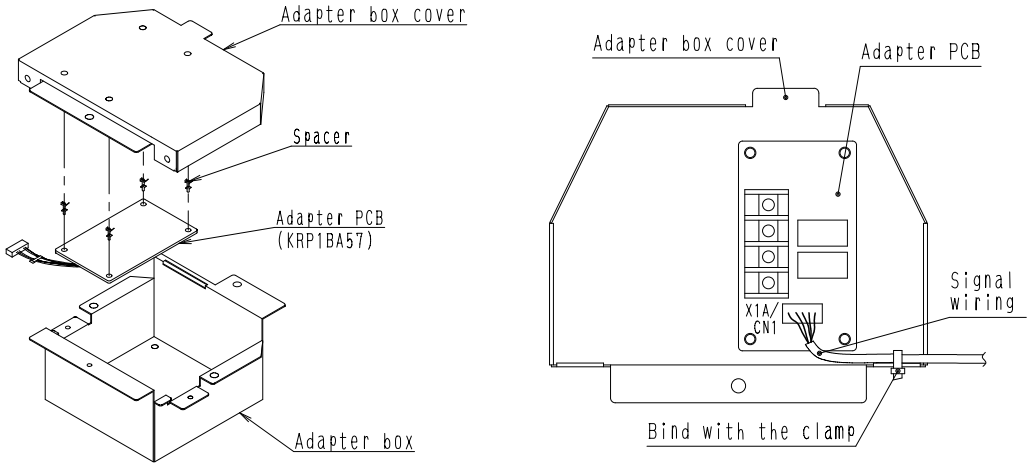


[Fig. 4]

C: 2P196605A



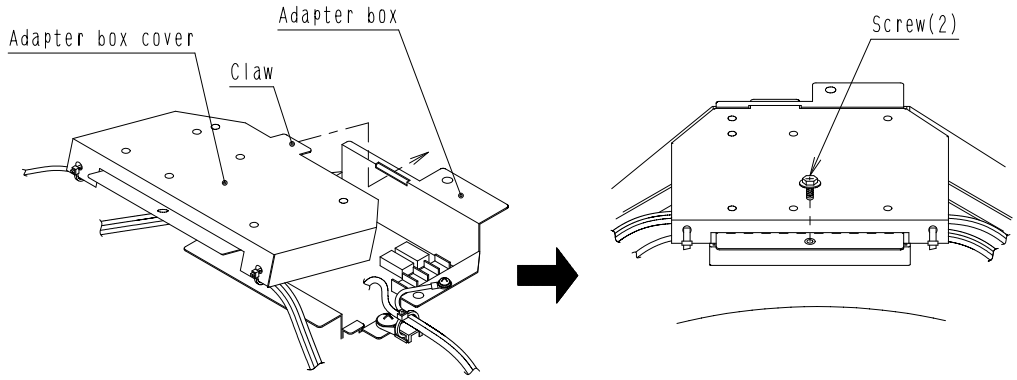
[Fig. 5]



[Fig. 6]

⑤ After putting the claw of the cover into the hole of the box, fix them with the attached screw (2). (Fig. 7)

- Take precautions to prevent the wires from getting caught.



[Fig. 7]

C: 2P196606A

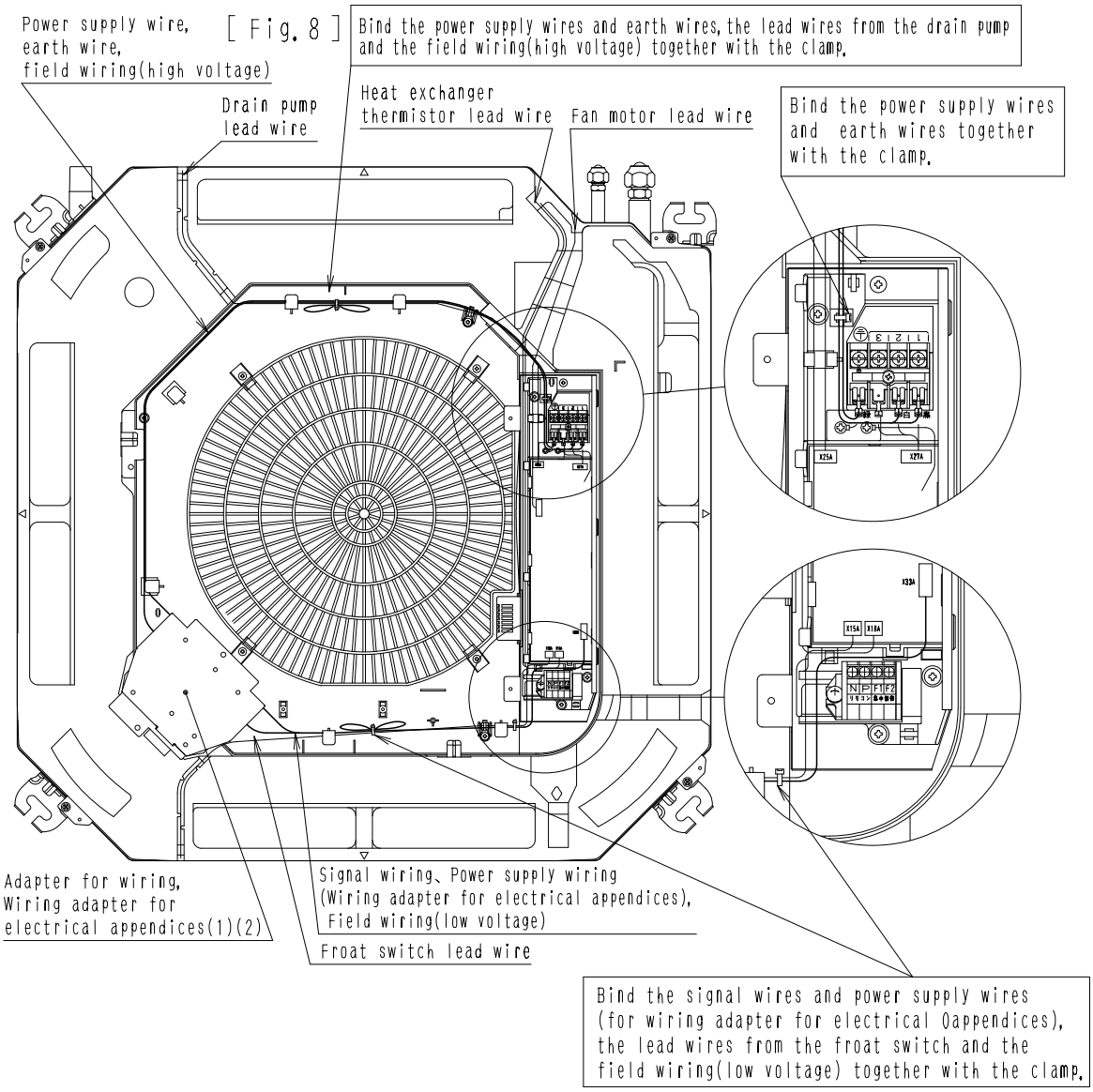
❸ How to handle the wiring

《Wiring to the indoor unit》

- Connect the wiring from the adapter PCB to the indoor unit. (signal wires, power supply wires, earth wires) (See the installation manual of indoor unit and wiring diagram lavel for where to connect the wiring.)
- See the instruction attached to the adapter PCB for the place where to connect the wires on the indoor unit.

① Fix the internal wirings.
- Bind the wiring from the adapter box to the indoor unit switch box according to the drawing shown on the right with the attached clamp.
- Bind the the surplus wires and the other wiring together with the clamp.

② Secure firmly the switch box cover in place in opposite order of removing.
- Take precautions to prevent the wires from getting caught.



2P196606A

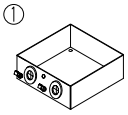
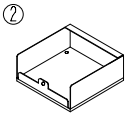
10.2 KRP1BA101

Notes

- One kit is required for each adaptor.
- Refer to the installation manuals attached to the indoor unit and adaptor.

Kit name	Indoor unit
KRP1B101 KRP1BA101	FXZQ20・25・32・40・50MVE FXD20・25・32・40・50・63MVE(T)(5) FXDQ40・50・63NBVE(T) FXD20・25・32PVE(T)(5) FXDQ20・25・32PBVE(T)

Accessories Check the following accessories are included in this kit.

Name	Installation box	Lid of installation box	Clamp	Screws	Cord sticker	Installation manual		Screws
Quantity	x 1	x 1	x 3	x 3	x 3	KRP1B101 KRP1BA101	English x 1 English x 1, Japanese x 1	x 2
Shape	① 	② 	③ 	④ 	⑤ 	⑥  (This manual)		⑦ 

Applicable adaptor

(IN CASE OF FXZQ TYPE)

Adaptor	Kit name
Adaptor for wiring	KRP1BA57
Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices(1)	KRP2A62
Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices(2)	KRP4AA53
External control adaptor for outdoor units	DTA104A62

Applicable adaptor

(IN CASE OF FXD, FXDQ TYPE)

Adaptor	Kit name
Adaptor for wiring	KRP1B56
Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices(1)	KRP2A53
Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices(2)	KRP4A54
External control adaptor for outdoor units	DTA104A53

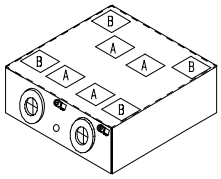
<IN CASE OF FXZQ TYPE>

❶ Method of attaching the adaptor

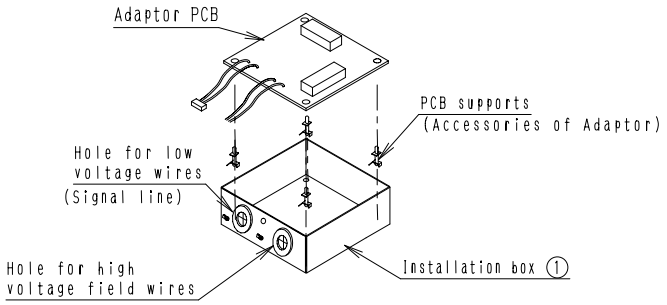
Attach the adaptor

Attach the adaptor in the Installation box ①by the PCB supports.
(PCB supports are accessories of adaptor.)

- Detach the aluminum tape of the Installation box ① to insert the PCB supports.
  Adaptor : KRP1BA57 --- Detach the aluminume tapes A.
  KRP2A62, KRP4AA53, DTA104A62 --- Detach the aluminume tapes B.



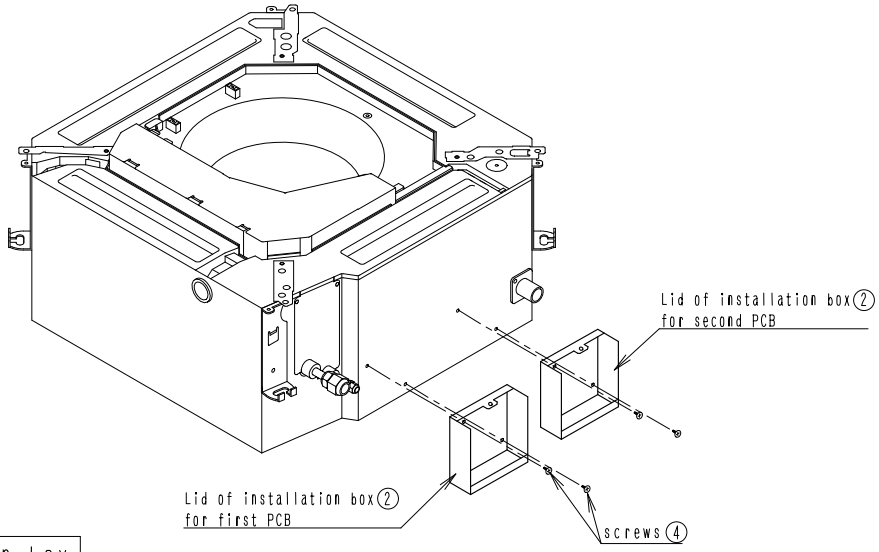
- Connect wires with the adaptor before attaching to the Installation box①.
- Low voltage wires and high voltage wires should be kept space at least 50mm from each other.



C: 1P107687C

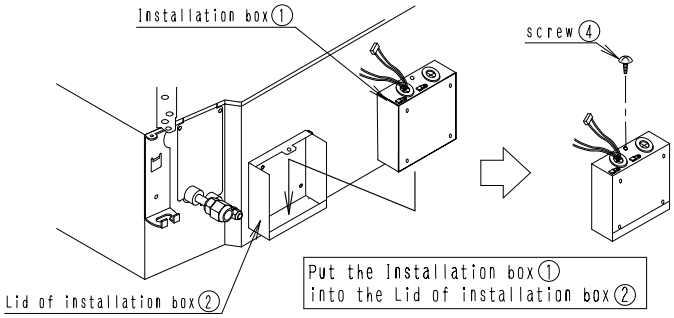
Attach the Lid of installation box

Attach the Lid of installation box ② to indoor unit with two screws.
If two adaptors are installed, the second adaptor is attached to side of first one.



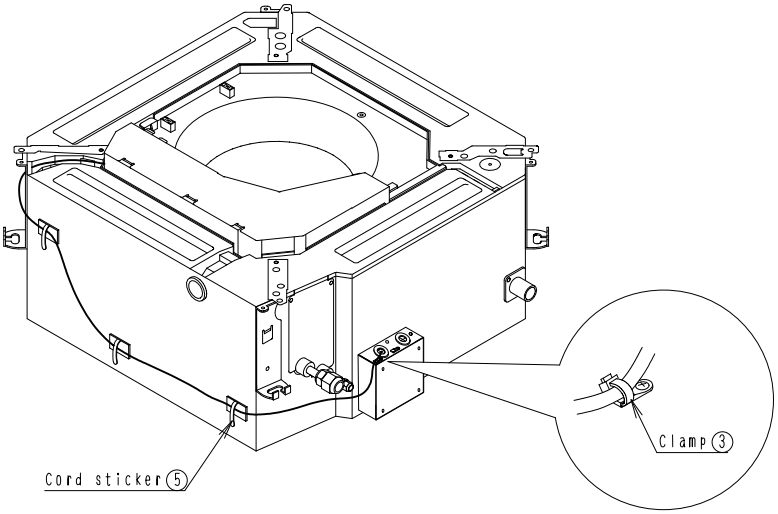
Attach the Installation box

Attach the Installation box ① into the Lid of installation box ② with the screw.



❷ Method of wiring processing

- Connect wires with the control box. (Refer to the installation manual attached to the adaptor.)
- After connecting wires with the control box, clamp wires by using the cord stickers ⑤ and the clamps ③ as shown in the below drawing.



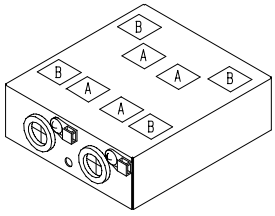
1P107687C

<IN CASE OF FXD, FXDQ TYPE>

❶ Method of attaching the adaptor

Attach the adaptor

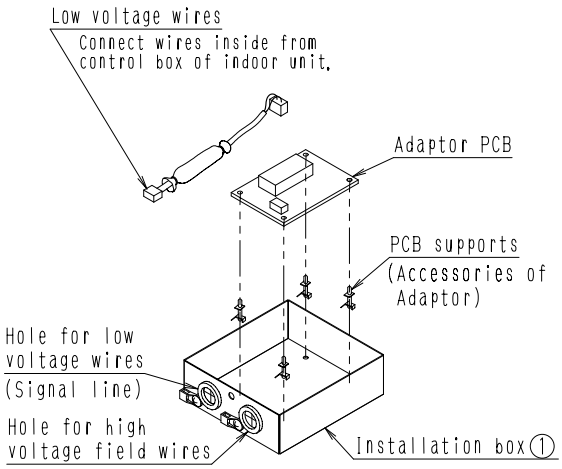
- Detach the aluminum tape of the Installation box ① to insert the PCB supports.
  Adaptor : KRP1BA56 --- Detach the aluminume tapes A.
  Adaptor : KRP2A53, KRP4A54, DTA104A53 --- Detach the aluminume tapes B.



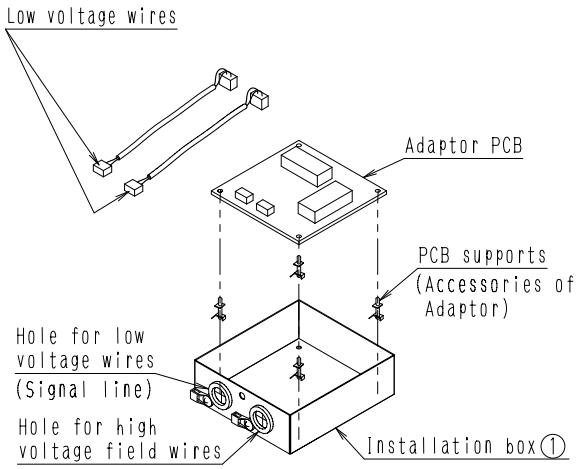
Attach the adaptor in the Installation box ① by the PCB supports.
(PCB supports are accessories of adaptor.)

- Connect wires with the adaptor before attaching to the Installation box①.
- Low voltage wires and high voltage wires should be kept space at least 50mm from each other.

IN CASE OF KRP1B56 TYPE

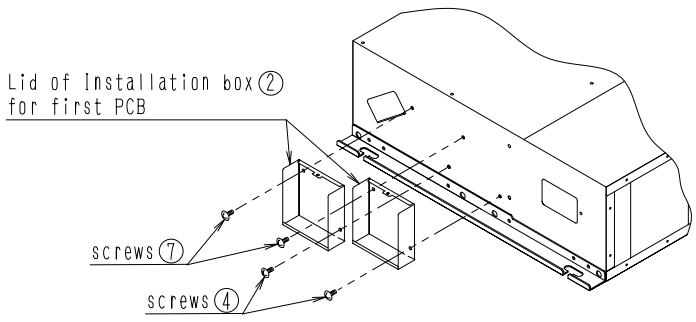


IN CASE OF KRP2A53, KRP4A54, DTA104A53 TYPE



Attach the Lid of installation box

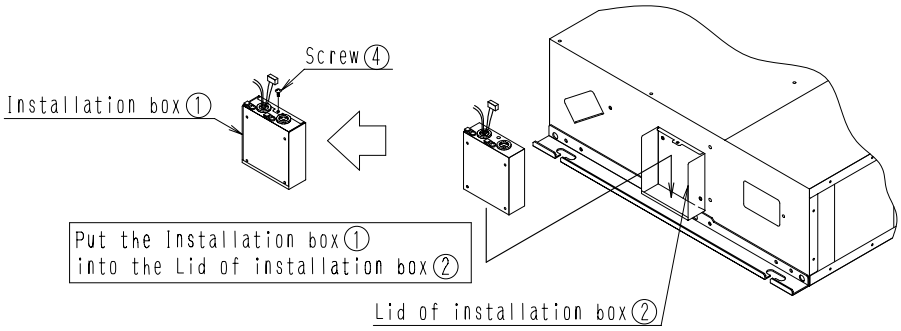
- Attach the Lid of installation box② to indoor unit with two screws④.
- If two adaptors are installed, the second adaptor is attached to side of first one.
- When the Insulation kit is used together, attach the Lid of installation box② to indoor unit with two screws⑦.



1P133507

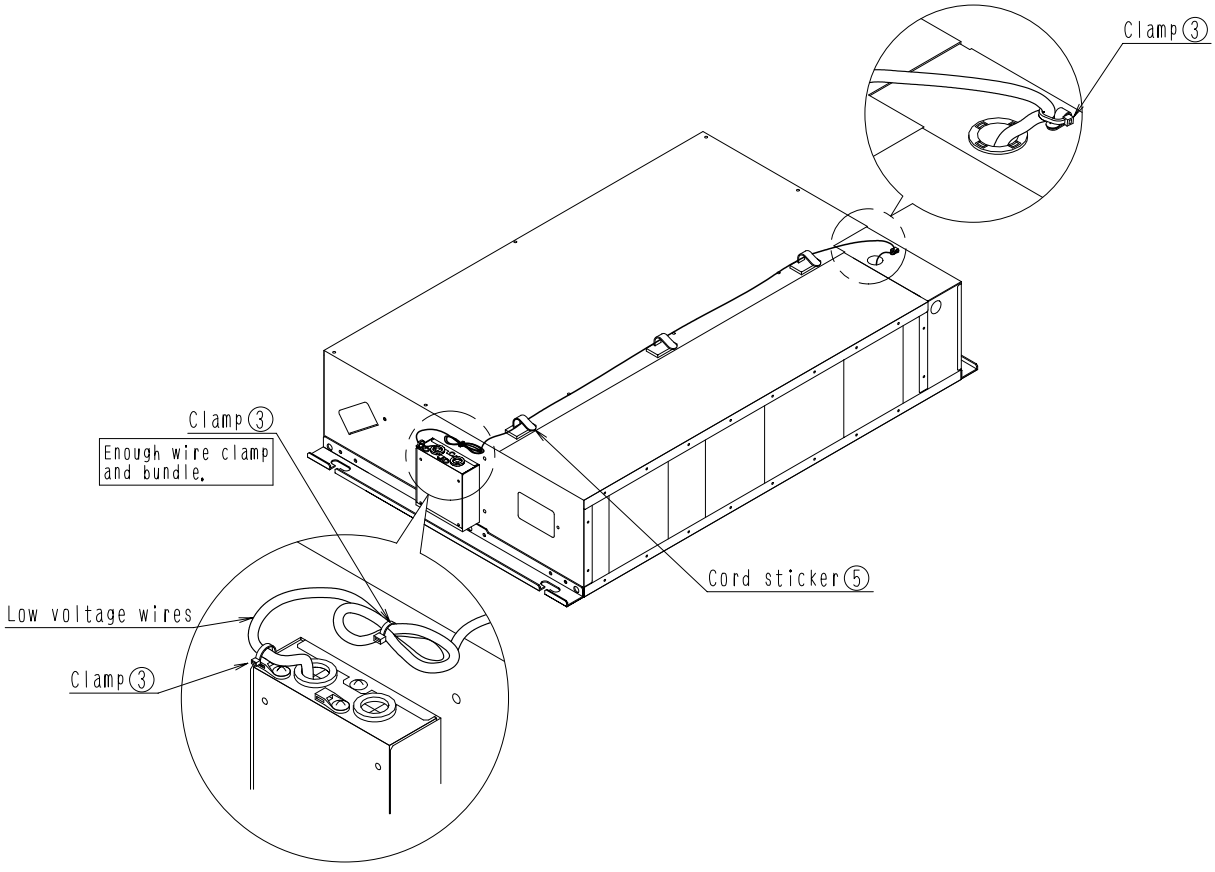
Attach the Installation box

Attach the Installation box ① into the Lid of installation box ② with the screw ④.



❷ Method of wiring processing

- Connect wires with control box. (Refer to the installation manual attached to the adaptor.)
- After connecting wires with the control box, clamp wires by using the cord stickers ⑤ and the clamps ③ as shown in the below drawing.



1P133507

10.3 KRP1DA98

Installation

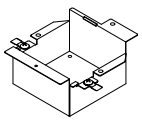
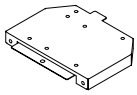
Kit name	Indoor unit model that party crowded is possible	
KRP1DA98	VRV	FXF25・32・40・50・63・80・100・125LVE

Caution

- This box is mountable on the ceiling mounted cassette type (multi-flow type) unit. After confirming the indoor unit model name, mount this box on the unit listed in the table shown right.
- When mounting the box, see also the indoor unit installation manual and the adapter PCB (Printed Circuit Board) mounting instruction.

Accessories

Check if the following accessories are included with your kit.

Name	Adapter box	Adapter box cover	Clamp	Screw(1)	Screw(2)	Installation manual
Quantity	1PC.	1PC.	8PCS.	2PCS.	2PCS.	1PC.
Shape				 M4×12	 M4×8	

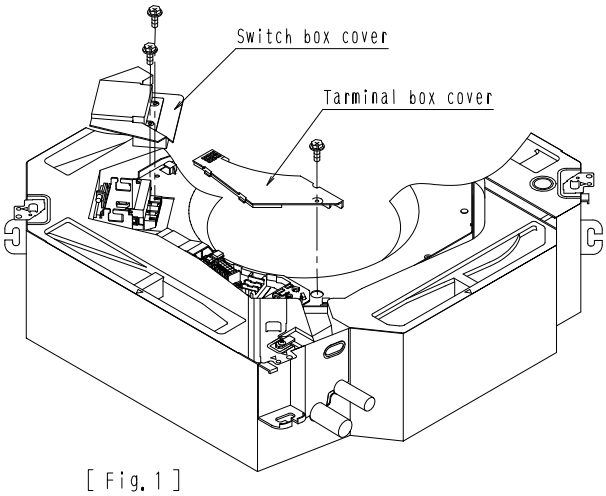
❶ Mounting the adapter box

《Preparation before wiring》

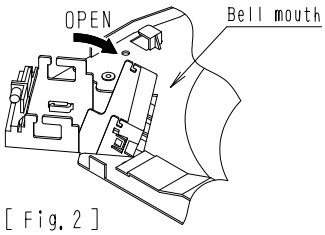
①Remove the switch box cover and the terminal cover. (Fig. 1)
②Open the switch box until it almost touches the bell mouth. (Fig. 2)

《Mounting the adapter box》

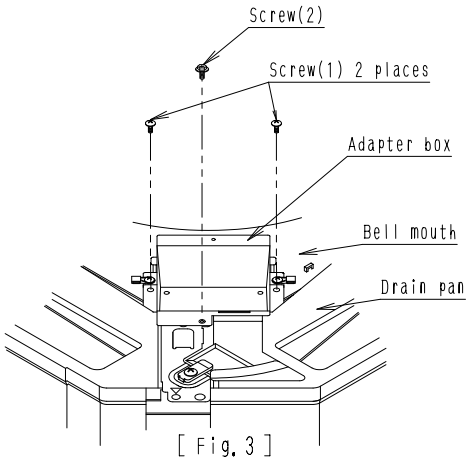
①Fix the box with the attached fixing screws (1) at two places and the fixing screw (2) at one place. (Fig. 3)



[Fig. 1]



[Fig. 2]



[Fig. 3]

C: 1P086302B

❷ Mounting the adapter PCB

《How to mount the adapter PCB》

①Connect the wiring to the adapter PCB.
(The work is easier if the wiring is connected to the PCB first.)
- See the instruction attached to the adapter PCB for where to connect the wiring.

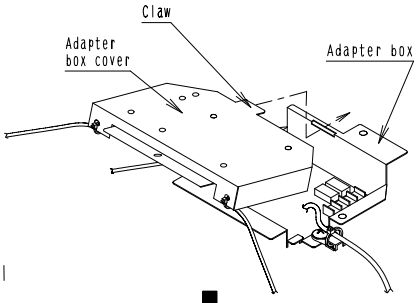
②Mount the adapter PCB on the adapter box and the adapter box cover.

Adapter PCB	Place where to mount
Adapter for wiring	The PCB to be mounted on the adapter box cover. (Fig. 1)
Wiring adapter for electrical appendices(1)(2)	The PCB to be mounted on the adapter box. (Fig. 2)

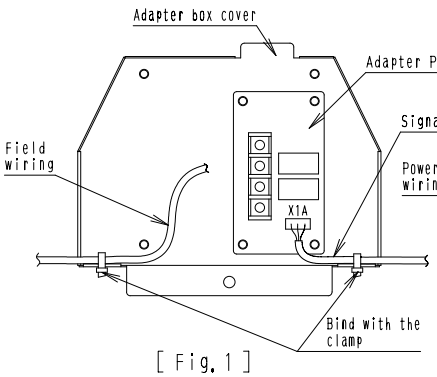
- For the mounting position of the adapter PCB, see the instruction attached to the adapter PCB.

③Bind the wiring from the adapter PCB (signal wires, power supply wires) with the attached clamp. (Fig. 1) (Fig. 2)

④After putting the claw of the cover into the hole of the box, fix them with the attached screw (2). (Fig. 3)
- Take precautions to prevent the wires from getting caught.

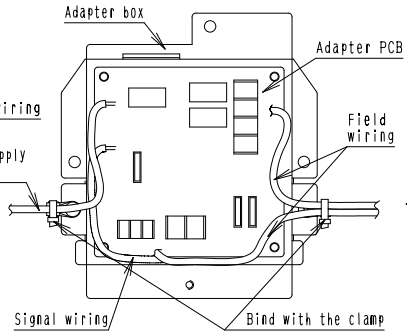


〈Adapter for wiring〉

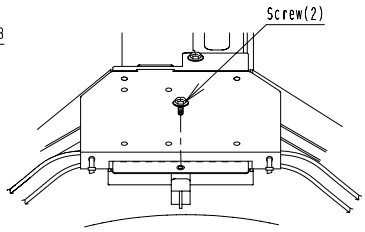


[Fig. 1]

〈Wiring adapter for electrical appendices(1)(2)〉



[Fig. 2]



[Fig. 3]

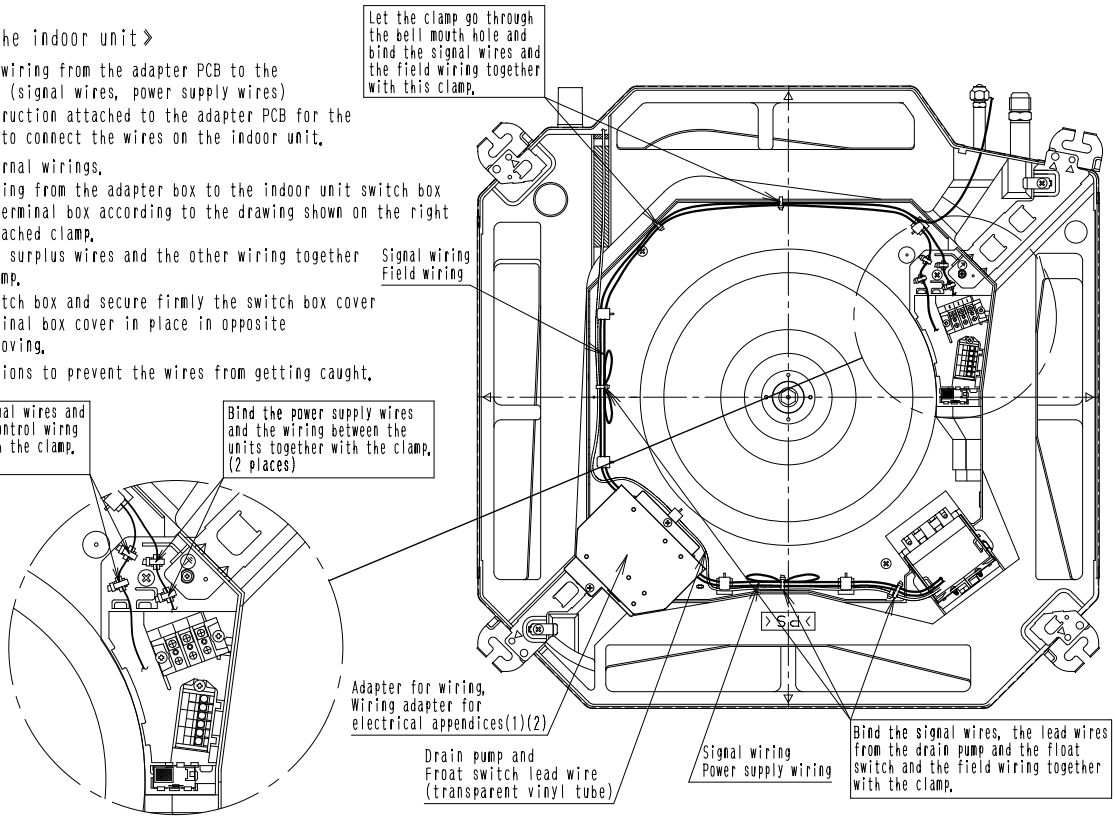
❸ How to handle the wiring

《Wiring to the indoor unit》

Connect the wiring from the adapter PCB to the indoor unit. (signal wires, power supply wires)
- See the instruction attached to the adapter PCB for the place where to connect the wires on the indoor unit.

①Fix the internal wirings.
- Bind the wiring from the adapter box to the indoor unit switch box and to the terminal box according to the drawing shown on the right with the attached clamp.
- Bind the the surplus wires and the other wiring together with the clamp.

②Shut the switch box and secure firmly the switch box cover and the terminal box cover in place in opposite order of removing.
- Take precautions to prevent the wires from getting caught.

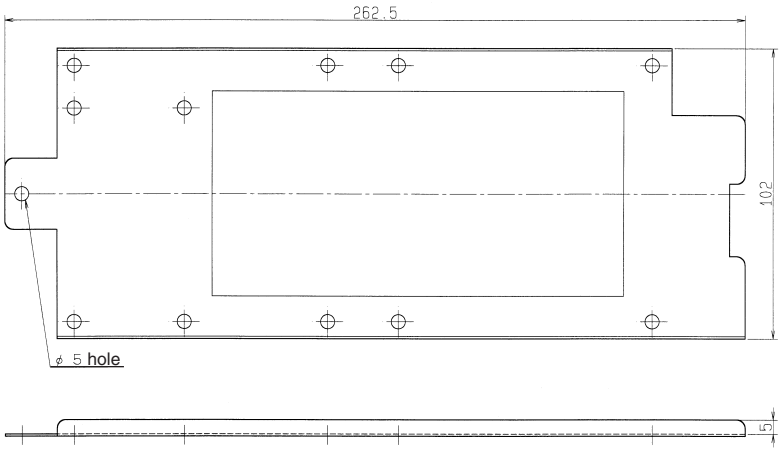


1P086302B

10.4 KRP1B96 / KRP4A91

Dimensions

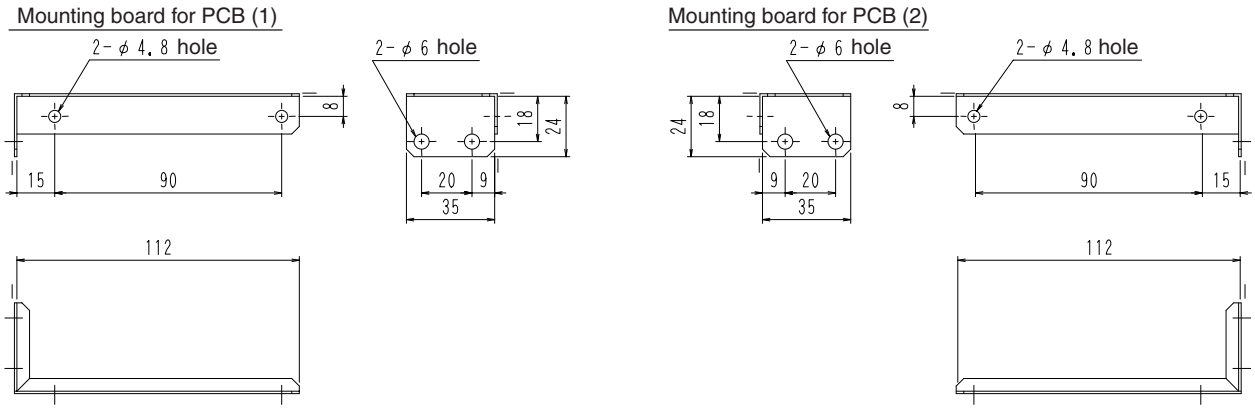
KRP1B96 Unit: mm



Material: Hot-dip zinc-coated carbon steel sheet

D3K1581

KRP4A91 Unit: mm



Material: Hot-dip zinc-coated carbon steel sheet

D3K2797

10.5 KRP1B100

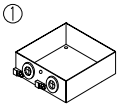
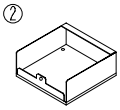
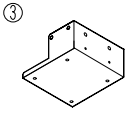
Notes

- This kit can be used with the indoor air conditioners (duct type).
- One kit is required for each adaptor PC board.
- Refer to the installation manual of the indoor air conditioners and adaptor PCB additionally when this kit is installed.

Kit name	Indoor air conditioner in which this kit is installed.
KRP1B100	FDY06・08・10・15・20K FXYD-KAVE

Accessories

Check whether the following accessories are included in this kit.

Name	Installation box	Cover for installation box	Support plate for installation box	Clamp material	Screws	Cord sticker	Installation manual
Quantity	x 1	x 1	x 1	x 2	x 5	x 3	x 1
Shape	① 	② 	③ 	④ 	⑤ 	⑥ 	⑦  (This manual)

Applicable adaptor PCB

Adaptor PCB	Kit name
Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices	KRP4A53

Adaptor PCB	Kit name
Adaptor for wiring	KRP1B57

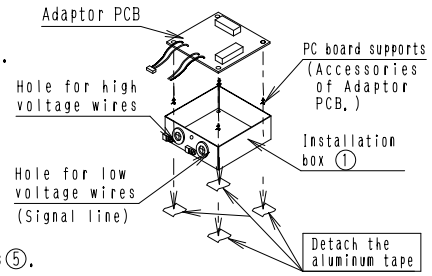
NOTE ✱)
In case of only FDY_K Series,
The adaptor for wiring
and the interface adaptor for Skyair series
can be not installed together.

❶ Method of installing the adaptor PCB

Installation of adaptor PCB

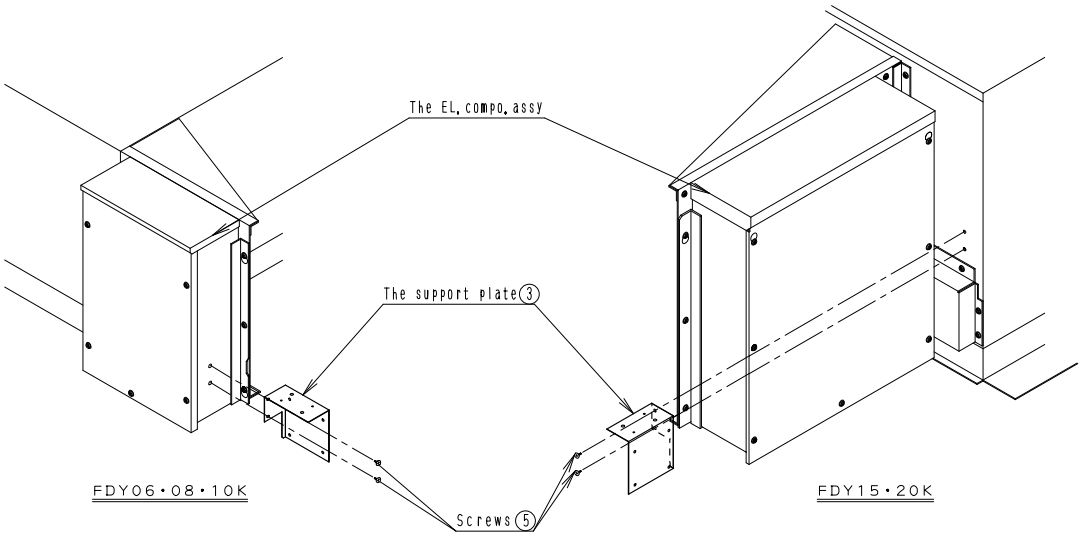
The adaptor PCB is installed in the installation box ①by the PC board supports .

- Detach the aluminum tape of the hole of the installation box ① which inserts the PC board supports .
- Connect wires with the adaptor PCB before attaching to the installation box①.
- Be sure to pass the hole with the space of high and low voltage wires kept.



Attaching the support plate for installation box

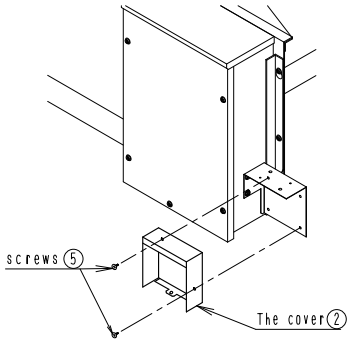
Attach the support plate③to the indoor unit (EL. compo. assy) with the two screws⑤.



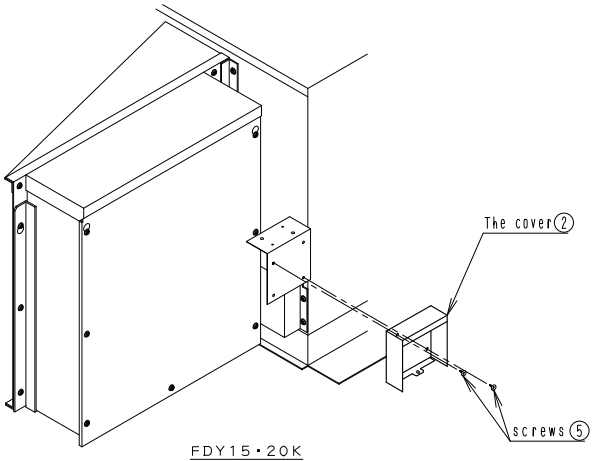
C: 1P078423

Attaching the cover for installation box

Attach the cover② in the support plate③with two screws.



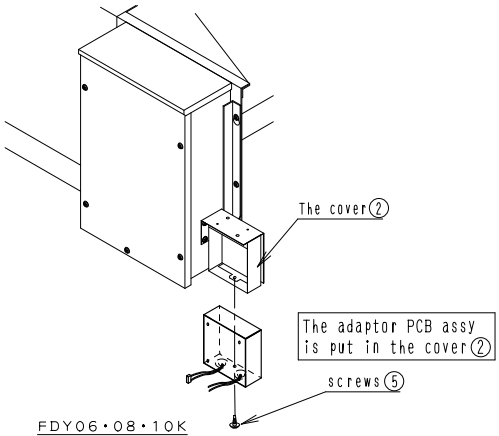
FDY06・08・10K



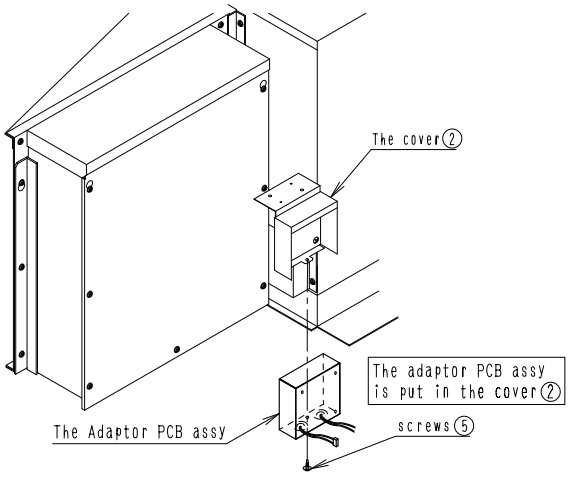
FDY15・20K

Attaching the adaptor PCB assy.

Attach the adaptor PCB assy to the cover②with the screw.



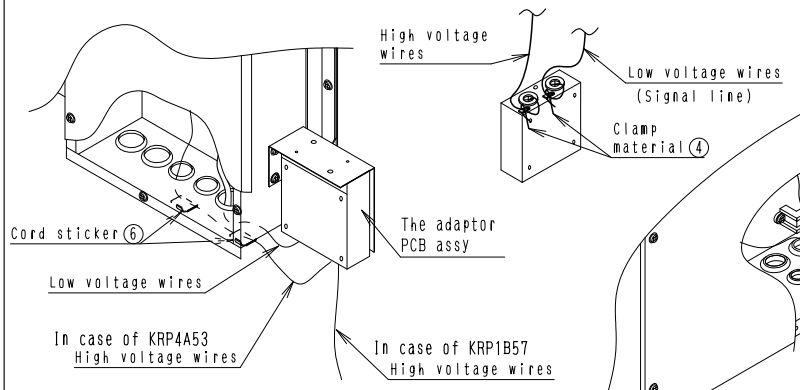
FDY06・08・10K



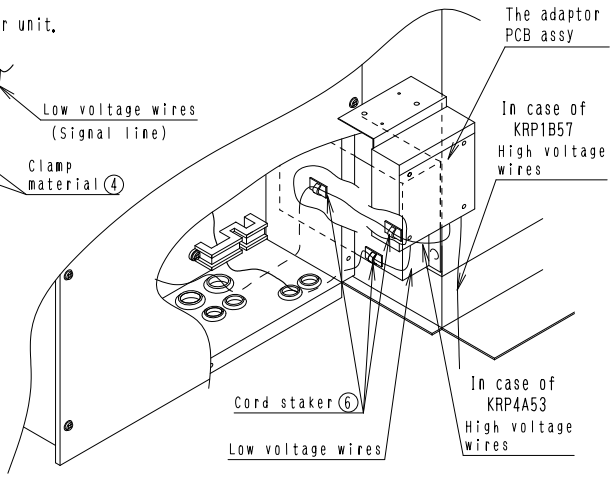
FDY15・20K

❷ Method of wiring processing

- Wire the adaptor PCB as explained in the installation manual provided with the adaptor PCB.
- After connecting wiring with the EL. compo. assy, clamp wires by using the cord sticker⑥and teh clamp material④ as shown in the below drawing.
  Be careful that neither wires are twisted or bent.
- Check after wiring and attaching the adaptor PCB assy to indoor unit.



FDY06・08・10K



FDY15・20K

C: 1P078423

10.6 KRP4A96

Caution

- This plate is mountable on the ceiling mounted duct type unit. After confirming the indoor unit model name, mount this plate on the unit listed in the table shown bottom.
- When mounting the plate, see also the indoor unit installation manual and the adaptor PCB (Printed Circuit Board) mounting instruction.
- Fixing method is not on the installation manual attached to the adapter PCB. Please follow directions on this sheet.

Kit name	Indoor unit model that party crowded is possible		
KRP4A96	Ceiling mounted duct type unit	SkyAir	FBQ-DV1 FBQ-DVET
		VRV	FXMQ-PVE

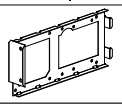
*See the DAIKIN catalog for the details

Accessories

- Check if the following accessories are included with your kit.

<Precaution>

The accessories are required for the installation of the air conditioner. Be sure to keep them until the installation work is completed.

Name	Adaptor plate	Screw	Sealing material	Clamp	Installation manual
Quantity	1PC.	2PCS.	2PC.	8PCS.	1PC.
Shape		 M4×8			

<Caution>

- All field supplied parts and materials and electric works must conform to local codes.
- Use copper wire only.
- For electric wiring work, refer to also "Wiring diagram" attached to the control box lid.
- All wiring must be performed by an authorized electrician.
- A circuit breaker capable of shutting down power supply to the entire system must be installed.

❶ Mounting the adaptor plate

《Wiring to the indoor unit》

① Remove the control box lid. [Fig.1]

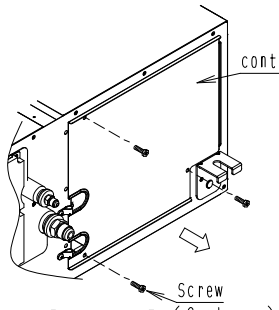
② Connect the wiring to the indoor unit. (The work is easier if the wiring is connected first.)

- See the instruction attached to the adaptor PCB for the place where to connect the wires on the indoor unit.
- Please see the connector location on (figure 1) on the ❷ How to mount the adaptor PCB and handle the wiring .

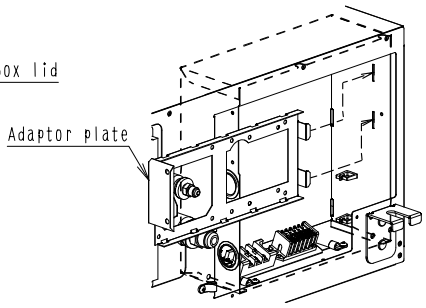
《Mounting the adaptor plate》

① Putting the claw of the adaptor plate into the hole of the box. [Fig.2]

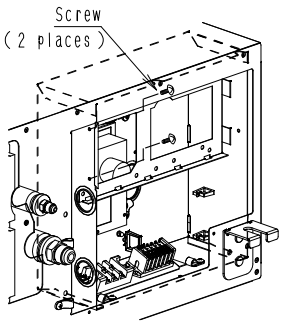
② Fix the box with the attached fixing screws at two places. [Fig.3]



[Fig.1]



[Fig.2]

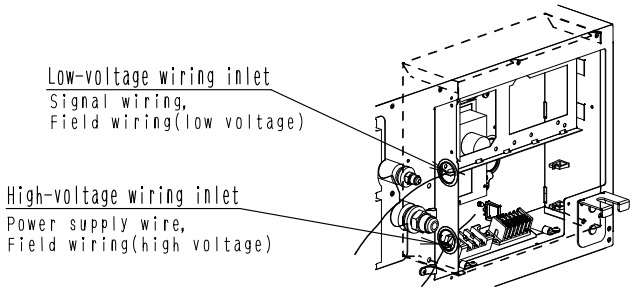


[Fig.3]

❷ How to mount the adaptor PCB and handle the wiring

《How To Lead-in External Wires 》

Lay the wires in the control box through the wire inlet on the side of the control box.



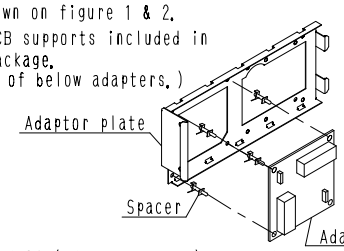
C: 2P226887

《How to mount the adaptor PCB》

① Connect the wiring to the adaptor PCB.
(The work is easier if the wiring is connected to the PCB first.)
- See the instruction attached to the adaptor PCB for where to connect the wiring.

② Mount adapter PCB onto the mounting plate (in the direction) as shown on figure 1 & 2.
- Use PCB supports included in the package.

(for any of below adapters.)

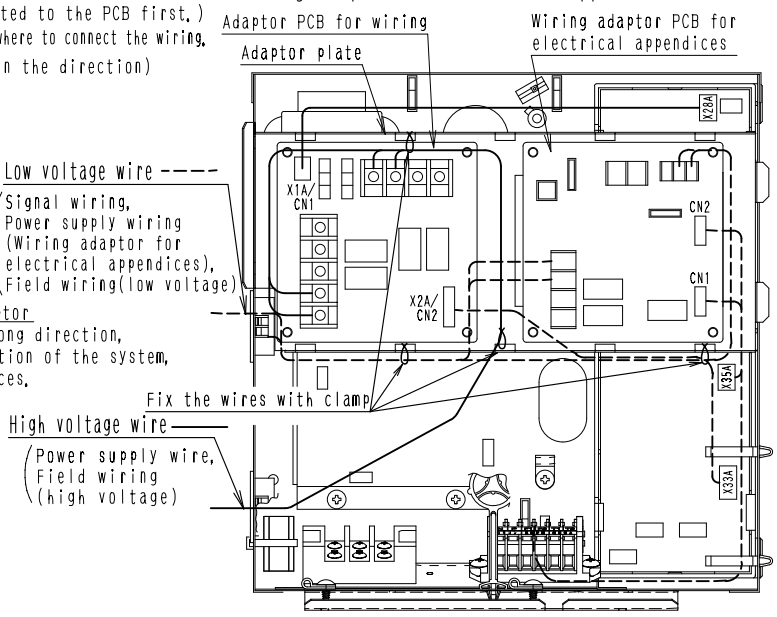


《Caution》If (adapter PCB is) mounted in a wrong direction, electric noise may cause malfunction of the system, or may influence upon other devices.

Adaptor PCB		Place where to mount
Adaptor for wiring	KRP1C64	(Fig. 1)
Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices (※1)	KRP4AA51 KRP2A61	(Fig. 1)
External control adaptor for outdoor unit (※1)	DTA104A61	(Fig. 2)

(※1) adapter cannot be mounted 2 or more together.

〈Adaptor for wiring, Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices〉



(Fig. 1)

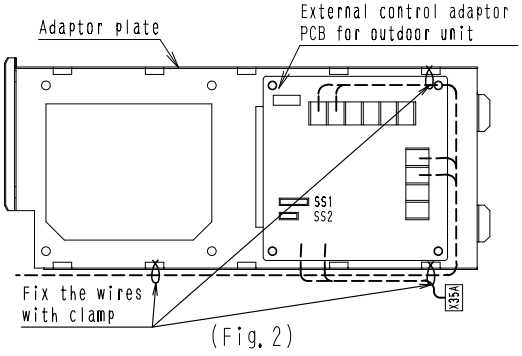
《How to handle the wiring》

《Caution》Do not make high-voltage and low-voltage wires run in parallel. Electric noise may cause malfunction of the system, or may influence upon other devices.

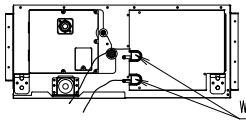
① Fix the internal wirings.
Bind the wiring from the adaptor plate to the indoor unit control box according to the drawing shown on the right with the attached clamp.
(Put the clamping materials through the corner holes to fix wires.)
- Bind the the surplus wires and the other wiring together with the clamp.

② Put the control box lid, and wrap the wire sealing material around the wires so as to block the wire through holes.
- Take precautions to prevent the wires from getting caught.
- After all the wiring connections are done, fill in any gaps in the through holes with putty or insulation (procured locally) to prevent small animals and insects from entering the unit from outside.
(If any do get in, they could cause short circuits in the control box.)

〈External control adaptor for outdoor unit〉

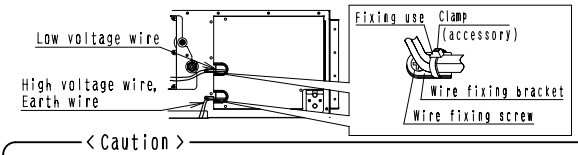


(Fig. 2)

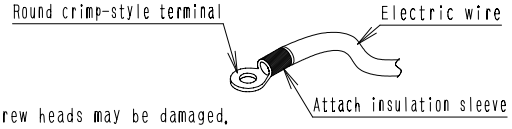


⚠Warning
Trim and lay the wiring neatly and attach the control box lid securely.
An electric shock or fire may result if the control box lid catches any wiring or the wires push up the lid.

③ Connect round crimp-style terminals provided with insulation sleeves to the terminal block for power supply.
- See the instruction attached to the indoor unit.



〈Caution〉
- Connect proper wires securely and fix the wires so that external force will not be imposed on the terminals.
- Use an appropriate screwdriver to tighten the terminal screws. The screw heads may be damaged if the screwdriver is too small and the terminal screws will not be tightened properly.
- Do not tighten the terminal screws excessively, or otherwise the screw heads may be damaged.
- Refer to the table below for the required tightening torque values of the terminal screws.



	Tightening torque (N・m)
Terminal block for remote controller and transmission wires	1.18 – 1.44
Terminal block for power supply, and wiring the units	1.18 – 1.44

C: 2P226887

10.7 KRP4AA93

Item \ Model		KRP4AA93
Applicable Adaptor		KRP4AA51 / KRP4AA52 / KRP4AA53 / KRP4A54
Installation		External
Material		Hot-dip zinc-coated steel sheet for painting
Dimensions	Width	160
	Height	180
	Thickness	50

Installation

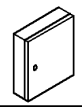
REMARKS

- This box can be mounted on the small wall mounted type indoor unit.
  One box is required for every adaptor.
- When mounting the box, see the installation manual of the indoor unit as well as the installation manual of the box.

Combination table

Kit model name	Model name of indoor unit which allows the box to be mounted	
KRP4AA93	SkyAir	FAQ71BVV1B
	VRV	FXA 20・25・32 L type FXA 45・56・63 L type FXAQ 20・25・32・45・56・63 M(A)type

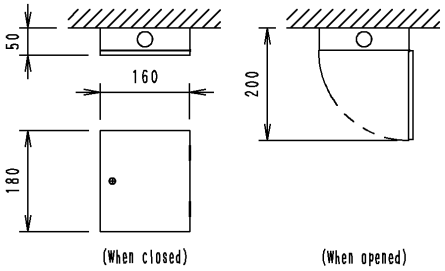
Parts included Make sure that the following parts are included.

Name	Installation box for adaptor PCB	Screw for fixing door	Plastic washer	Installation manual
Quantity	1 piece	1 piece	1 piece	1 sheet
Shape	① 	② 	③ 	④  (This sheet)

❶ Selection of mounting location

- The location of the box must be near the indoor unit and where open/ close of the door can be handled smoothly.

Caution
- Make sure to select the flat area for mounting.

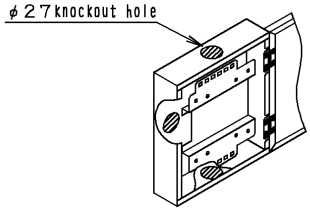


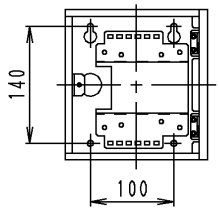
❷ Mounting the box

① Determine the wiring outlet side and open the knockout hole on the box.
- Three knockout holes for wiring outlet are located on the upper, the lower and the rear sides. (Shown right figs.)

② Determine the box mounting location properly so that it suits the wiring length and outlet location.

③ Fix the box with 4 screws (Field supplied)
- The dimensions for mounting is shown right.

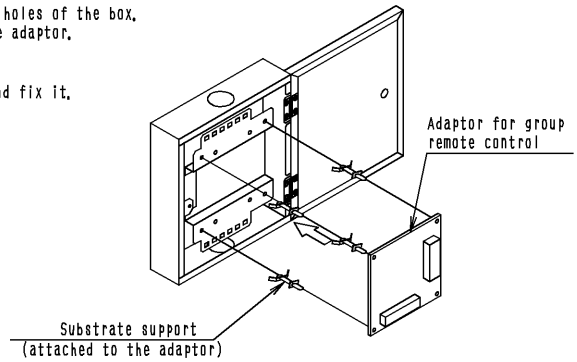




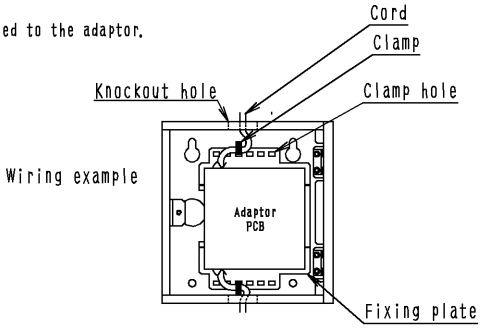
C: 3K012186D

③ Mounting the adaptor

- Fix 4 pieces of substrate supports to the holes of the box. The substrate supports are attached to the adaptor.
- Match the adaptor to substrate supports and fix it.

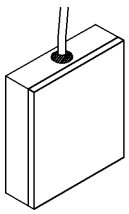


- For wiring, follow the installation manual attached to the adaptor.
- For wiring, fix the fixing plate with the clamp attached to the adaptor.

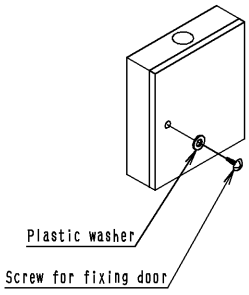


⚠Caution

- When passing wiring through the knockout holes, remove burrs around the knockout holes and protect the wiring with protective tape or conduit or bushing (field supply).
- If small animals or bugs might enter the unit, block off any gaps (hatching parts in below figure) with sealer (field supply).



- After checking the wiring, close the door and fix the door with the plastic washer and the fixing screws.



3K012186D

10.8 KRP1CA93

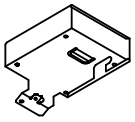
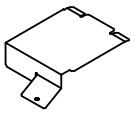
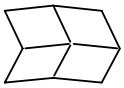
Item \ Model		KRP1CA93
Installation		Interior of unit
Material		Hot-dip zinc-coated carbon steel sheet
Dimensions (mm)	Width	109
	Length	124
	Depth	38
Component parts		Installation box. Box cover. Clamp. Screws. Installation Manual.

Installation

NOTE:

- This box can be installed to the ceiling-hang type unit.
- Each adapter plate requires one kit.

Parts included: Check the following parts are include with your unit.

Part name	Installation box main body	Installation box lid	Installation screw	Fixing screw for lid	Fixture	Installation manual	Clamp
Shape			 M4×8	 M4×12			
Quantiity	1	1	2	2	2	1	4

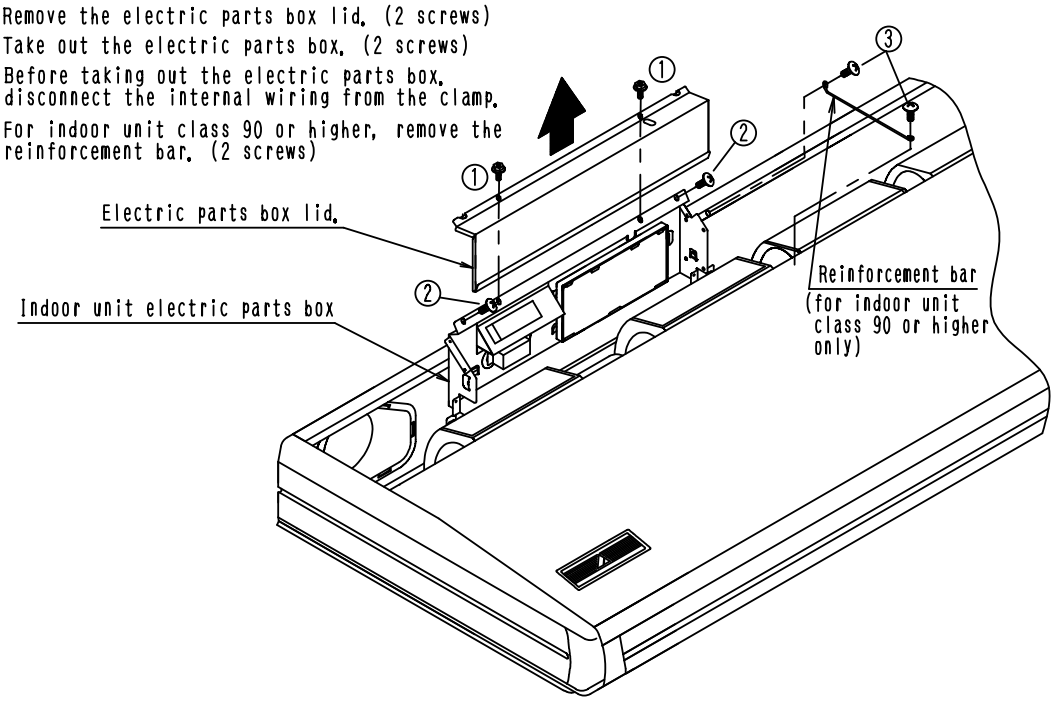
Applicable adapter plate

Adapter plate name	Kit name
(Group) Remote control adapter	KRP2A62, KRP4AA52

1 Installation preparation

① Remove the electric parts box lid. (2 screws)
② Take out the electric parts box. (2 screws)
- Before taking out the electric parts box, disconnect the internal wiring from the clamp.

③ For indoor unit class 90 or higher, remove the reinforcement bar. (2 screws)



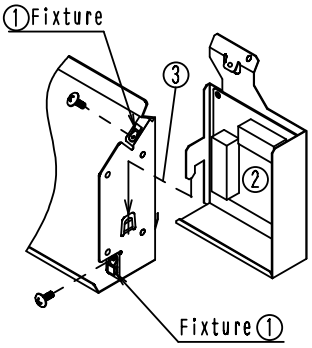
3K09595B

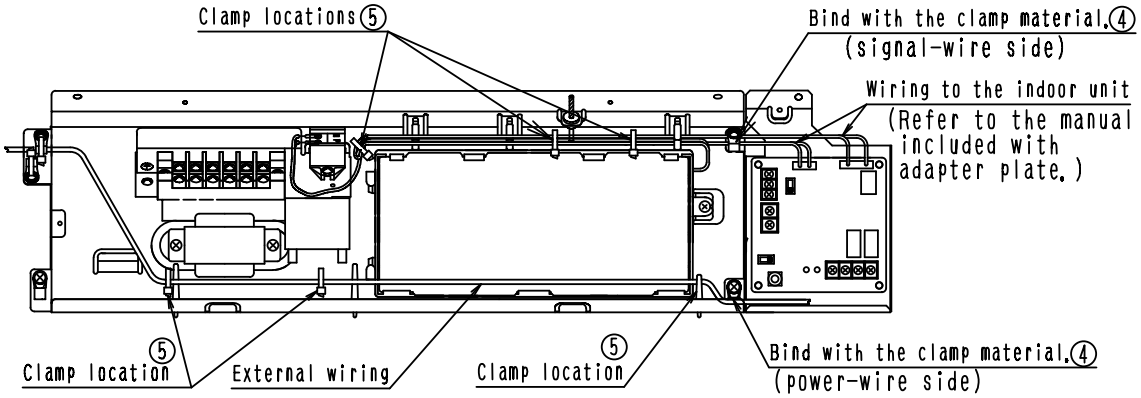
② Installation of Adapter Plate

①Install the fixture included with the kit to the electric parts box. (2 locations)
②Install the adapter plate to the adapter installation box.
- ●For installation direction of the adapter plate, refer to the installation manual included with the adapter plate.

③Temporarily hang the adapter installation box on the electric parts box of the indoor unit.
④Connect wires to the adapter plate and the indoor unit.
- ●For wiring locations, refer to the manual included with the adapter plate.
- ●Separate power wires and signal wires. Refer to the figure below on how to wire inside the electric parts box.
- ●Bind the wires taken out of the adapter plate together with the fixture installed in ① using the included clamp material.

⑤Fix the intemal wiring.
- ●Refer to the figure below on how to fix the wires inside the electric parts box to the clamp material.
- ●Bind the remaining wires with the clamp material, and house them inside the electric parts box.



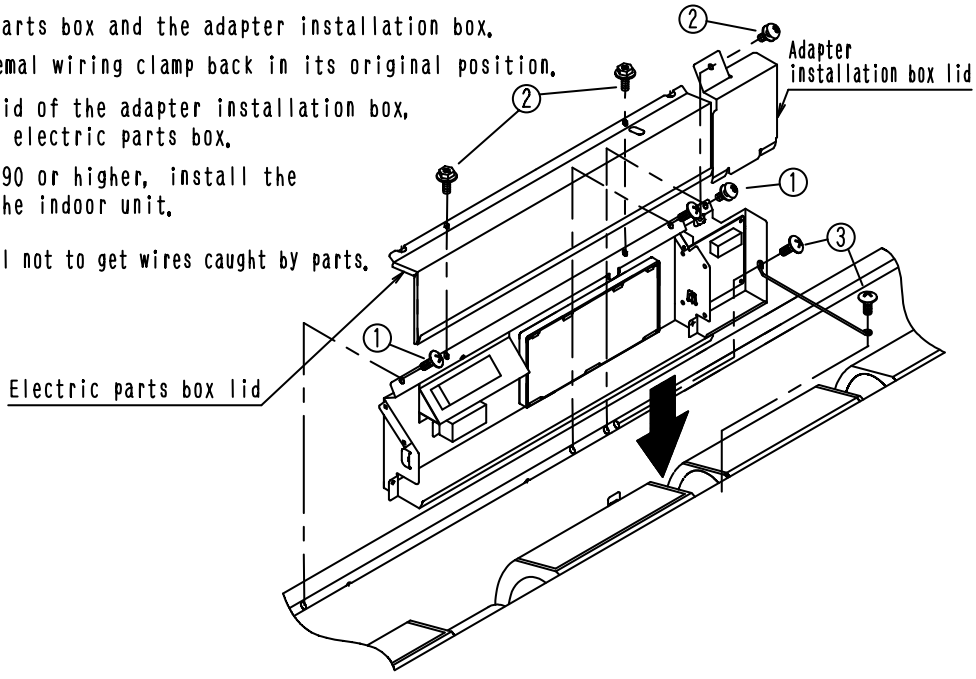


③ Installation to the Indoor Unit

①Install the electric parts box and the adapter installation box.
- ●Place the removed intemal wiring clamp back in its original position.

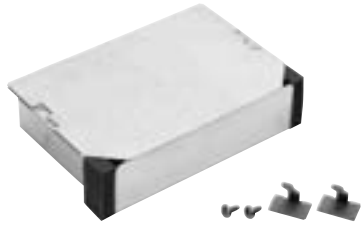
②After installing the lid of the adapter installation box, install the lid of the electric parts box.
③For indoor unit class 90 or higher, install the reinforcement bar to the indoor unit.

※When installing, be careful not to get wires caught by parts.



3K09595B

10.9 KRP1BA97



Item \ Model		KRP1BA97
Adaptor for Wiring		KRP4AA53
Installation		Interior
Material		Hot-dip zinc-coated carbon steel sheet
Dimensions (mm)	Width	110
	Length	165
	Depth	41

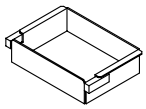
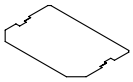
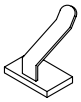
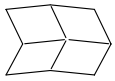
Installation

Notes

- This kit is also attachable to the ceiling-suspended unit.
- Also refer to the indoor unit body installation manual before installation.

Description of Parts

Make sure that the following parts are included.

Name	Installation box body	Installation box cover	Mounting screw	Cable Tie	Installation manual
Shape			 M4 × 12		
Quantity	1 unit	1 pc.	2 pcs.	2 pcs.	1 pc.

1. Preparation for mounting

(1) Remove the suction grill and open the cover of the switch box. (2 screws)
(2) Remove the lead wire of the swing motor and suction thermistor from the bell mouth (Fig. 1-1).
(3) Remove the bell mouth from the indoor unit body (No. of screws: 3) (Fig. 1-2).
(4) Use a nipper or cutter to cut two openings for bell mouth wiring (Fig. 1-3).
(5) Drill two holes in the concave of the bell mouth for the mounting screws (Fig. 1-3).

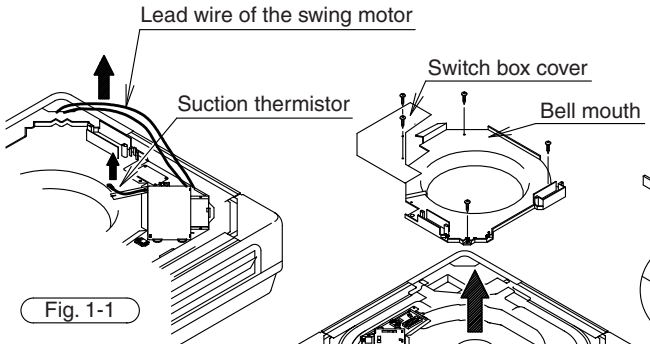


Fig. 1-1

Fig. 1-2

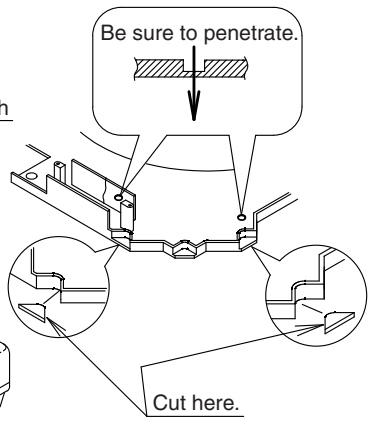


Fig. 1-3

J: 2P002952C

2. Mounting the adapter (Also refer to the installation manual supplied with the adapter.)

(1) Attach circuit board supports (4 pieces) to the holes of the installation box body (Fig. 2-1).
(Attach them before mounting the adapter.)
Circuit board supports are supplied with the adapter.

(2) Mount the adapter according to the position of the circuit board supports.
Also connect the external wires to the adapter.

(3) Attach the installation box body to the bell mouth with two screws supplied (Fig. 2-2).

(4) Attach the bell mouth to the indoor unit body (Fig. 2-3).

(5) Return the swing motor lead wire and the suction thermistor to the original positions and fix them.

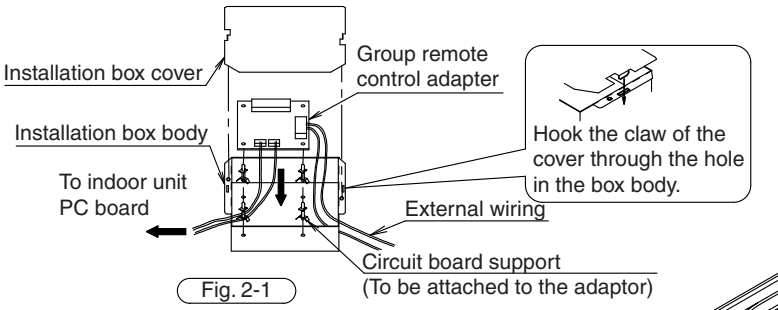


Fig. 2-1

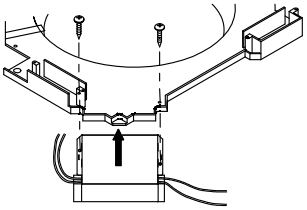


Fig. 2-2

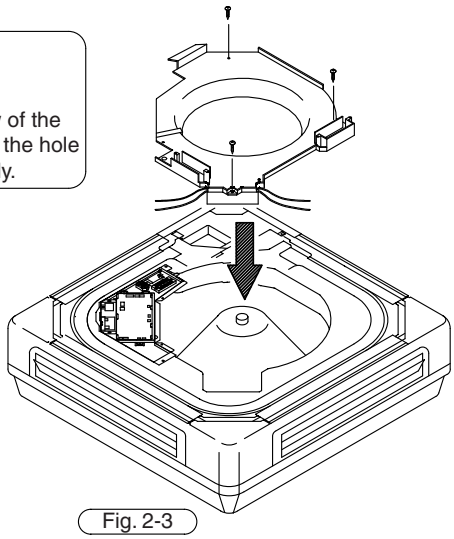


Fig. 2-3

3. Wiring method

Refer to the installation manual supplied with the adapter for electric wiring.

(1) After completing the installation work, attach the cable sticker supplied to fix the cable as shown in the figure below. Pay attention not to bend the cable.

(2) Coil excess lead wire in the switch box and secure it with a tie wrap supplied with the adapter (Fig. 3-1).

(3) Mount the switch box cover (Fig. 3-2).

(4) Mount the suction grill.

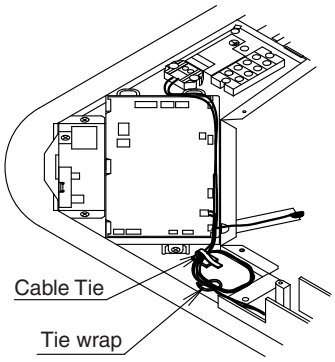


Fig. 3-1

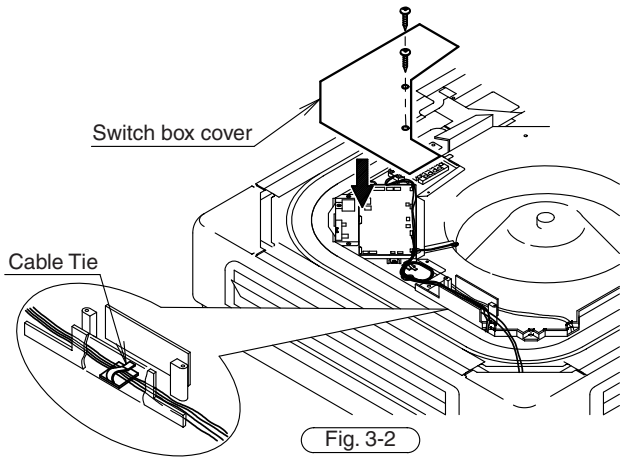


Fig. 3-2

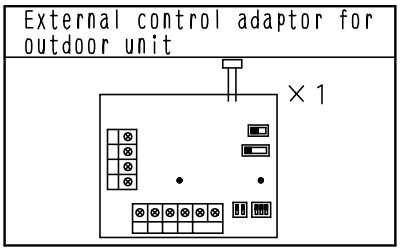
J: 2P002952C

11. External Control Adaptor for Outdoor Unit

11.1 DTA104A61 / DTA104A62 / DTA104A53

Accessories Check the following accessories are included in the kit before the installation.

External control adaptor for outdoor unit



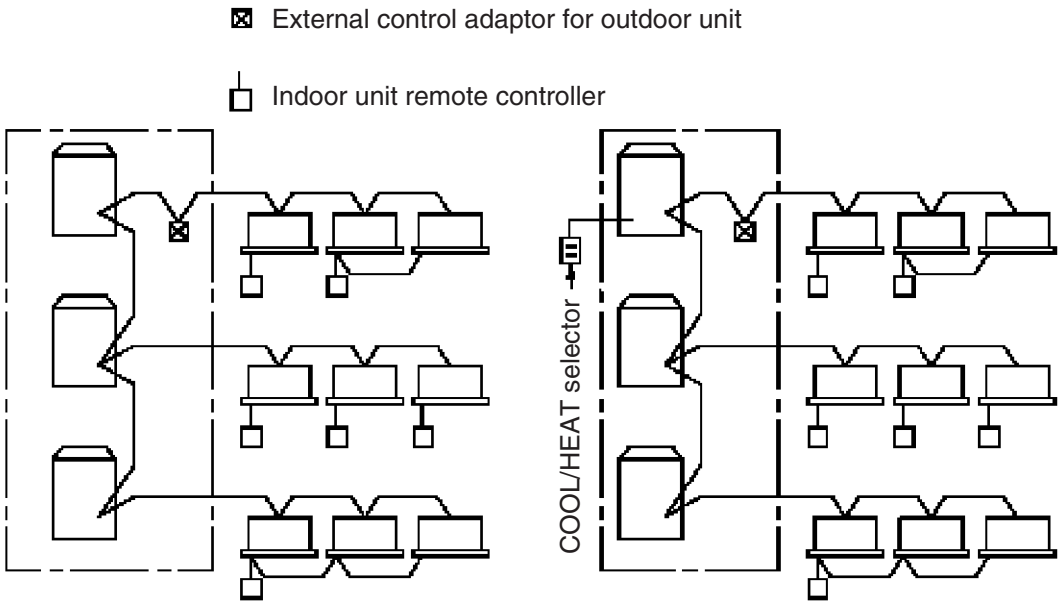
PCB support	× 4
Clamp	× 3
Installation manual	× 8

NOTES
- The kit type (DTA104A61 type, DTA104A62 type, DTA104A53 type)varies according to air conditioner model.
- The installation box for adaptor PCB are required with the following air conditioner models.

FXC(Q) KRP1B96
FXFQ-P KRP1H98
FXF..... KRP1DA98
FXH(Q) KRP1CA93
FXA(Q) KRP4AA93
FXD(Q), FXZQ KRP1BA101
FXMQ-P KRP4A96
FXYD KRP1B100
FXS, FXSYQ KRP4A91

1 General description of system

With the external control adaptor, outdoor units are controlled as follows.
1.Operation mode (COOL/HEAT/FAN) is switched simultaneously for more than one outdoor unit.
- If switching operation mode by indoor unit remote controller or COOL/HEAT selector.
- Except RSEY-K

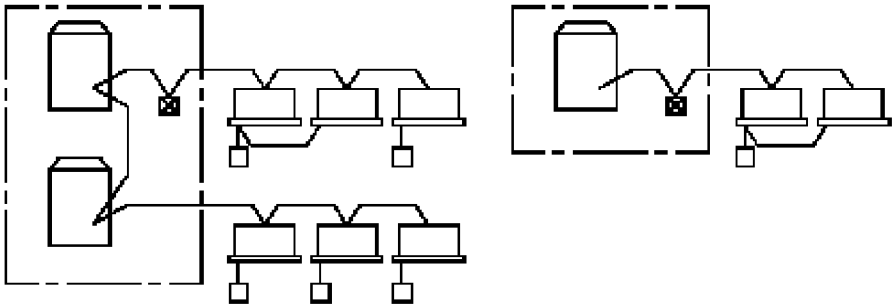


You can simultaneously switch operation mode for outdoor units in [ ].

C: 1PA63164E

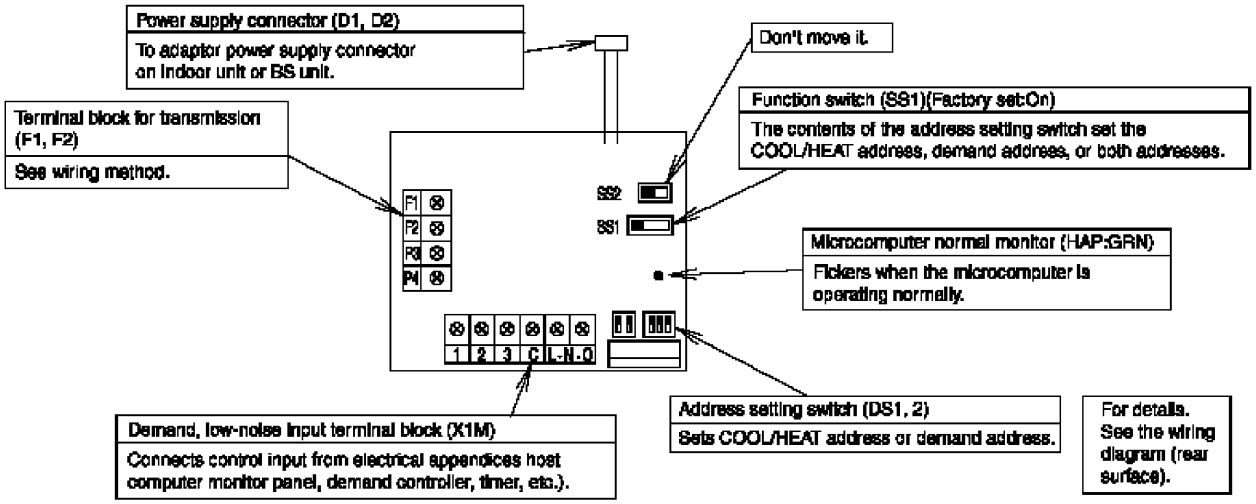
2.Demand control and low-noise control are executed simultaneously for more than outdoor unit.

• Except RSEY-K



Demand control and low-noise control are executed simultaneously for outdoor units in [ ].

2 Names of parts and functions



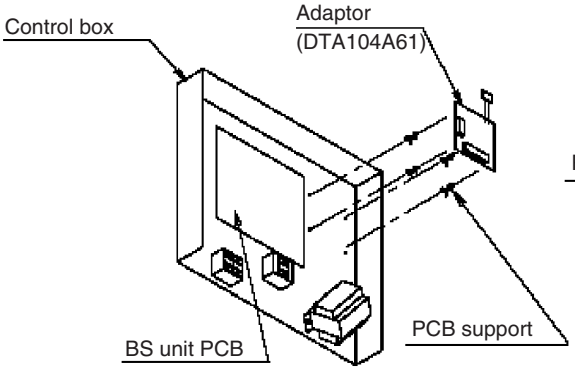
C: 1PA63164E

❸ Installation

- Install the adaptor inside the electric parts box of indoor unit of same refrigerant circuit.
- If installing on a BS unit, install the adaptor inside the electric parts box of the BS unit.

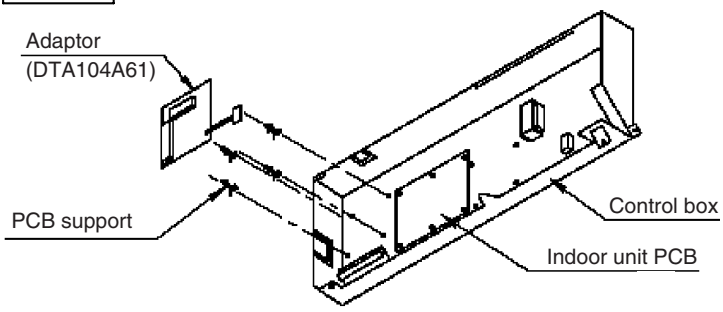
《 BS Unit 》

BSV(Q)



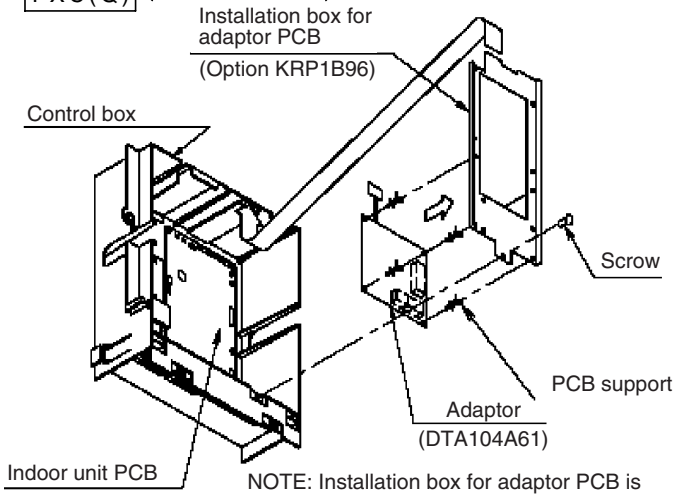
《 Ceiling-mounted cassette type 》

FXK(Q) (Corner model)



《 Ceiling-mounted cassette type 》

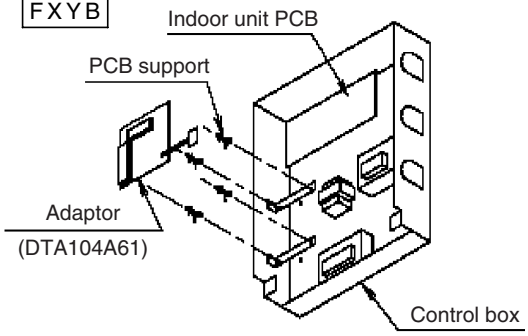
FXC(Q) (Double-flow model)



NOTE: Installation box for adaptor PCB is required to install the adaptor.

《 Ceilling-mounted Built-in type 》

FXS
FXYB



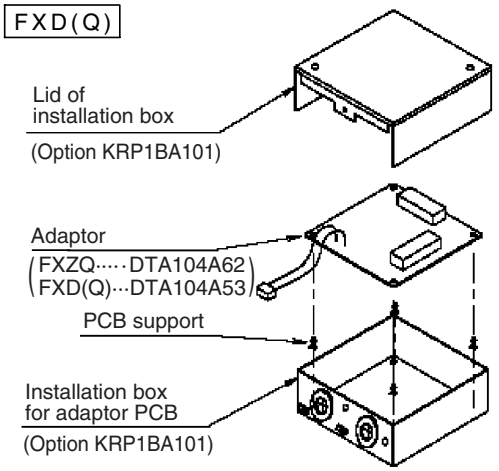
Note :
Installation box is necessary for second adaptor (FXS) .

《 600x600 Ceilling mounted cassette type 》

<Slim ceiling mounted duct type>

FXZQ

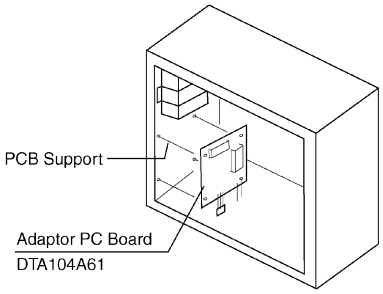
FXD(Q)



NOTE: Installation box for adaptor PCB is required to install the adaptor.

《Ceiling Mounted Duct Type 》

FXYD-KA



Note:
Installation box is necessary for second adaptor.

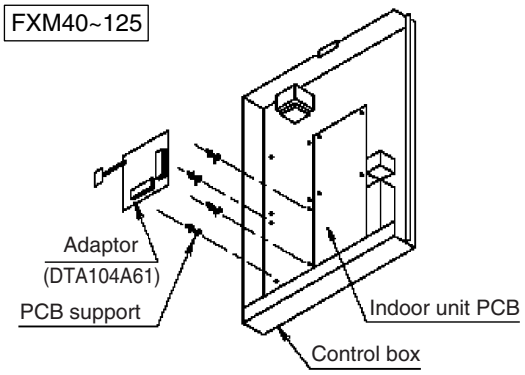
C: 1PA63164E

《 Ceilling - mounted Duct type 》

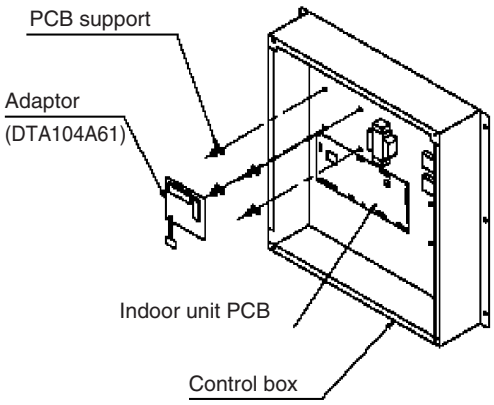
FXMQ20~140P

See **10.6 KRP4A96** (Page 263).

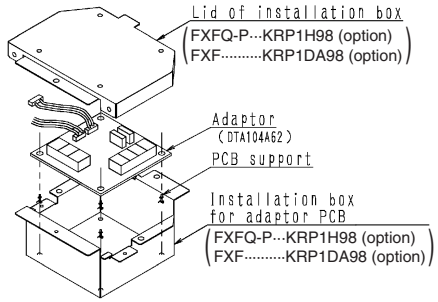
FXM40~125



FXM(Q)200 · 250



FXF(Q)

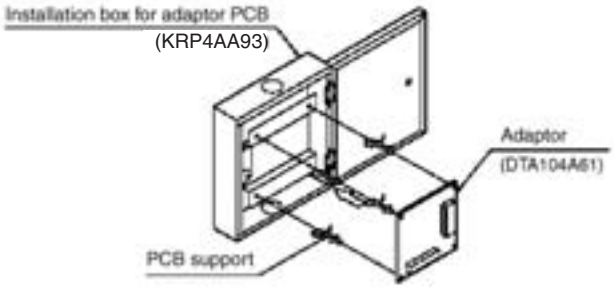


Note:

Installation box for adaptor PCB is required to install the adaptor.

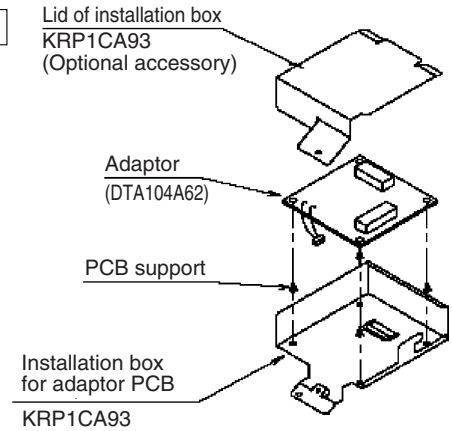
《 Wall mounted type 》

FXA(Q)



《 Ceiling Suspended type 》

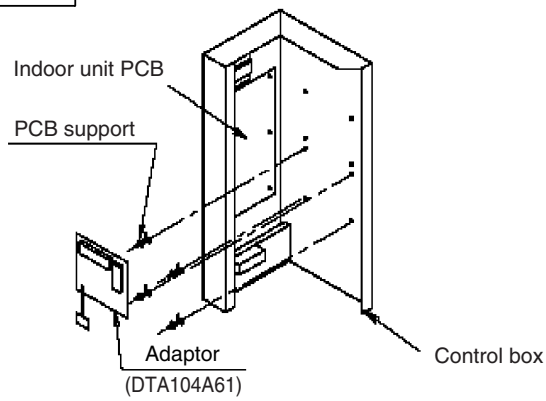
FXH(Q)



NOTE: Installation box for adaptor PCB is required to install the adaptor.

《 Floor-standing type 》

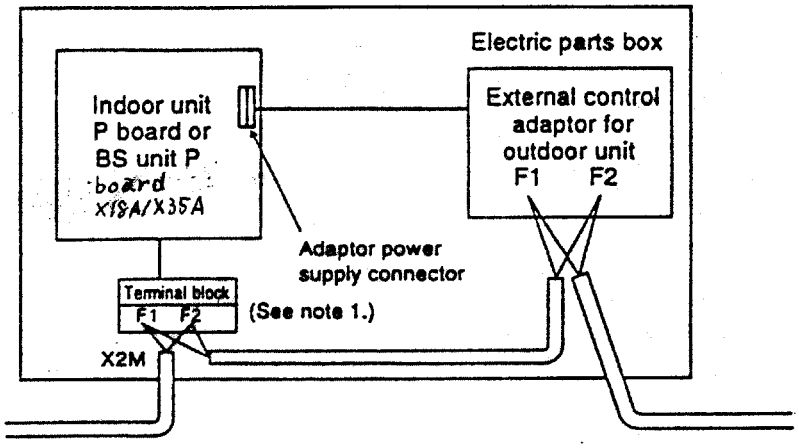
FXL(Q)
FXN(Q)



C: 1PA63164E

④ Electrical wiring

① Connect the power supply wiring from the adaptor to the adaptor power supply connector on the PCB of the Indoor unit or BS unit.
② Connect the transmission wiring to the various terminal blocks, and to the F1 and F2 terminals on the PCB. (Use double-core wiring with no polarity.)
③ Using the attached wiring ties, clamp the transmission wiring to weak field wiring, etc.



Note 1: If mounting on a BS unit, connect the BS unit's terminal block (F1 and F2, indoor unit side) with F1 and F2 of the adaptor.

NOTES

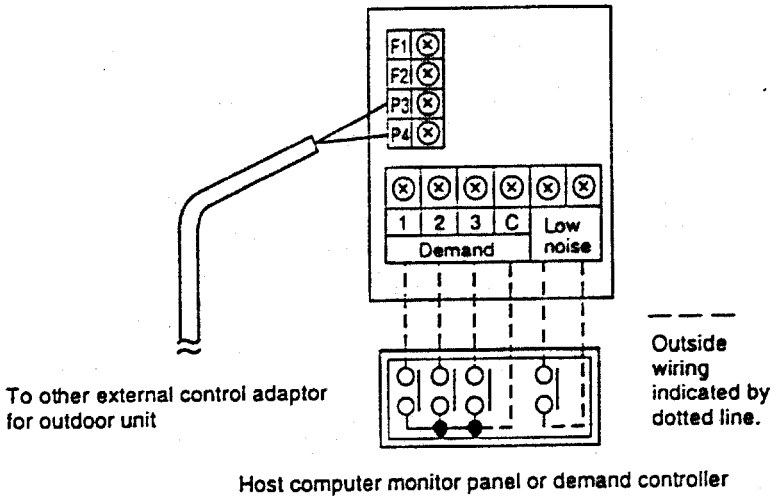
- (Transmission wiring specifications)

Sheathed wire
(2 wire)
0.75 ~ 1.25 mm^2

- (Transmission wiring length)

Malfunction of transmission may occur if the following limits are exceeded.
(Total wiring length: Max. 1000 m
No. of branches: Max. 16)

④ If carrying out demand or low-noise input, connect the adaptor's terminals as shown below.



1PA63165A

[Input signal]
Constant a contact
Input current is approx. 10 mA per contact.
For the relay contact, use a weak current contact.
[Outside wiring specifications]
Recommended wiring: 0.75 – 2 mm^2 sheathed wire
Wiring length: Within 150 m
Keep a mimimum 50 mm from power supply wiring to prevent malfunction.

Demand input terminal

Short circuit between (Demand 1) – (C)... As a guideline, demand should be about 70%.
Short circuit between (Demand 2) – (C)... As a guideline, demand should be about 40%.
Short circuit between (Demand 3) – (C)... Forced thermo OFF

Low-noise input terminal

When terminals are short-circuited during cooling, capacity save (outdoor unit fan low-speed turn, compressor frequency control) is carried out.
Use only at night when load is slight.

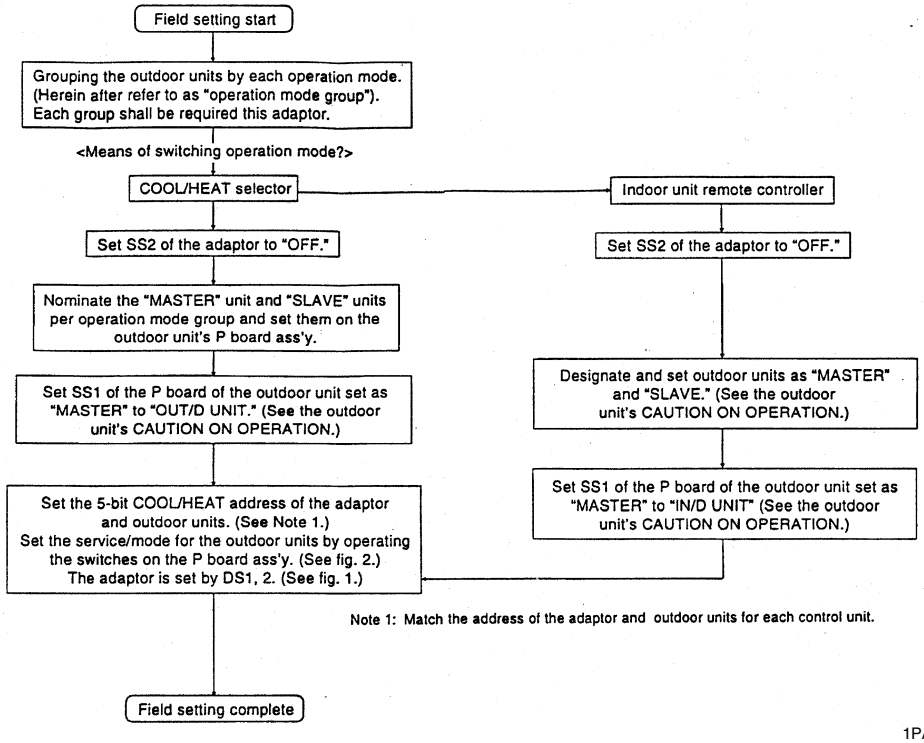
How to set demand control in the field

1. Outdoor unit field setting
   - Setting mode 1 . . . Turn ON low noise control as explained in the outdoor unit's service manual.
   - Setting mode 2 . . . Match low noise and demand addresses to the external control adaptor address.
2. External control adaptor settings
   - Function switch (SS1)
     Set SSI to either "BOTH" or "DE".
   - Address setting switch (DS1, DS2)
     Match DS1 and DS2 to the low noise and demand addresses of the outdoor unit.

5 Field settings

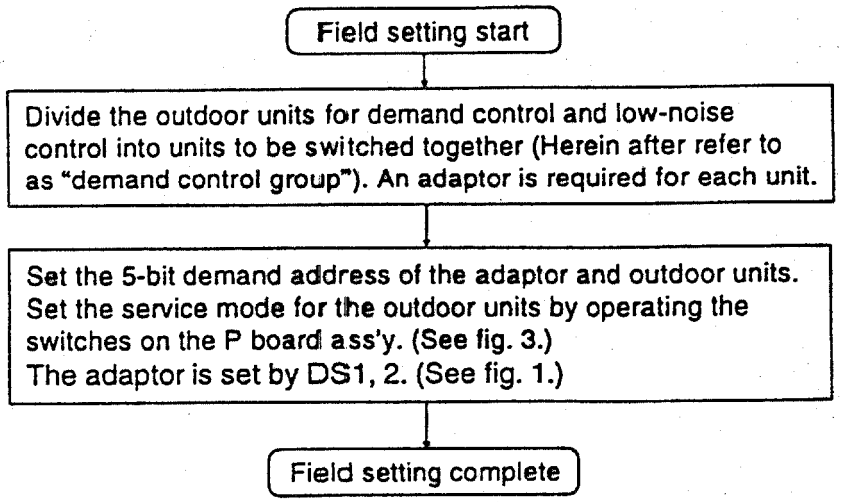
1. The contents of the various settings for unified switching of the operation mode (cool, heat, fan) are as follows.

Setting switches cannot be switched unless the power is turned on. Be sure, therefore, to turn the power off after switching the switches.



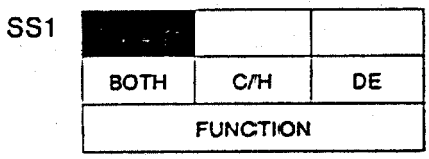
1PA63165A

2. The contents of the various settings for unified switching of demand and low noise operation are as follows.



3. To carry out operation mode switching and demand control simultaneously

You can carry out operation mode switching and demand control simultaneously by setting function switch SS1 on the adaptor to "BOTH." Only one address, however, can be set on the adaptor, so the "operation mode switch unit" and "demand control unit" are the same.



Factory set to "BOTH."

Set the COOL/HEAT address, demand address and low noise address, or both as needed.


Left (BOTH)


Middle (C/H)

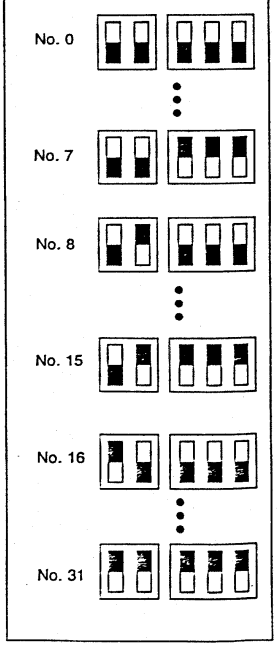

Right (DE • LOW NOISE)

Note 2: The outdoor unit can have an independent "COOL/HEAT address" and "demand address". You can therefore set the "operation mode group" and "demand control group" to different ranges.

1PA63165A

Fig. 1 Setting of 5-bit cool/heat address by DS1, 2.

Designate and set cool/heat addresses 0 – 31 for each operation mode switch unit.



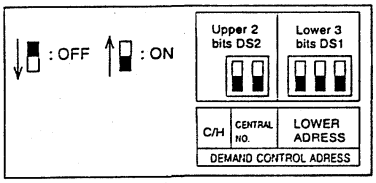


Fig. 2 (Ex.) To set the outdoor unit's cool/heat address to No. 15:

● — Off ○ — On ◑ — Flicker

Procedure	Setting contents	MODE	TEST	5-bit C/H SELECT IND	5-bit C/H SELECT MASTER	5-bit C/H SELECT SLAVE	5-bit L.N.O.P.	5-bit SEQ. START
When power turned on	Setting mode (factory set)	● LED00	● LED01	○ LED02	● LED03	● LED04	● LED05	○ LED06
Hold down next page button for 5 secs.	Enters address setting.	○ LED00	● LED01	● LED02	● LED03	● LED04	● LED05	● LED06
Push operation button one time.	Enters cool/heat address setting.	○ LED00	● LED01	● LED02	● LED03	● LED04	● LED05	○ LED06
Push confirmation button one time.	Make sure cool/heat address has been entered.	○ LED00	● LED01	● LED02	● LED03	● LED04	● LED05	● LED06
Push operation button 15 times. (Address No. = Times pushed)	Sets cool/heat address.	○ LED00	● LED01	● LED02	◑ LED03	◑ LED04	◑ LED05	◑ LED06
Push confirmation button two times.	Check cool/heat address.	○ LED00	● LED01	● LED02	● LED03	● LED04	● LED05	● LED06
Push next page button one time.	Returns to set mode.	● LED00	● LED01	○ LED02	● LED03	● LED04	● LED05	○ LED06

Fig. 3 (Ex.) To set the outdoor unit's demand address to No. 7:

● — Off ○ — On ◑ — Flicker

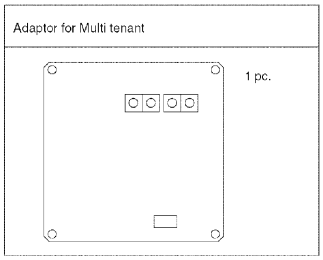
Procedure	Setting contents	MODE	TEST	5-bit C/H SELECT IND	5-bit C/H SELECT MASTER	5-bit C/H SELECT SLAVE	5-bit L.N.O.P.	5-bit SEQ. START
When power turned on	Setting mode (factory set)	● LED00	● LED01	○ LED02	● LED03	● LED04	● LED05	○ LED06
Hold down next page button for 5 secs.	Enters address setting.	○ LED00	● LED01	● LED02	● LED03	● LED04	● LED05	● LED06
Push operation button two times.	Enters demand address setting.	○ LED00	● LED01	● LED02	● LED03	● LED04	○ LED05	● LED06
Push confirmation button one time.	Make sure demand address has been entered.	○ LED00	● LED01	● LED02	● LED03	● LED04	● LED05	● LED06
Push operation button 7 times. (Address No. = Times pushed)	Sets demand address.	○ LED00	● LED01	● LED02	● LED03	◑ LED04	◑ LED05	◑ LED06
Push confirmation button two times.	Check demand address.	○ LED00	● LED01	● LED02	● LED03	● LED04	● LED05	● LED06
Push next page button one time.	Returns to set mode.	● LED00	● LED01	◑ LED02	● LED03	● LED04	● LED05	◑ LED06

1PA63165A

12. Adaptor for Multi Tenant

12.1 DTA114A61

Accessories Check that the following accessories are provided with the adaptor before installation.



PCB support	4 pcs.
Tiewrap	4 pcs.
Relay harness	4 pcs. (see the table on the right-hand side for applicable models)
Installation Manual	1 pc.

Applicable models	Relay harness
FXFQ~P	700 — White — White, 4 pins — UL electric wire
FXMQ~P	350 — White — White, 4 pins — UL electric wire
BSVQ~P	260 — White — Blue, 3 pins — UL electric wire
FXAQ~M	1900 — White — White, 3 pins — VCTF electric wire

Note

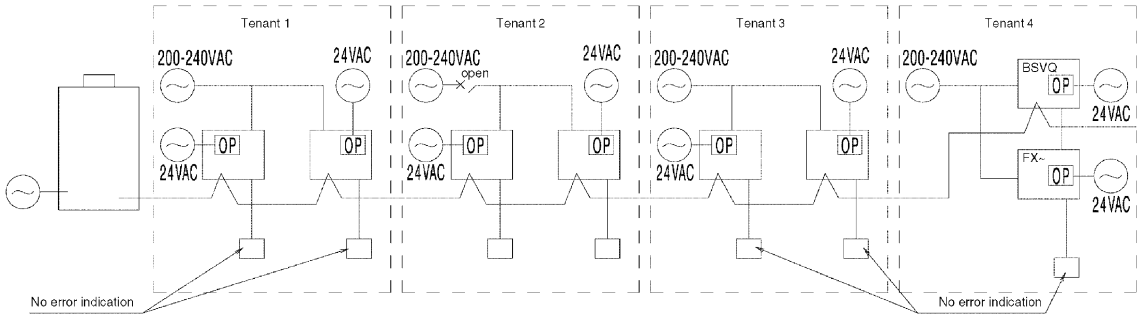
- An adaptor mounting plate and mounting box are required in addition to the provided component parts in the case of mounting the adaptor to the following models.

FXFQ~P: KRP1H98
FXMQ~P: KRP4A96
FXAQ~M: KRP4AA93

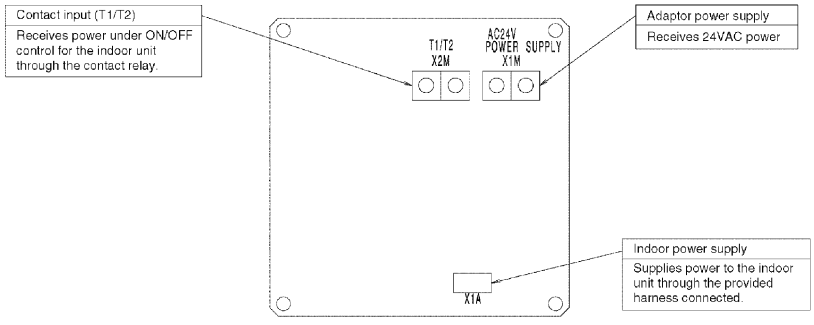
- Both ends of harness are for connection of PCB of indoor unit (or BS unit) and for connection of adaptor for multi tenant. Be careful when connecting them.

1 GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF SYSTEM

- The use of this adaptor allows the system to operate with no system error indication in the event of the interruption of power supply to other indoor units. (In the case of the following diagram, there will be no error indication on the remote controllers of tenant 1 or tenant 3 or tenant 4 in the event of the interruption of power supply to tenant 2.)



2 NAMES AND FUNCTIONS

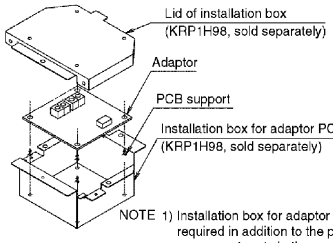


1P223254A

❸ INSTALLATION

⟨⟨Ceiling-mounted Cassette Round-flow Type⟩⟩

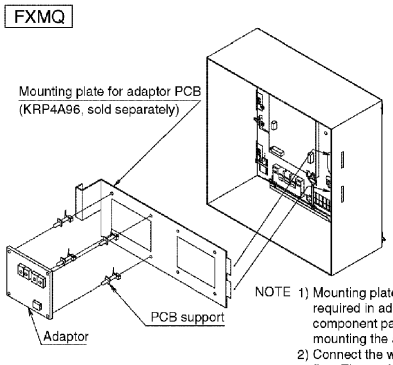
FXFQ



NOTE 1) Installation box for adaptor PCB is required in addition to the provided component parts in the case of mounting the adaptor.
2) Connect the wiring to the adaptor PCB first. The work will be easier.
(Refer to ❺ METHOD OF WIRING.)

⟨⟨Ceiling-mounted Duct Type⟩⟩

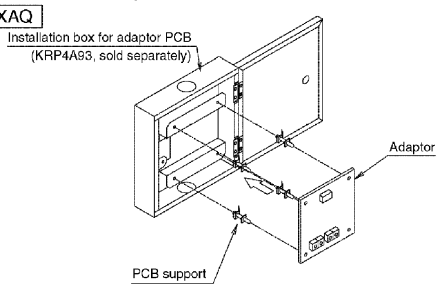
FXMQ



NOTE 1) Mounting plate for adaptor PCB is required in addition to the provided component parts in the case of mounting the adaptor.
2) Connect the wiring to the indoor PCB first. The work will be easier.
(Refer to ❺ METHOD OF WIRING.)

⟨⟨Wall-mounted type⟩⟩

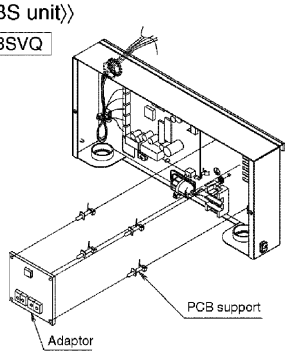
FXAQ



NOTE) Installation box for adaptor PCB is required in addition to the provided component parts in the case of mounting the adaptor.

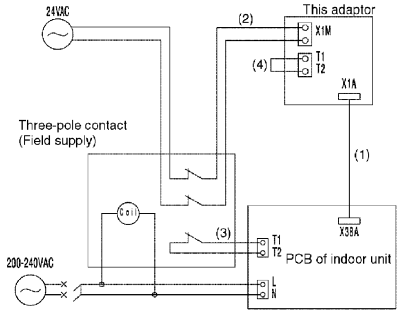
⟨⟨BS unit⟩⟩

BSVQ



❹ ELECTRIC WIRING

• Example with FXFQ, FXAQ, and FXMQ

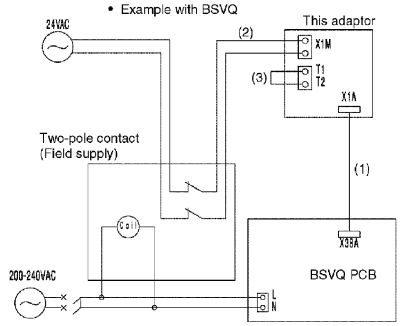


(1) Connect this adaptor and the PCB of the indoor unit with the provided relay harness (varying with each indoor unit model).
(2) Connect the 24VAC (±20%) power supply to the X1M terminals of the adaptor through the normally closed contacts of the relay. Be sure to contact the relay contacts to both poles of the power supply so that the positive and negative lines of the power supply will be turned off simultaneously. A transformer may be used for the 24VAC power supply provided for each adaptor on the condition that the transformer has a capacity of 24VA or over.
(3) Provide a relay (with a normally closed contact) between the T1 and T2 terminals of the PCB.

Minimum contact load: 1mA normally closed contact at 15VDC
Rated current: 3 A min.
Wire specifications: Vinyl cord with sheath or cable (2 wire)
Wiring thickness: 0.75 to 1.25 mm²
Wiring length: 100 m max.

(4) Short-circuit the T1 and T2 terminals of the adaptor.

• Example with BSVQ



(1) Connect the adaptor and BSVQ PCB through the relay harness.
(2) Connect the 24VAC (±20%) power supply to the X1M terminals of the adaptor through the normally closed contacts of the relay. Be sure to contact the relay contacts to both poles of the power supply so that the positive and negative lines of the power supply will be turned off simultaneously. A transformer may be used for the 24VAC power supply provided for each adaptor on the condition that the transformer has a capacity of 24VA or over.

(3) Short-circuit the T1 and T2 terminals of the adaptor.

Minimum contact load: 1mA normally closed contact at 15VDC
Rated current: 3 A min.
Wire specifications: Vinyl cord with sheath or cable (2 wire)
Wiring thickness: 0.75 to 1.25 mm²
Wiring length: 100 m max.

1P223254A

⑤ METHOD OF WIRING

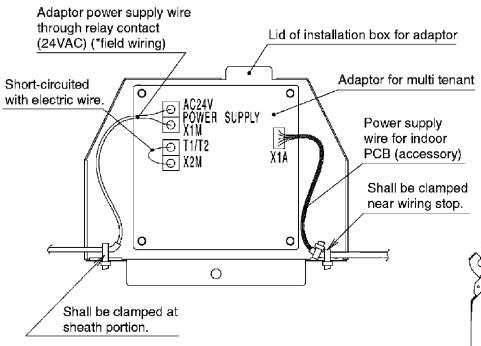
〈CAUTION〉

- For connection to the terminal block, be sure to use a ring type crimp style terminal. Also insulate the crimping portion, for example, by mounting an insulation sleeve.
- For wiring, use the specified wire to connect it securely and fix it so that external force is not applied to the terminal.
- For tightening the terminal screw, use a proper screwdriver. A smaller size screwdriver may damage the screw head, resulting in improper tightening.
- If the terminal screw is secured too tightly, the screw may be damaged. For tightening torque for terminal screw, see the table on the right-hand side.

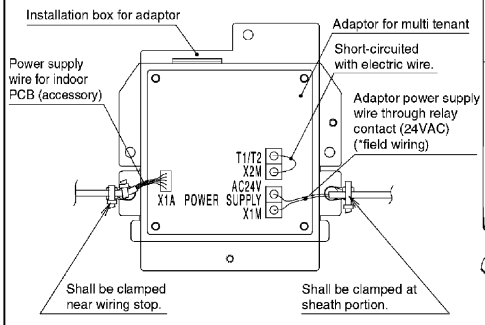
	Tightening torque (N · m)
Terminal block of adaptor for multi tenant (X1M, X2M)	1.18~1.44

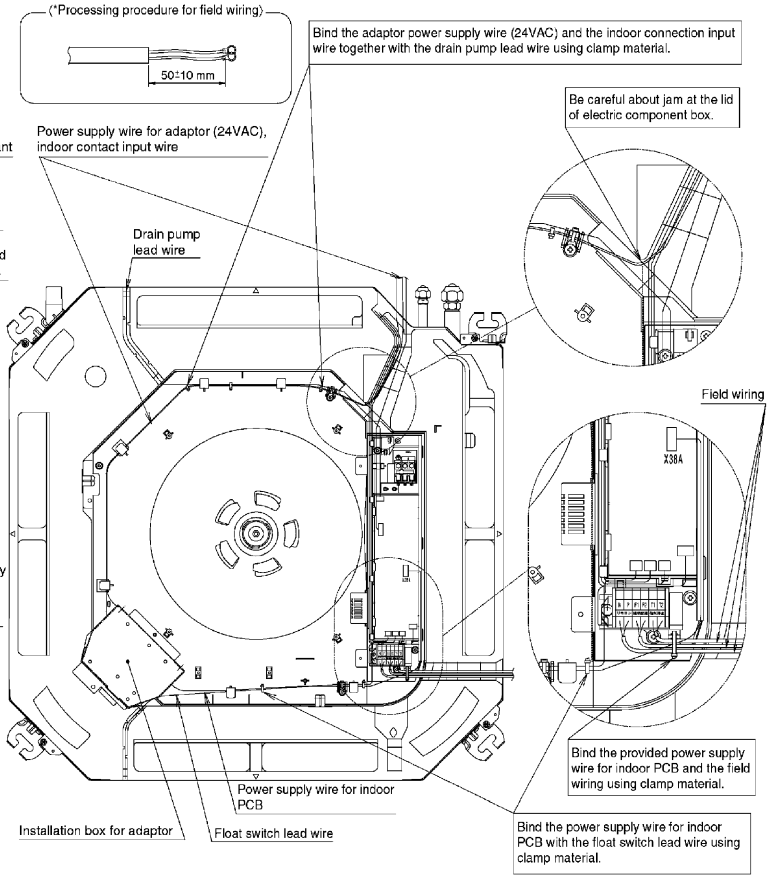
● FXFQ (Ceiling-mounted Cassette Round-flow Type)

〈In the case of mounting to lid of installation box for adaptor〉

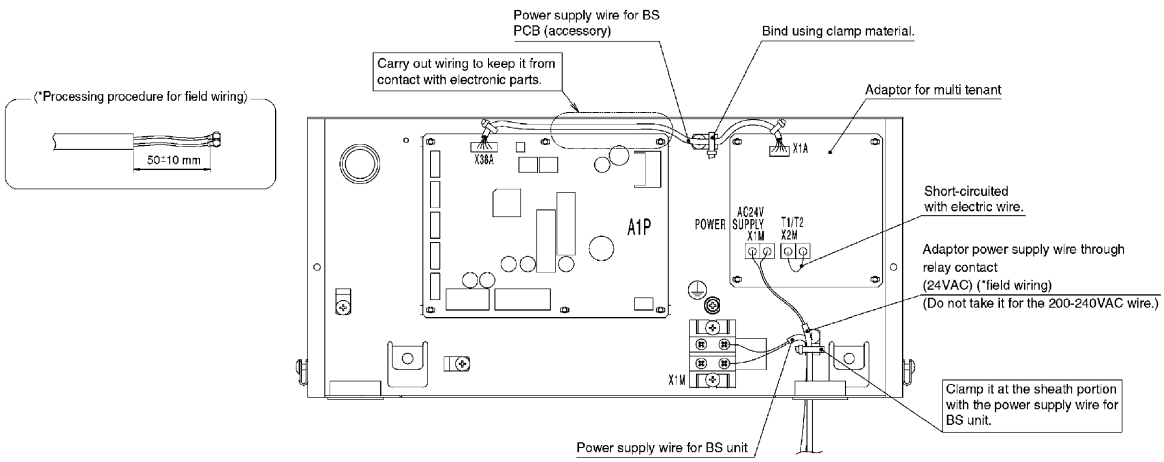


〈In the case of mounting to installation box for adaptor〉



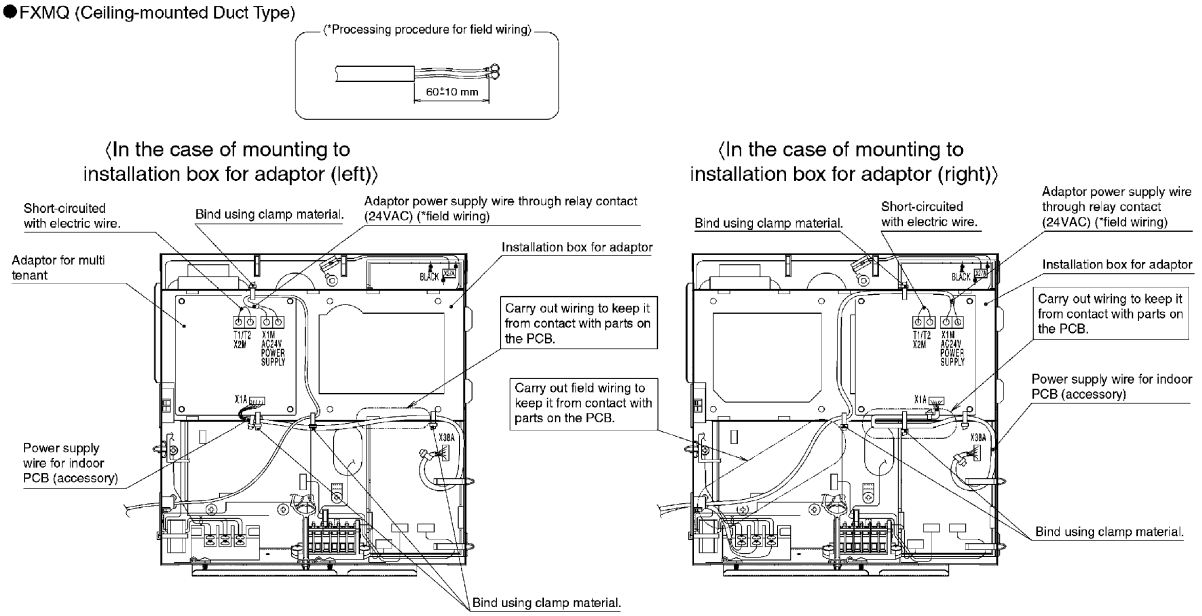


● BSVQ (BS unit)

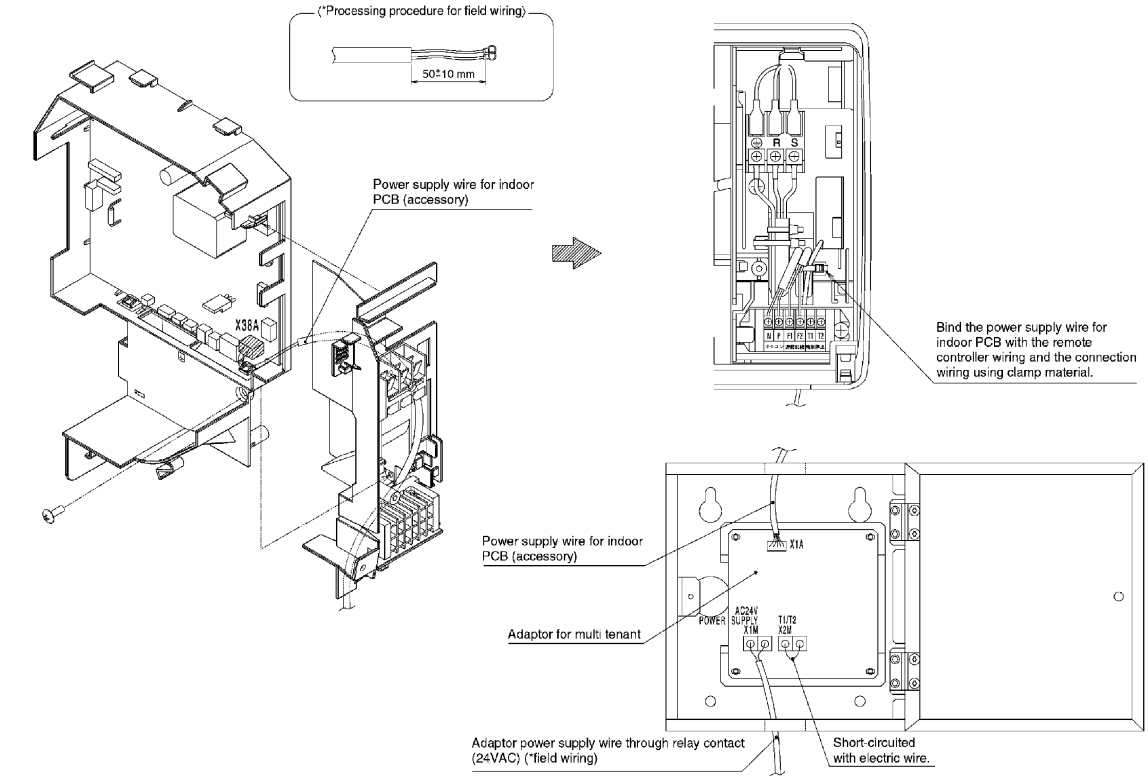


1P224646A

● FXMQ (Ceiling-mounted Duct Type)



● FXAQ (Wall-mounted type)



6 FIELD SETTING

Follow the "FIELD SETTING" in the installation manual of the remote controller for the indoor unit and make a necessary field setting in the remote controller after turning the air conditioner ON.

- Set the remote controller to field set mode, select Mode No. "12", and set the FIRST CODE NO. to "1" and the SECOND CODE NO. to "04".
  (The SECOND CODE NO. is factory set to "01".)
  Note: The remote control terminals (T1 and T2) of the indoor unit is for multi-tenant use. Therefore, the COMPUTERIZED CONTROL of the indoor unit is not available.

1P224646A

13. Residential Central Remote Controller

13.1 DCS303A51

13.1.1 Features

- Large, easy-to-read Liquid Crystal Display.
- Dot Matrix area shows which button to press next.
- Backlight equipped for easy operation.
- Each unit is identified for easier operation by individual group selection buttons.
- Frequently used functions are easily operated without opening the lid.

* Limit connection to the VRV system to household use.

13.1.2 Function

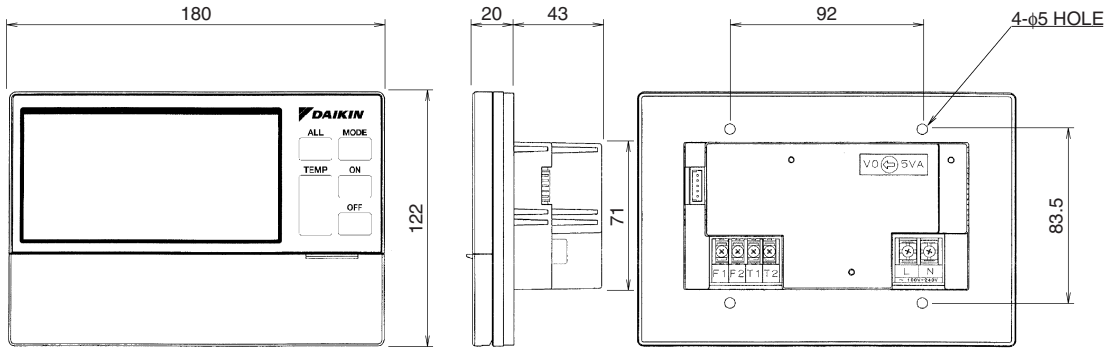
			Residential Central Remote Controller	Schedule Timer	Central Remote Controller
			DCS303A51	DST301BA61	DCS302CA61
Number of Management Groups			16	128	64
Monitoring	Command, State Monitoring	Start/Stop	○	△	○
		Operation Mode	○	×	○
		Set Temperature	○	×	○
		Inhibition / Permission by Remote Controller	○	×	○
		Room Temp. (Suction Temp.)	○	×	×
		Outside Temp.	○	×	×
		Malfunction Monitoring	○	△	○
		Air Filter, Element Monitoring	○	×	○
Setting and Control	Individual Control	Start/Stop	○	×	○
		Operation Mode	○	×	○
		Set Temperature	○	×	○
		Inhibition / Permission by Remote Controller	○	×	○
	All Start/Stop		○	○	○
	Schedule Control	Weekly schedule	○	○	×
	Emergency stop in case of fire		○	×	○

○: OK
△ : There are some restrictions about each function.
× : NG

13.1.3 Specifications

Model		DCS303A51/61/61D
Power Supply		Externally supplied 200~240V AC, 50/60Hz
Installation Method		Japanese Industrial Standard triple plug socket switch box embedded in indoor wall
Conditions for use	Ambient temperature/ Humidity	0- 40°C, less than 85% RH
Dimensions	Panel Size	180 mm (W) x 122 mm (H) x 20 mm (D)
Overseas Compatibility Certification	Safety	EN60335-2-40
	EMC(EMI, EMS)	EN50022 (CISPR22 Class-B) EN50024 (CISPR24)
LCD Panel	Size/Backlight color	120.4 mm (W) x 60.5 mm (H)/White light
Input	Buttons	6 buttons on the front panel and 24 buttons in the lid
Communication Line	DIII-NET	1 line of A/C equipment DIII-NET for communication use
Input terminals	Contact	Forced Shutdown input
Clock Accuracy		Within +/- 30 sec./month
Power consumption		Max. 3 W

13.1.4 Dimensions



3D059845

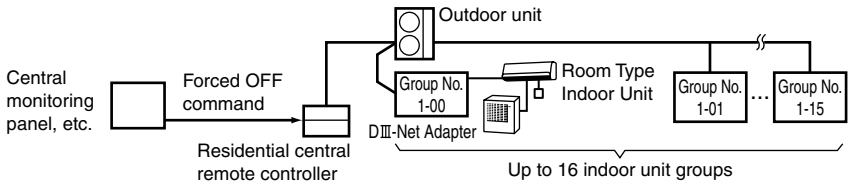
13.1.5 System Overview

This central remote controller can monitor and control up to 16 “indoor unit groups”.
By using eight units of this central remote controller, maximum of 128 “indoor unit groups” can be monitored and controlled.

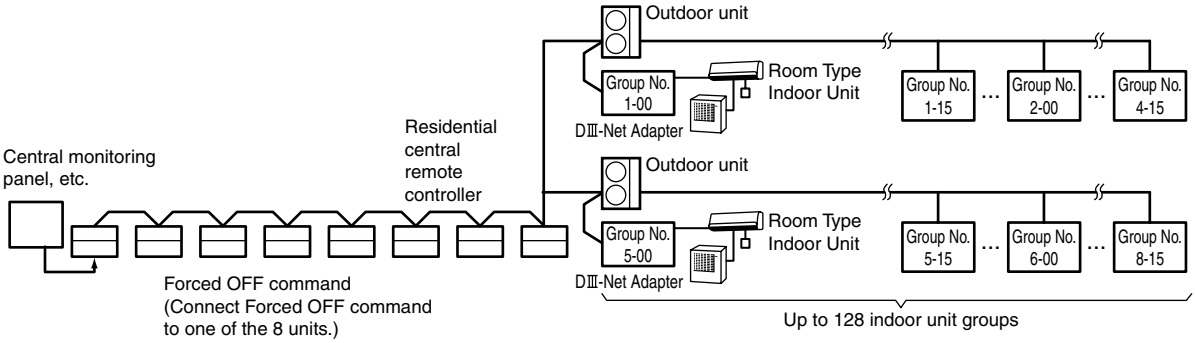
Main Functions

1. Simultaneous ON/OFF control of all indoor units connected to the central remote controller.
2. Setting of operating conditions (such as ON/OFF and set temperature) of indoor units individually by “group”.
3. Monitoring of operating conditions such as operation mode and set temperature.
4. Connection of an external key system, central monitoring panel, etc. via Forced OFF input (T1, T2).

■ When using one central remote controller unit



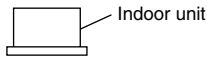
■ When using eight central remote controller units



(The central remote controller cannot be used together with the optional remote control adaptor PCB or group remote control adaptor.)

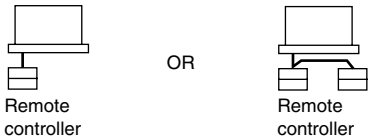
* An “indoor unit group” refers to one of the following:

1. One indoor unit without remote controller

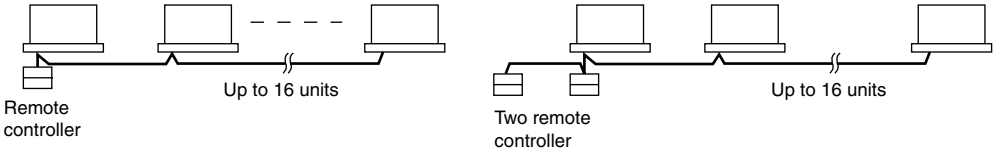


Without remote controller

2. One indoor unit controlled by one or two remote controllers



3. Up to 16 indoor units group-controlled by one or two remote controllers

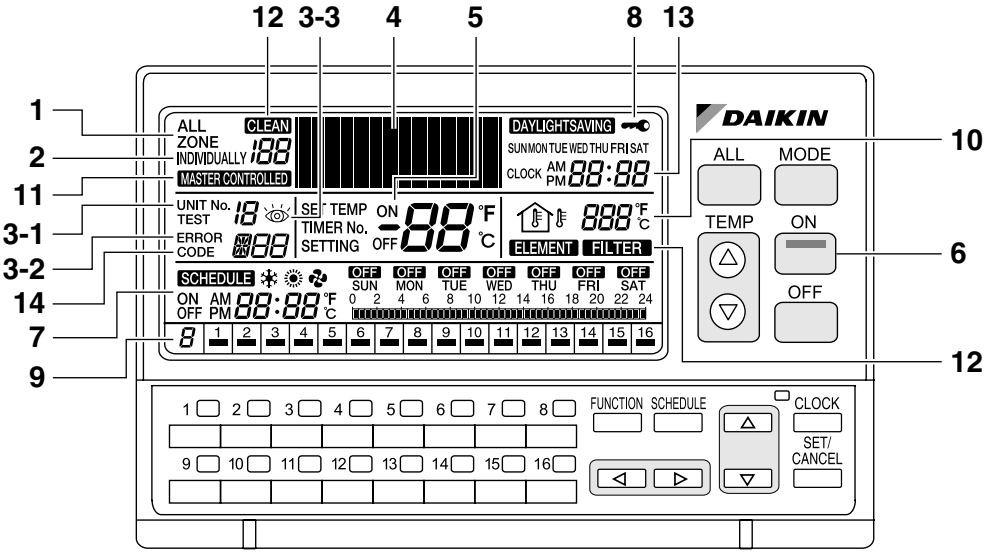


* “Group control” is a setting which enables simultaneous control of multiple indoor units from a single remote controller.

13.1.6 Names and Functions of the Operating Section

■ **External View**

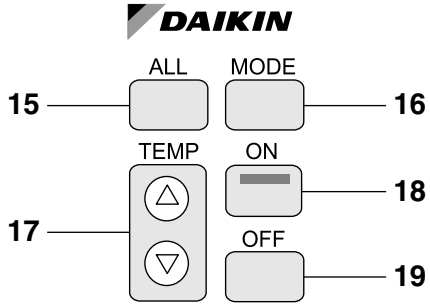
(All indications are displayed in the following diagram of screen for the explanation purpose. Actual indications displayed during operation will vary.)



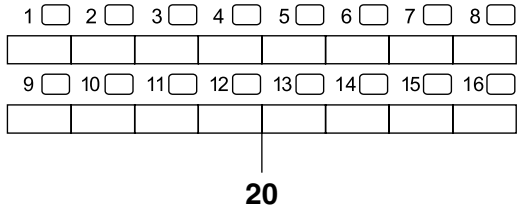
1	**ALL**
	This indicates that the display shows the ALL screen.
2	**INDIVIDUALLY**
	This indicates that the display shows the INDIVIDUALLY screen for the currently selected air conditioner No.
3	**ERROR CODE DISPLAY**
	When an equipment malfunction occurs, the malfunction UNIT No. (**3-1**), ERROR CODE (**3-2**) and (**3-3**) indications blink.
4	**OPERATION MODE DISPLAY (Dot Matrix)**
	This section displays the operation status.
5	**SET TEMP DISPLAY**
	This section displays the set temperature.
6	**ON LAMP**
	This lamp lights when one or more indoor units under control are operating.
7	**SCHEDULE SETTING DISPLAY**
	This section displays the programmed operation details.
8	**KEY LOCK DISPLAY**
	This symbol appears when the key lock has been activated.
9	**OPERATION MONITOR**
	Each box shows the No. of connected air conditioner (group) and its operation status.
10	**OUTDOOR TEMP DISPLAY**
	In the ALL screen, this displays the outside temperature detected by the outdoor unit connected to the air conditioner (group) with a cooling/heating selection privilege(*) that has the smallest unit No. In the INDIVIDUALLY screen, this displays the outside temperature detected by the outdoor unit connected to the selected air conditioner (group). If Total Heat Exchanger is selected, outdoor temperature is not displayed. (*An air conditioner (group) with a cooling/heating selection privilege is a unit which allows switching of the operation mode between cooling and heating.)
11	**MASTER-CONTROLLED DISPLAY**
	This indication appears when the selected air conditioner (group) does not have a cooling/heating selection privilege.
12	**CLEAN SIGN**
	The FILTER and ELEMENT indications appear when the filter and element need to be cleaned.
13	**CLOCK DISPLAY**
	This shows the current time.
14	**OPERATION CODE DISPLAY**
	This displays the operation code (prohibit remote controller, central control priority, last button priority, etc.) during the setting of operation details.

13.1.7 Names and Functions of the Operating Section

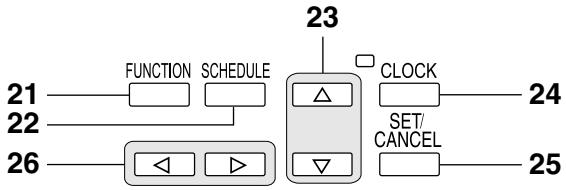
■ **Names of Operation Buttons**



15	**ALL BUTTON**
	Changes the display to the ALL screen.
16	**MODE BUTTON**
	Used to select the operation mode.
17	**TEMP BUTTONS**
	Used to set the temperature.
18	**ON BUTTON**
	Turns on all indoor units or individual unit (group).
19	**OFF BUTTON**
	Stops all indoor units or individual unit (group).



20	**INDIVIDUAL UNIT (GROUP) SELECTION BUTTONS**
	Changes the display to the INDIVIDUALLY screen for monitoring or setting the air conditioner (group) of the indicated No.



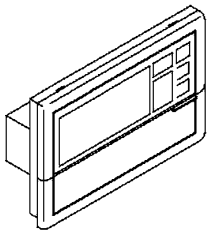
21	**FUNCTION BUTTON**
	Changes the display to the Function Menu setting screen.
22	**SCHEDULE BUTTON**
	Changes the display to the SCHEDULE setting screen.
23	**△▽ BUTTONS**
	Used to select a menu.
24	**CLOCK BUTTON**
	Changes the display to the current time setting screen.
25	**SET/CANCEL BUTTON**
	Enters or cancels settings.
26	**◁▷ BUTTONS**
	Used to set an operation schedule or current time.

13.1.8 Installation

■ **Components**

Check the following components are included in this optional accessory before installation.

Body



Installation screw (M4 × 16)	4 pcs.
Operation manual	1 pc.
Installation manual	1 pc.
Indoor label	1 pc.
Clamp	2 pcs.

When installing, 1 electric parts box is necessary.

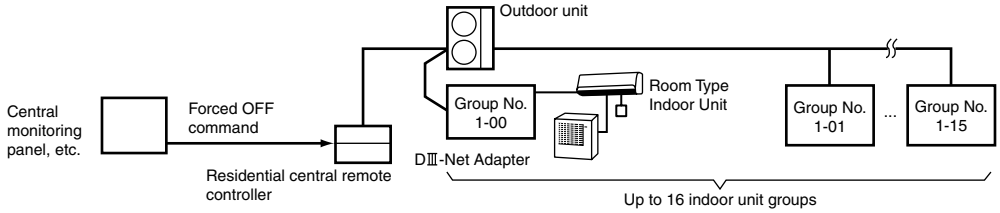
■ **System Configuration**

With the central remote controller, unified operation/stop is possible with up to a maximum 16 groups of indoor units.

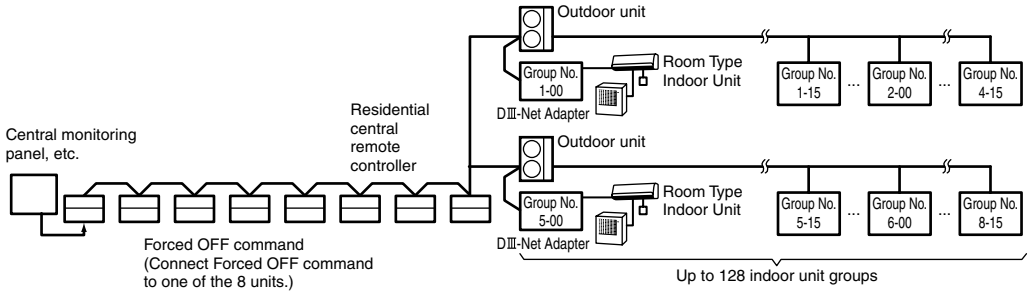
When using 8 central remote controllers, unified operation is possible with up to a maximum 128 groups of indoor units.

The remote controller can be set individually by group while it enables to display the operation state such as operation mode or set temperature. It can be connected with the external central monitoring panel, etc., through Forced OFF input (T1, T2).

■ When using 1 central remote controller



■ When using 8 central remote controllers

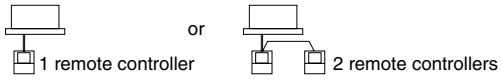


(The central remote controller and the separately sold remote control adapter or group remote control adapter cannot be used together.)
The combination of indoor units includes 3 modes specified here below:

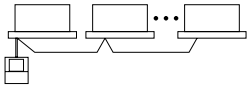
(1) One indoor unit, without remote controller

Without remote controller

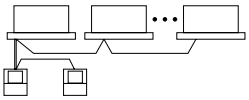
(2) One indoor unit controlled by 1 or 2 remote controllers



(3) A maximum of 16 indoor units controlled by 1 or 2 remote controllers



1 remote controller A maximum of 16 indoor units

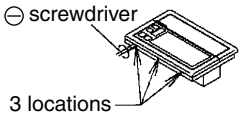


2 remote controllers A maximum of 16 indoor units

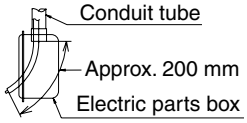
■ **Installation**

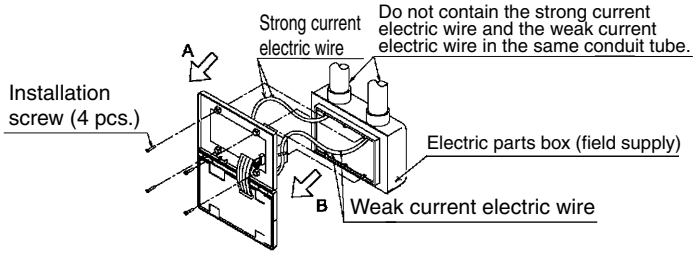
(1) Open the upper part of remote controller.
Insert a ⊖ screwdriver (3 locations) into the recess between the upper part and the lower part of remote controller and twist the screwdriver lightly.

PC board is attached with both the upper and lower part of remote controller. Do not damage the board with the screwdriver.



(2) Open the upper part of remote controller and install the electric parts box (field supply) with the attached installation screws (M4 × 16).

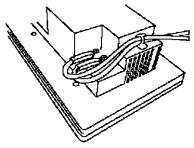




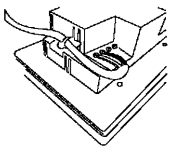
NOTE

Suitable length of the electric wire is about 200 mm (from electric parts box).

(3) Please refer to A-direction view and B-direction view to configure and fix wires for strong current and weak current respectively.



A direction view



B direction view

■ **Initial Setting**

Settings (1) and (2) are initialized when power is turned ON, therefore complete settings BEFORE activating the power.

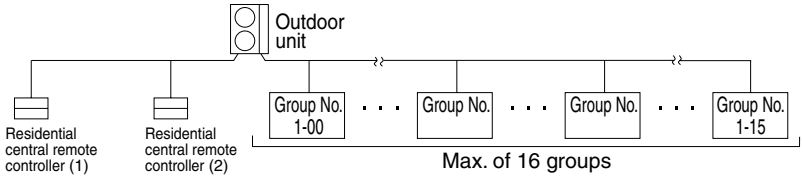
(1) Connector for setting master controller (X1A) (Provided with connector at factory set)

- When using only 1 central remote controller, do not disconnect the connector for setting master controller. (Use the unit with the connector in the state in which it was delivered.)
- When using multiple central remote controllers, make settings as indicated in the below table. It is not allowed to be used along with other centralized units.

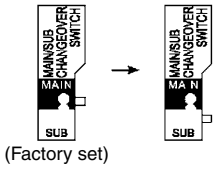
	Connector for setting master controller (X1A)
1 to 16 units	Set 1 to “Used” and all the rest to “Not used”.

(2) MAIN/SUB changeover switch setting

With 2 central remote controllers, centralized control (indoor units) is possible from different locations. In this kind of set-up, it is necessary to set the MAIN/SUB changeover switch.



One of the 2 central remote controllers (1) to (2) is set to “MAIN” while the other is set to “SUB”.



(Factory set)

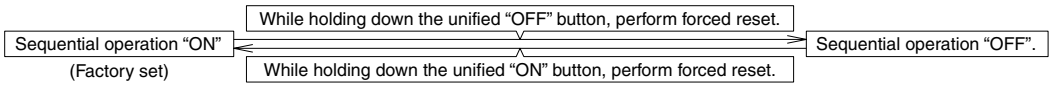
NOTE

- When using 1 central remote controller, it is necessary to set to “MAIN”.
- Be sure to set before turning the power ON.

(3) Setting of the sequential operation function

The central remote controller is equipped with a sequential operation function that sequentially turns indoor units on in about 2-second intervals during unified operation. (Sequential operation is factory set to “ON”.)

To switch sequential operation ON or OFF, set as follows:



NOTE

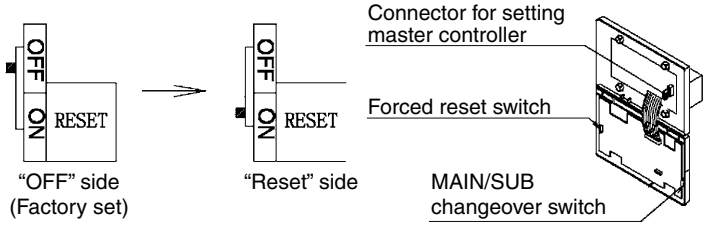
The sequential operation function is designed to reduce the load on the power supply equipment, but does not guarantee that compressors will not be started simultaneously.

You cannot therefore count on a capacity reduction effect by power supply equipment breaker selection.

(4) Forced reset switch

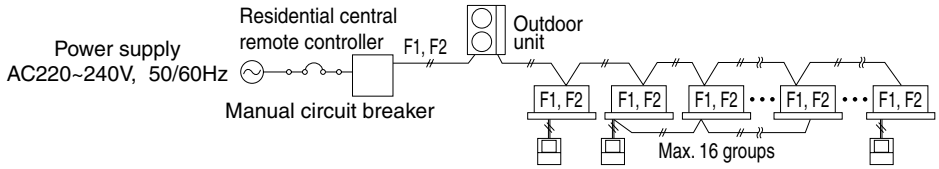
When changing the setting of the connector for setting master controller, you can reset simply by setting it to the reset side once and returning to the normal side, without turning the power OFF.

(For normal operation, set the switch to the normal side.)

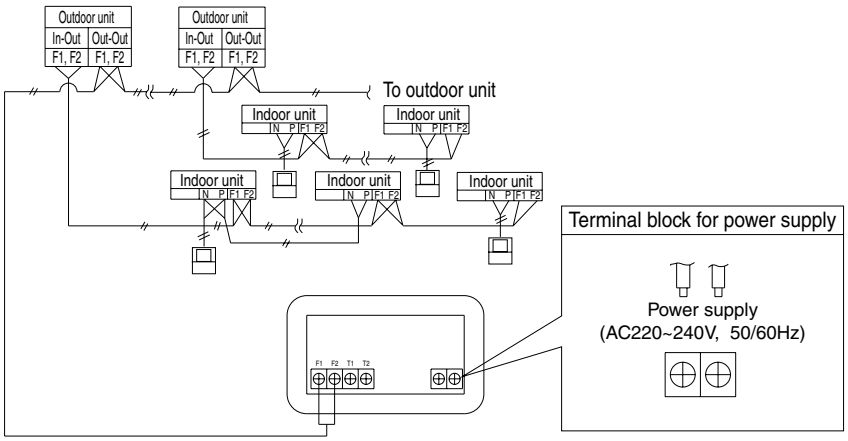


■ Electric Wiring

WIRING OUTLINE



WIRING TO THE INDOOR UNIT AND OUTDOOR UNIT



Wiring specifications

Power supply wiring	2mm²
Transmission wiring for control	0.75 - 1.25 mm² sheathed vinyl cord or cable (balanced type) - maximum length 1000 m (total overall wiring length 2000 m)
Manual circuit breaker	15 A or 10 A

Check the wiring of the indoor units to the outdoor units and between all power, indoor units, and remote controllers. See the installation manual included with the indoor and outdoor units for details.

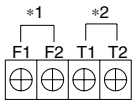
CONTROL TERMINAL BLOCK

*1 For connecting indoor unit (F1, F2)
*2 Forced OFF input (T1, T2)
When the Forced OFF input (T1, T2) is “ON”, all indoor units connected will stop running.
Use only contactors which guarantee the minimum applicable load DC16 V, 10 mA.

NOTE

Use instantaneous contactor of over 200 m sec energizing time, when necessary.

Wire Forced OFF input only when necessary.



NOTE

Do not connect the power supply wiring (AC220 V, 50 Hz) to the control terminal block. If connected by mistake, it may damage or burn electrical parts of central remote controller and indoor unit. It may result in serious damage. Be sure to check wirings before turning the power ON.

■ **Setting Language and Group No. for Centralized Control (When the Power Supply is Turned On)**

The initial language for the central remote controller is “ENGLISH”.
The initial value of centralized the group No. for the central remote controller is “1”.
(the controlling scope of centralized Group No.: 1-00~1-15)

Please set in accordance with the items specified here below while switching the initial language and initial values of the centralized group No. from “1”.

(1) Turn ON the power of the indoor unit and central remote controller. (Unless the power is ON, no setting can be made.)
   * Check that the installation and electrical wiring are correct before turning the power supply ON again.

(2) When the power supply is turned ON, all LCD will be displayed once, and switch to language setting mode.
   Select language with ◁ or ▷ button and set language with “SET/CANCEL” button.
   (↔ ENGLISH ↔ FRENCH ↔ GERMAN ↔ ITALIAN ↔ SPANISH ↔ PORTUGUESE ↔)
   After “SET CANCEL” button is pressed, “88” will appear in about 1 minute.

(3) When the “88” appears, hold down the “MODE” button and the single air conditioner selecting button “16” for a minimum of 4 seconds.

(4) When the “88” disappears, switch to Centralized Group No. Setting mode.
   The centralized group No. setting appears, and the display of centralized group No. at the left below switches from light-on to light-off.

(5) Select the centralized group No. through buttons “1” to “8” of single air conditioner, and the selected No. will be displayed at left below (refer to Table 1).
   The operation will be null in the case the buttons “9” to “16” are hold downed, and the centralized group No. displayed on the left of operation monitoring side will not be changed.

(6) Press the “OFF” button to determine the group No.
   The display of the group No. at the left below will be switched from flash to light. After the set operation is completed, the “88” will appear on the central part.
   * Please make sure that the “OFF” button has been hold downed. If the set of Group is uncertain, it will not be ended.

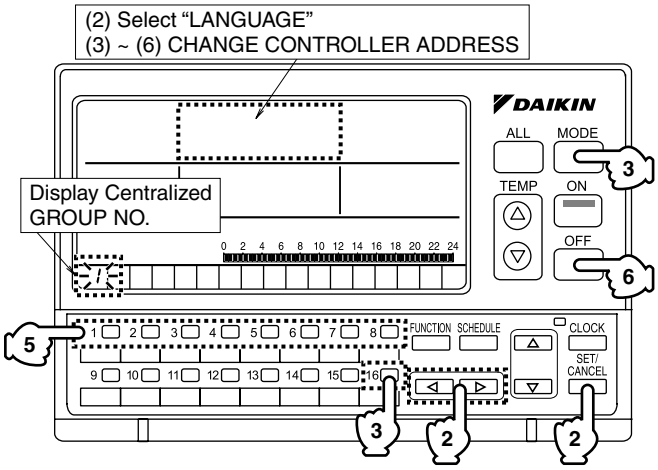


Table 1

Group No. for centralized control	Control range
1	1-00~1-15
2	2-00~2-15
3	3-00~3-15
4	4-00~4-15
5	5-00~5-15
6	6-00~6-15
7	7-00~7-15
8	8-00~8-15

■ **Setting the Group No.**

Set the group No. of indoor units by remote controller. (In the case that the remote control is absent, the group No. shall also be set by connecting to a remote controller, which shall be removed after the set operation.)

(1) Turn ON the power of the indoor unit and central remote controller.
(Unless the power is ON, no setting can be made.)
Check that the installation and electrical wiring are correct before turning the power supply ON again.
(When the power supply is turned ON, all LCD appear once. Then, the unit may not accept the operation for about 1 minute with the display of "88".)

(2) Enter into set mode
Hold down the "TEST" button for a minimum of 4 seconds and the remote controller will enter into Field set mode.

(3) Select mode No.
Press "▲▼" up and down button to select mode No. "00".

(4) Select the group No.
Press "▲▼" up and down button to select the group No.
(Group No. increase in the order of 1-00, 1-01, ...1-15, 2-00, ...8-15.)
Please refer to Table 2 for the relation between the centralized group No. of remote controller and central remote controller.

(5) Setting the group No.
Press the "□/▭" button to select the group No. for each group.

(6) Return to normal mode.
Press "TEST" button.

NOTES

- For simplified remote controller, see the installation table.
- See the manuals which came with all the heat exchangers and each adapter (i.e., multi-purpose adapters) for details on their Group No. settings.

NOTICE

Enter the group No. and installation place of the indoor unit into the installation table in the operation manual. Be sure to store the installation manual along with the operation manual for maintenance.

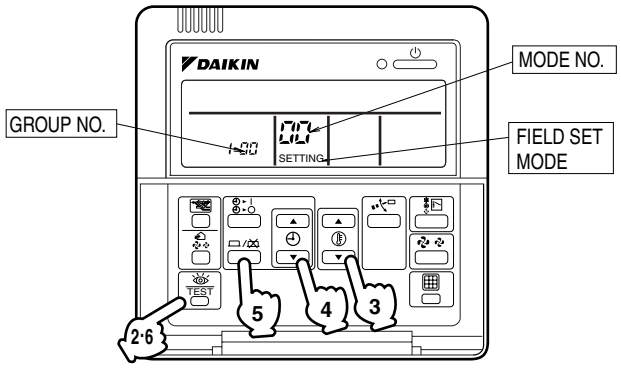


Table 2 Cross Reference List for Centralized Group No. of Remote Controller and Central Remote Controller

Display of the remote controller of air conditioner	Display of the centralized Group No. of central remote controller	Display of the remote controller of air conditioner	Display of the centralized Group No. of central remote controller
1-00	1	1-08	9
1-01	2	1-09	10
1-02	3	1-10	11
1-03	4	1-11	12
1-04	5	1-12	13
1-05	6	1-13	14
1-06	7	1-14	15
1-07	8	1-15	16

*In the case that the Group No. is "2" to "8", please replace the part "1-" of Table 2.

■ **Test Operation**

Before starting test operation, check that the power is supplied to the indoor and outdoor units, and central remote controller.
Press “ON” button on the remote controller within 10 seconds after entering into the test operation mode.
Operate the unit for 30 minutes.
Press “OFF” button to stop operating. If the operation lamp flashes, it indicates a malfunction.
Call the group of flashing display, confirm malfunction code, and check the source of malfunction.
(The operation manual lists all error codes, so refer to it.)

NOTICE

- For test operation, refer to the installation manual of the outdoor unit.
- After turning the power supply ON, if the unit does not accept operation for 2 minutes or more with the display of “88”, check the following points.
  - Check that setting of the connector for setting master controller is correct.
  - Check that the group No. for centralized control has been set.

2P219071-1A